



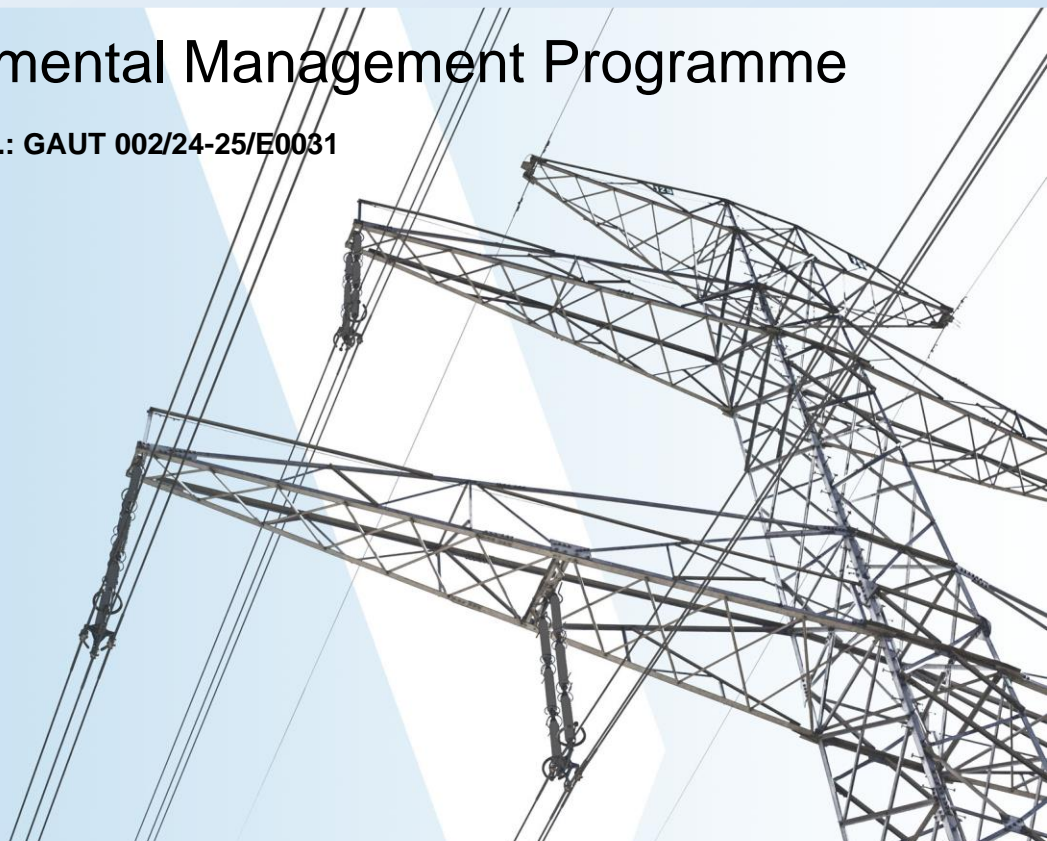
Enertrag South Africa (Pty) Ltd

---

# **132KV GRID CONNECTION AND ASSOCIATED INFRASTRUCTURE FOR THE IGOLIDE WIND ENERGY FACILITY, NEAR FOCHVILLE IN THE GAUTENG PROVINCE**

Draft Environmental Management Programme

GDARD REFERENCE NO.: GAUT 002/24-25/E0031





Enertrag South Africa (Pty) Ltd

---

# **132KV GRID CONNECTION AND ASSOCIATED INFRASTRUCTURE FOR THE IGOLIDE WIND ENERGY FACILITY, NEAR FOCHVILLE IN THE GAUTENG PROVINCE**

**Draft Environmental Management Programme**

**TYPE OF DOCUMENT (VERSION) PUBLIC**

**PROJECT NO. 41104282**

**OUR REF. NO. GAUT 002/24-25/E0031**

**DATE: OCTOBER 2024**



Enertrag South Africa (Pty) Ltd

---

# **132KV GRID CONNECTION AND ASSOCIATED INFRASTRUCTURE FOR THE IGOLIDE WIND ENERGY FACILITY, NEAR FOCHVILLE IN THE GAUTENG PROVINCE**

Draft Environmental Management Programme

WSP

Building 1, Maxwell Office Park  
Magwa Crescent West, Waterfall City  
Midrand, 1685  
South Africa

Phone: +27 11 254 4800

[WSP.com](http://WSP.com)



# QUALITY CONTROL

---

Issue/revision	First issue	Revision 1	Revision 2	Revision 3
Remarks	Draft EMPr			
Date	October 2024			
Prepared by	Jashmika Maharaj			
Signature				
Checked by	Ashlea Strong			
Signature				
Authorised by	Ashlea Strong			
Signature				
Project number	41104282			
Report number	01			
File reference	corp.pbwan.net\za\Central_Data\Projects\41100xxx\41104282 - Enertrag Egoli and Igolide WEF\41 PA\01-Reports\06 - BA			



# CONTENTS

---

<b>1</b>	<b>INTRODUCTION</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1	BACKGROUND AND TERMS OF REFERENCE	1
1.2	DETAILS OF THE ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT PRACTITIONER	5
1.3	PURPOSE OF THE EMPR	5
1.4	STRUCTURE OF THE EMPR	7
<b>2</b>	<b>PROJECT DESCRIPTION</b>	<b>9</b>
2.1	LOCATION OF THE PROPOSED PROJECT	9
2.2	PROJECT INFRASTRUCTURE	12
<b>3</b>	<b>ENVIRONMENTAL SENSITIVITY</b>	<b>21</b>
3.1	SENSITIVITY MAPPING	21
3.2	IMPACT ASSESSMENT OUTCOMES	23
3.3	CUMULATIVE IMPACT ASSESSMENT OUTCOMES	27
3.4	APPLICABLE DOCUMENTATION	27
3.5	NATIONAL AND PROVINCIAL LEGAL AND REGULATORY FRAMEWORK	27
3.6	INTERNATIONAL STANDARDS AND GUIDELINES	46
3.7	GENERIC EMPR RELEVANT TO AN APPLICATION FOR SUBSTATION AND OVERHEAD ELECTRICITY TRANSMISSION AND DISTRIBUTION INFRASTRUCTURE	53
<b>4</b>	<b>MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES AND ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS</b>	<b>55</b>
4.1	ORGANISATIONAL STRUCTURE AND RESPONSIBILITIES	55
4.2	ENVIRONMENTAL AWARENESS PLAN	58
4.3	MONITORING	62

---

4.4	NON-CONFORMANCE AND CORRECTIVE ACTION	62
4.5	DOCUMENTATION AND REPORTING	64
4.6	METHOD STATEMENTS	65
4.7	PUBLIC COMPLAINTS	65
<b>5</b>	<b>GENERIC ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS</b>	<b>67</b>
<b>6</b>	<b>SITE SPECIFIC ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS</b>	<b>70</b>
6.1	CONTRACTOR LAYDOWN AREA AND SITE ACCESS	71
6.2	VEHICLE, EQUIPMENT AND MACHINERY MANAGEMENT	73
6.3	FUEL AND CHEMICAL MANAGEMENT	74
6.4	WASTE MANAGEMENT	76
6.5	HEALTH AND SAFETY	79
6.6	WATER MANAGEMENT	83
6.7	AIR QUALITY	86
6.8	NOISE	88
6.9	SOIL, LAND USE AND AGRICULTURE	90
6.10	AQUATIC BIODIVERSITY	92
6.11	PLANT SPECIES	94
6.12	ANIMAL SPECIES	97
6.13	AVIFAUNA	100
6.14	ARCHAEOLOGICAL AND CULTURAL HERITAGE	102
6.15	PALAEONTOLOGY	104
6.16	TRAFFIC	105
6.17	VISUAL	106
6.18	SOCIO-ECONOMIC	109
6.19	GEOTECHNICAL	116
6.20	TERRESTRIAL BIODIVERSITY	118
<b>7</b>	<b>MANAGEMENT PLANS</b>	<b>121</b>
7.1	ALIEN INVASIVE MANAGEMENT PLAN	121

7.2	PLANT RESCUE AND PROTECTION PLAN	128
7.3	RE-VEGETATION AND HABITAT REHABILITATION PLAN	132
7.4	OPEN SPACE MANAGEMENT PLAN	132
7.5	STORM WATER MANAGEMENT AND SURFACE WATER PROTECTION PLAN	133
7.6	FIRE MANAGEMENT PLAN	133
7.7	EMERGENCY RESPONSE PLAN	133
7.8	COVID-19	136
7.9	EROSION MANAGEMENT	138
7.10	HAZARDOUS SUBSTANCES MANAGEMENT PLAN	140
7.11	GRIEVANCE MECHANISM	144
7.12	HERITAGE MANAGEMENT PLAN	148
7.13	FAUNA MANAGEMENT PLAN	153
7.14	SOIL MANAGEMENT PLAN	155
7.15	WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN	157
<b>8</b>	<b>CONCLUSION</b>	<b>163</b>

## TABLES

Table 1-1 - Proposed key components of the project (132kV OHPL)	2
Table 1-2 – Details of the EAP	5
Table 1-3 – Legislation Requirements as detailed in Appendix 4 of GNR 326	7
Table 2-1 – Farm portions on which the proposed powerline is located	9
Table 2-2 - Co-ordinates of the OHPL route and substations	11
Table 2-3 – 132kV Grid Connection for the Igolide WEF - Technical Details	12
Table 3-1 – Impact Summary	23
Table 3-2 – Applicable National Legislation	28
Table 3-3 – Objectives and Applicability of the IFC Performance Standards	47
Table 4-1 – Roles and Responsibilities	55
Table 4-2 - Documentation Reporting and Compliance Requirements as per the generic EMPs	61

Table 5-1 – Format of a general environmental control illustrating aspects which are predefined versus those which still need to be completed by the contractor	67
Table 5-2 - Activities and management measures as per generic EMPr (Part B: Section 1)	68
Table 6-1 – Structure of EMPr	70
Table 6-2 – Contractor laydown area and site access: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures	71
Table 6-3 – Vehicle, Equipment and Machinery Management: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures	73
Table 6-4 – Fuel and Chemical Management: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures	74
Table 6-5 – Waste Management: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures	76
Table 6-6 – Health and Safety: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures	79
Table 6-7 – Water Management: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures	83
Table 6-8 – Air quality: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures	86
Table 6-9 – Noise: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures	88
Table 6-10 – Soil, Land Use and Agriculture: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures	90
Table 6-11 – Aquatic Biodiversity: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures	92
Table 6-12 – Plant Species: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures	94
Table 6-13 – Animal Species: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures	97
Table 6-14 – Avifauna: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures	100
Table 6-15 – Archaeological and Cultural Heritage: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures	102
Table 6-16 – Palaeontology: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures	104
Table 6-17 – Traffic: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures	105
Table 6-18 – Visual: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures	106
Table 6-19 – Socio-Economic: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures	109
Table 6-20 – Geotechnical: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures	116
Table 6-21 – Terrestrial Biodiversity: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures	118
Table 7-1 - Recommended monitoring measures	127
Table 7-2 - Recommended monitoring measures	131
Table 7-3 – Recommended inspection and monitoring measures	151

---

## FIGURES

Figure 1-1 – Locality map for the proposed 132kV grid connection for the Igolide WEF	4
Figure 2-1 - Boundary of the property or properties traversed by the proposed project	10
Figure 2-2 - Locality map with coordinates for the proposed 132kV Grid Connection and associated infrastructure for the Igolide WEF	11
<b>Figure 2-3: Typical Substation Layout (illustrative only)</b>	16
<b>Figure 2-4: Typical Distribution System</b>	17
Figure 3-1 – Combined Sensitivity Map for the 132kV Grid Connection associate with the Igolide WEF	22
Figure 7-1 - Reporting Structure with regards to Grievances	144
Figure 7-2 - Process for Internal Grievances	145
Figure 7-3 - Process for External Grievances	146
Figure 7-4 - Integrated Waste Management Approach to Waste (Source: <a href="http://www.enviroserv.co.za/pages/content.asp?SectionId=496">http://www.enviroserv.co.za/pages/content.asp?SectionId=496</a> )	159

---

## APPENDICES

APPENDIX A

EAP CV

APPENDIX B

EAP DECLARATION OF INTEREST AND OATH UNDERTAKING

APPENDIX C

MAPS

APPENDIX D

SUBSTATION GENERIC EMPR

APPENDIX E

OHPL GENERIC EMPR

# 1 INTRODUCTION

---

## 1.1 BACKGROUND AND TERMS OF REFERENCE

ENERTRAG South Africa (Pty) Ltd (ENERTRAG) is proposing to develop a 132kV switching station, a 132kV single or double circuit powerline, and termination point upgrades (as may be necessary), including possible expansion, to allow for the proposed new 132kV powerline connection (hereafter the “Project”) (**Figure 1-1**). The Project is intended to feed the electricity generated by the approved 100MW Igolide Wind Energy Facility (“WEF”) (DFFE reference number: 14/12/16/3/3/2/2385, EA date 31 January 2024) to the national energy grid, with the point of connection being the existing East Drie Five Substation. The project includes the following components:

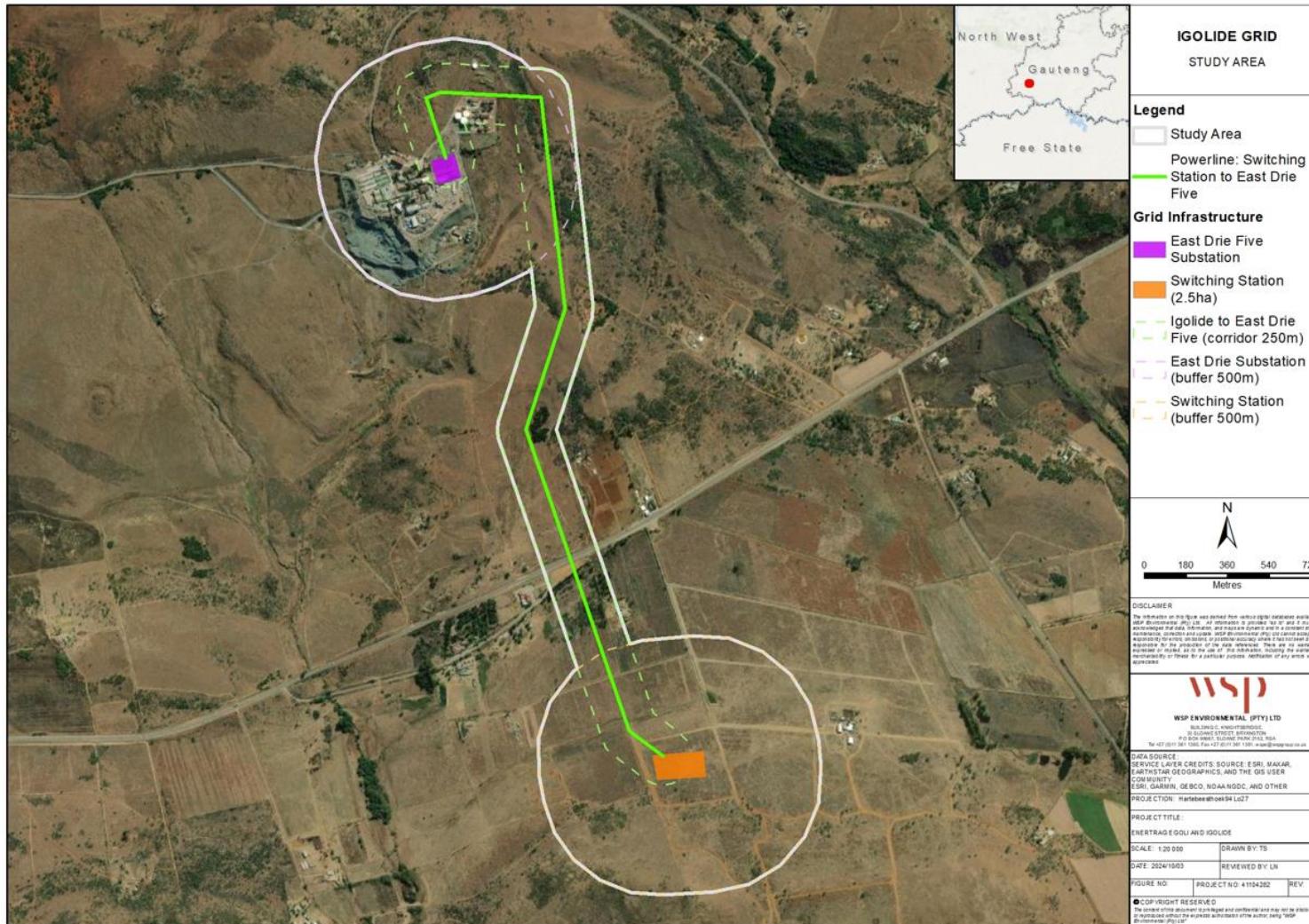
- Construction of 1 x 132kV powerline (either single or double circuit). A corridor of up to 250m in width (125m on either side of the centre line) has been identified for the placement of the up to 132kV single or double circuit power line to allow flexibility in the design of the final powerline route, and for the avoidance of sensitive environmental features (where possible).
- Construction of 1 x 132kV switching station. The switching station assessment site is ~2.5ha as the switching station will be located adjacent to the approved 132kV on-site IPP substation (DFFE reference number: 14/12/16/3/3/2/2385, EA date 31 January 2024) which was assessed as part of the Igolide WEF Environmental Authorisation process. A 500m buffer around the switching station has been identified to ensure flexibility in routing the powerline. The switching station will include, but is not limited to:
  - A high voltage substation yard to allow for multiple 132kV feeder bays.
  - Standard substation electrical equipment, including but not limited to, busbars, office area, operation and control room, workshop and storage area, feeder bays, stringer strain beams, insulators, isolators, conductors, circuit breakers, lightning arrestors, relays, capacitor banks, batteries, wave trappers, switchyard, metering and indication instruments, equipment for carrier current, surge protection and outgoing feeders, as may be required.
  - Control building, telecommunication infrastructure, oil dam(s), etc.
  - Workshop and office area within the switching station footprint.
  - Fencing around the switching station.
  - All the access road infrastructure to and within the switching station.
  - Associated infrastructure, including but not limited to, lighting, fencing, and buildings required for operation (ablutions, office, workshop and control room, security fencing and gating, parking area, concrete batching plant (if required), waste storage/disposal and storerooms).
- Upgrading of the East Drie Five Substation to accommodate the powerline from the Igolide WEF (feeder bay and transformer upgrade), including expansion within the yard, where required, with a footprint of up to 4ha. Standard substation infrastructure will include: operation and control room, transformer oil dam, and standard substation electrical equipment (feeder bays, transformers, busbars, stringer strain beams, insulators, isolators, conductors, circuit breakers, lightning arrestors, relays, capacitor banks, batteries, wave/line trappers, switchyard, metering and indication instruments, equipment for carrier current, surge protection and outgoing feeders, as may be required)

**Table 1-1 - Proposed key components of the project (132kV OHPL)**

Overhead Powerline	Description
Powerline capacity	132kV
Powerline corridors width	A grid connection corridor has been identified for the assessment and placement of the grid connection infrastructure, comprising 250m (i.e., 125m on either side of centre line). The entire corridor is proposed for development provided the infrastructure remains within the assessed corridor.
Powerline servitude width	32m
Powerline pylons:	Monopole or Lattice pylons, or a combination of both where required and as informed by detailed design
Construction clearance required (per pylon)	Permanent footprint sizes may vary depending on design type, however up to 140m <sup>2</sup> may be required for each pylon foundations, depending on the number and design of the foundation.
Powerline pylon height:	40m
Minimum conductor clearance	8.1m
Pylon spacing	Up to 250m apart, depending on complexity and slope of terrain
Pylon designs	<p>Various pylon design types are considered (and will be determined during the detailed design engineering phase), and may include any of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>132kV (single or double circuit)</li> <li>Intermediate self-supporting monopole</li> <li>Inline or angle-strain self-supporting monopole</li> <li>Suspension self-supporting monopole</li> <li>Triple pole structure</li> <li>Cross rope suspension;</li> <li>Guyed "V" Structure</li> <li>Steel lattice structure; or</li> <li>Similar pylon design at 132kV specification</li> </ul> <p>The above designs may require anchors with guy-wires or be anchorless. For 132kV structures, concrete foundation sizes may vary depending on design type up to 140m<sup>2</sup> (12m by 12m), with depths reaching up to 4m typically in a rectangular 'pad' shape.</p>
<b>Station (Switching Station connection components)</b>	
Switching station	<p>The total footprint for the onsite switching station will be up to 2.5ha in extent.</p> <p>The on-site Eskom switching station will consist of a high voltage substation yard to allow for multiple 132kV feeder bays and transformers, control building, telecommunication infrastructure, and other substation components, as required.</p> <p>Standard substation electrical equipment, including but not limited to transformers, busbars, office area, operation and control room,</p>

Overhead Powerline	Description
	<p>workshop, and storage area, feeder bays, transformers, stringer strain beams, insulators, isolators, conductors, circuit breakers, lightning arrestors, relays, capacitor banks, batteries, wave trappers, switchyard, metering and indication instruments, equipment for carrier current, surge protection and outgoing feeders, as may be needed.</p> <p>A 500m buffer around the switching station will be assessed to ensure flexibility in routing the powerline.</p>
Station Capacity	132kV
Corridor width	A grid connection corridor has been identified for the assessment and placement of the grid connection infrastructure, comprising 250m (125m on either side of the centre line) around the entire perimeter of the proposed substation sites. The entire corridor is proposed for development provided the infrastructure remains within the assessed corridor.
Associated infrastructure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ Telecommunication infrastructure (including along the length of the powerline and with the substations)</li> <li>▪ Oil dam(s)</li> <li>▪ Workshop and controlling building and office area within the substation footprint</li> <li>▪ Fencing around the substation</li> <li>▪ Lighting and security infrastructure</li> <li>▪ All the access road infrastructure to and within the substation</li> <li>▪ Maintenance road/access track along the length of the powerline for maintenance purposes</li> </ul> <p>Further ancillary infrastructure including but not limited to lighting, lightning protection, fencing, buildings required for operation (ablutions, office, workshop and control room, security fencing and gating, parking area, concrete batching plant (if required), waste storage/disposal and storerooms).</p>
Termination works	Upgrades to the existing East Drie Five Substation will also be required, including possible expansion within the yard, where required, with a footprint of up to 4ha. This includes the installation of additional feeder bays to accommodate the power being evacuated from the proposed Igolide WEF and transformer upgrades.
Roads Infrastructure	
Road servitude and access roads	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ During construction, a permanent access road along the length of the powerline corridor, between 4 – 6m wide will be established to allow for large crane movement. This track will then be utilised for maintenance during operation.</li> <li>▪ Permanent access roads to and within the substation, up to 8m wide, will be established.</li> </ul>





## 1.2 DETAILS OF THE ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT PRACTITIONER

WSP was appointed in the role of Independent Environmental Assessment Practitioner (EAP) to undertake the BA process for the proposed project. The CV of the EAP is available in **Appendix A**. The EAP declaration of interest and undertaking is included in **Appendix B**. **Table 1-2** details the relevant contact details of the EAP.

**Table 1-2 – Details of the EAP**

<b>EAP:</b>	<b>WSP Group Africa (Pty) Ltd</b>
<b>Contact Person:</b>	Ashlea Strong
<b>Physical Address:</b>	Building C, Knightsbridge, 33 Sloane Street, Bryanston, Johannesburg
<b>Postal Address:</b>	P.O. Box 98867, Sloane Park 2151, Johannesburg
<b>Telephone:</b>	011 361 1392
<b>Fax:</b>	011 361 1301
<b>Email:</b>	<a href="mailto:Ashlea.Strong@wsp.com">Ashlea.Strong@wsp.com</a>
<b>EAP Qualifications:</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Masters in Environmental Management, University of the Free State</li> <li>■ B Tech, Nature Conservation, Technikon SA</li> <li>■ National Diploma in Nature Conservation, Technikon SA</li> </ul>
<b>EAPASA Registration Number:</b>	EAPASA (2019/1005)

## 1.3 PURPOSE OF THE EMPR

An EMPr is defined as “an environmental management tool used to ensure that undue or reasonably avoidable adverse impacts of the construction, operation and decommissioning of a project are prevented or mitigated, and that the positive benefits of the projects are enhanced.”

This EMPr has been compiled in accordance with Appendix 4 of GNR 982, in compliance with section 24N of NEMA, with the purpose of ensuring that negative impacts are reduced, and positive effects are enhanced through a process of continual improvement, during the construction and operational phases of the Project.

To facilitate compliance to the EMPr by appointed contractors and sub-contractors, it is required that all onsite personnel are aware of the requirements of the EMPr as well as the prescribed penalties should a non-conformance be identified during the construction and operation activities.

Further to the above, appointed contractors and sub-contractors will also be required to comply with all relevant legislation and standards.

**A hard copy of the EMPr must always be in the site office and made available to officials at request.**

### 1.3.1 EMPr OBJECTIVES

The EMPr has the following objectives:

- Identify mitigation measures and environmental specifications which are required to be implemented for the planning, construction and rehabilitation and operation phases of the project in order to manage and minimise the extent of potential environmental impacts associated with the facility;
- Ensure that all the phases of the proposed project do not result in undue or reasonably avoidable adverse environmental impacts, and ensure that any potential environmental benefits are enhanced;
- Identify entities responsible for the implementation of the measures and outline functions and responsibilities;
- Create management structures that address the concerns and complaints of interested and affected parties (I&APs) with regards to the proposed project;
- Propose mechanisms and frequency for monitoring compliance, and preventing long-term or permanent environmental degradation; Comply with all applicable laws, regulations, standards and guidelines for the protection of the environment;
- Train onsite personnel with regard to their environmental obligations; and
- Facilitate appropriate and proactive responses to unforeseen events or changes in project implementation that was not considered in the BA process.

### 1.3.2 ENVIRONMENTAL OBJECTIVES AND TARGETS

To facilitate compliance to the EMPr, ENERTRAG must comply with all relevant legislation and standards and make all personnel aware of the requirements of the EMPr, as well as the prescribed penalties should a non-conformance be identified during the different phases of the proposed Project.

It is recommended that environmental objectives (as outlined in this document) be emphasised as minimum requirements. Objectives include:

- Encourage good management practices through planning and commitment to environmental issues; and
- Provide rational and practical environmental guidelines to:
  - Minimise disturbance of the natural environment;
  - Minimise fugitive emissions;
  - Minimise impact of added traffic into the area;
  - Ensure surface and groundwater resource protection;
  - Prevent or minimise all forms of pollution;
  - Protect indigenous flora and fauna;
  - Prevent soil erosion;
  - Promote sustainable use of resources;
  - Adopt the best practical means available to prevent or minimise adverse environmental impacts;
  - Comply with all applicable laws, regulations, standards and guidelines for the protection of the environment;
  - Promote the reduction, reuse, recycling and recovery of waste;
  - Develop waste management practices based on prevention, minimisation, recycling, treatment or disposal of waste;

- Describe all monitoring procedures required to identify impacts on the environment;
- Define how the management of the environment is reported and performance evaluated; and
- Train onsite personnel with regard to their environmental obligations.

## 1.4 STRUCTURE OF THE EMPR

For the purposes of demonstrating legal compliance, **Table 1-3** cross-references the sections within the EMPr with the requirements as per Appendix 4 of GNR 326 of 2017.

**Table 1-3 – Legislation Requirements as detailed in Appendix 4 of GNR 326**

Appendix 4	Legislated Requirements as detailed in Appendix 4 of GNR 326	Relevant Report Section
(a)	details of-	
	(i) the EAP who prepared the EMPr; and	Section 1.2
	(ii) the expertise of that EAP to prepare an EMPr, including a curriculum vitae;	Section 1.2 Appendix A
(b)	a detailed description of the aspects of the activity that are covered by the EMPr as identified by the project description;	Section 2
(c)	a map at an appropriate scale which superimposes the proposed activity, its associated structures, and infrastructure on the environmental sensitivities of the preferred site, indicating any areas that any areas that should be avoided, including buffers;	Section 3 Appendix C
(d)	A description of the impact management outcomes, including management statements, identifying the impacts and risks that need to be avoided, managed and mitigated as identified through the environmental impact assessment process for all phases of the development including-	Section 3.2 and Section 5
	(i) planning and design;	
	(ii) pre-construction activities;	
	(iii) construction activities;	
	(iv) rehabilitation of the environment after construction and where applicable post closure; and	
	(v) where relevant, operation activities;	
(f)	a description of proposed impact management actions, identifying the manner in which the impact management outcomes contemplated in paragraphs (d) will be achieved, and must, where applicable, include actions to -	Section 5
	(i) avoid, modify, remedy, control or stop any action, activity or process which causes pollution or environmental degradation;	



Appendix 4	Legislated Requirements as detailed in Appendix 4 of GNR 326	Relevant Report Section
	(ii) comply with any prescribed environmental management standards or practices; (iii) comply with any applicable provisions of the Act regarding closure, where applicable; and (iv) comply with any provisions of the Act regarding financial provisions for rehabilitation, where applicable	
(g)	the method of monitoring the implementation of the impact management actions contemplated in paragraph (f);	Section 4
(h)	the frequency of monitoring the implementation of the impact management actions contemplated in paragraph (f);	Section 4
(i)	an indication of the persons who will be responsible for the implementation of the impact management actions;	Section 4 / Section 5
(j)	the time periods within which the impact management actions contemplated in paragraph (f) must be implemented;	Section 5
(k)	the mechanism for monitoring compliance with the impact management actions contemplated in paragraph (f);	Section 4
(l)	a program for reporting on compliance, taking into account the requirements as prescribed by the Regulations	Section 4 / Section 5
(m)	an environmental awareness plan describing the manner in which- (i) the applicant intends to inform his or her employees of any environmental risk which may result from their work; and (ii) risks must be dealt with in order to avoid pollution or the degradation of the environment; and	Section 4.2
(n)	any specific information that may be required by the competent authority	N/A

## 2 PROJECT DESCRIPTION

This section provides a description of the location of the project site location and a summary of the project details. The descriptions encompass the activities to be done during the construction and operational phases.

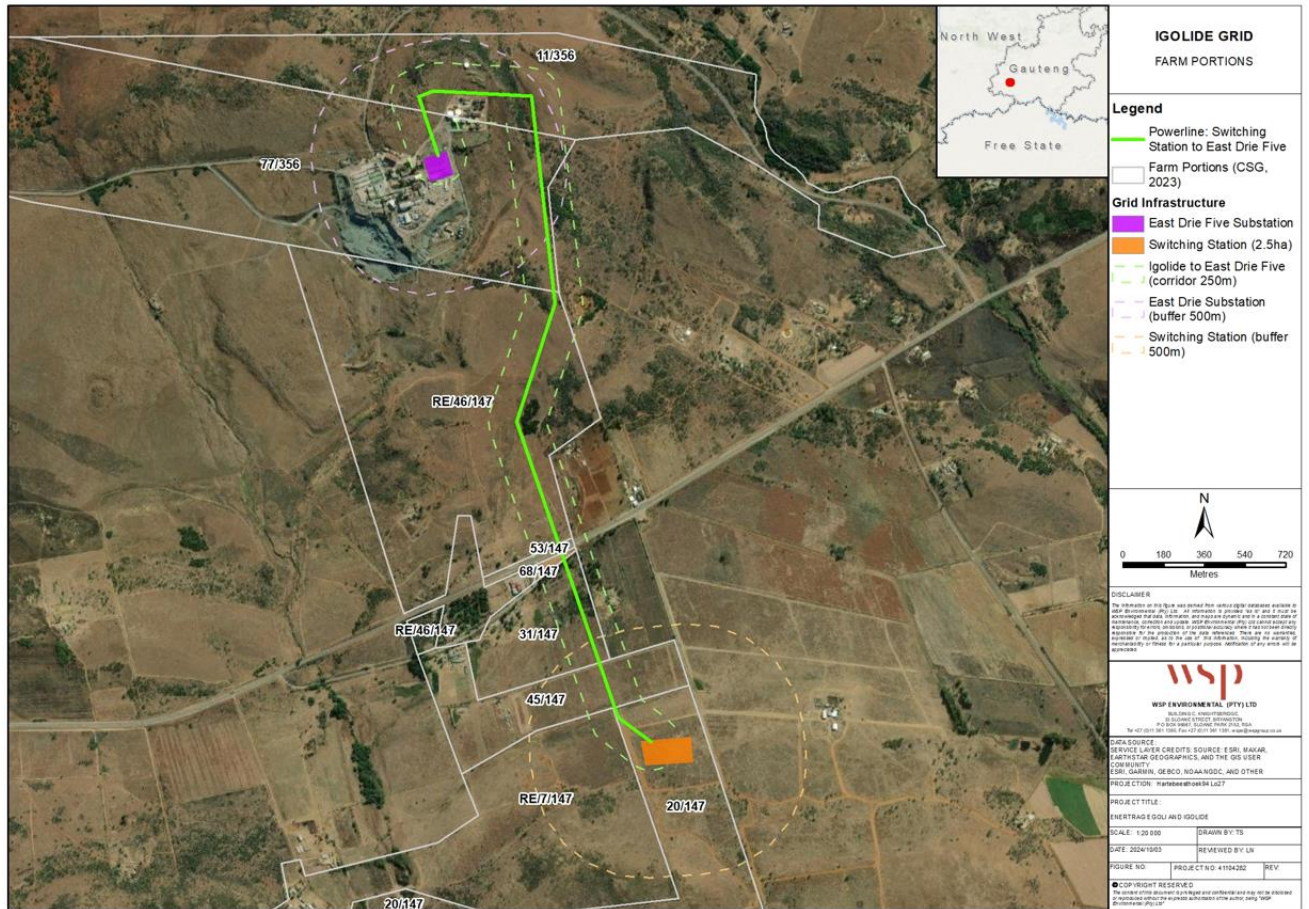
### 2.1 LOCATION OF THE PROPOSED PROJECT

The proposed project will be developed within a project area of approximately 680ha (the entire extent of the proposed project is located within the Central Corridor of the Strategic Transmission Corridors). The Project is located approximately 6km northeast of Fochville, within the Merafong City Local Municipality (MCLM) in the Gauteng Province.

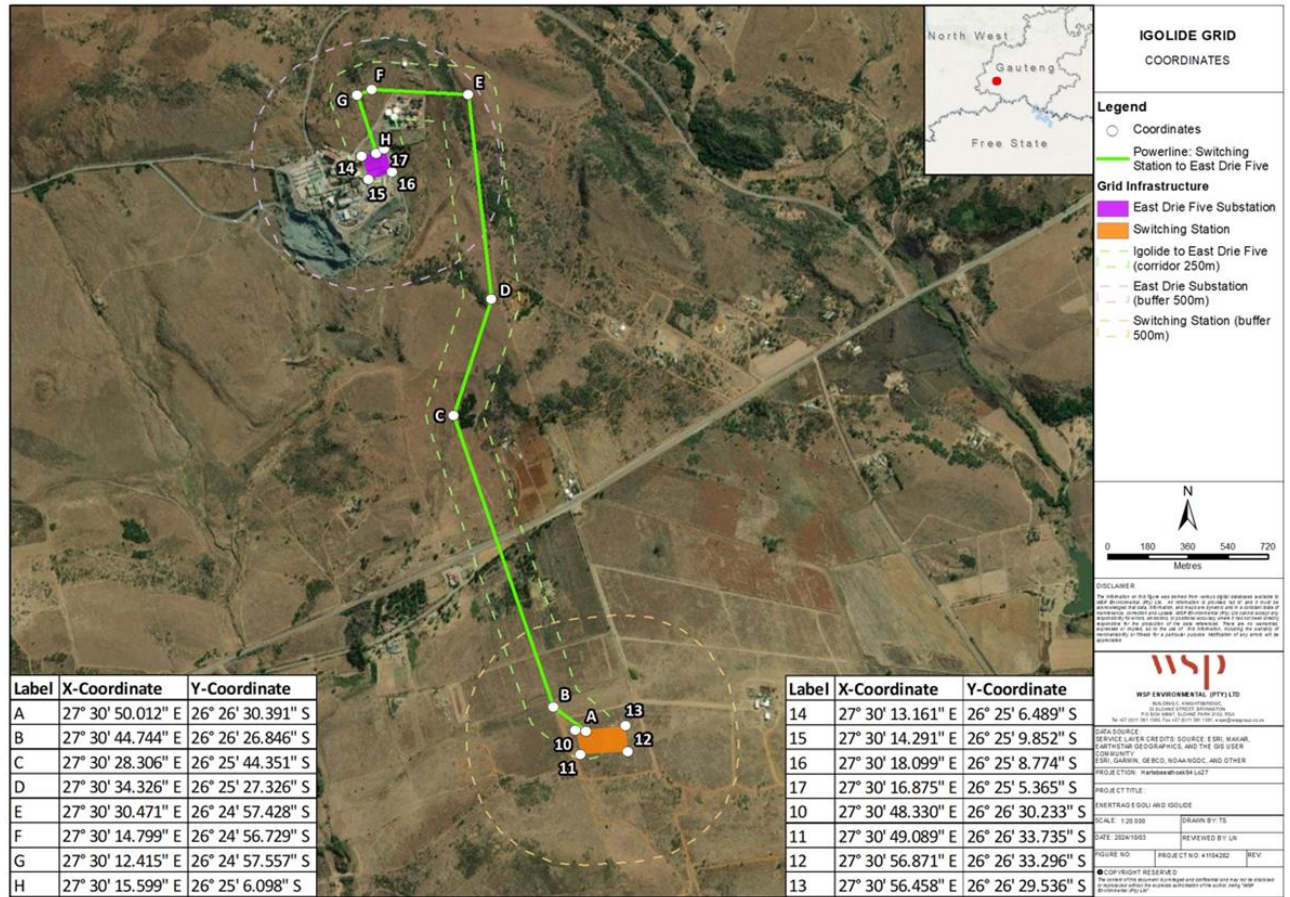
The details of the properties associated with the proposed Project (switching station and powerline), including the 21-digit Surveyor General (SG) codes for the cadastral land parcels are outlined in **Table 2-1** and the boundaries of the farm portions traversed by the Project is shown in **Figure 2-1**. The coordinates of the OHPL route are presented in **Table 2-2**.

**Table 2-1 – Farm portions on which the proposed powerline is located**

Farm Name	21 Digit Surveyor General Code of Each Cadastral Land Parcel
Portion 20 of Farm Kraalkop 147IQ	T0IQ00000000014700020
Portion 31 of Kraalkop 147 IQ	T0IQ00000000014700031
Portion 45 of Kraalkop 147 IQ	T0IQ00000000014700045
Portion 46 of Kraalkop 147 IQ	T0IQ00000000014700046
Portion 53 of Kraalkop 147 IQ	T0IQ00000000014700053
Portion 68 of Kraalkop 147 IQ	T0IQ00000000014700068
Portion 11 of Leeupoort 356 IQ	T0IQ00000000035600011
Portion 77 of Leeupoort 356 IQ	T0IQ00000000035600077







**Figure 2-2 - Locality map with coordinates for the proposed 132kV Grid Connection and associated infrastructure for the Igolide WEF**

**Table 2-2 - Co-ordinates of the OHPL route and substations**

Point	Longitude	Latitude
A	27° 30' 50.012" E	26° 26' 30.391" S
B	27° 30' 44.744" E	26° 26' 26.846" S
C	27° 30' 28.306" E	26° 25' 44.351" S
D	27° 30' 34.326" E	26° 25' 27.326" S
E	27° 30' 30.471" E	26° 24' 57.428" S
F	27° 30' 14.799" E	26° 24' 56.729" S
G	27° 30' 12.415" E	26° 24' 57.557" S
H	27° 30' 15.599" E	26° 25' 6.098" S
10	27° 30' 48.330" E	26° 26' 30.233" S
11	27° 30' 49.089" E	26° 26' 33.735" S



Point	Longitude	Latitude
12	27° 30' 56.871" E	26° 26' 33.296" S
13	27° 30' 56.458" E	26° 26' 29.536" S
14	27° 30' 13.161" E	26° 25' 6.489" S
15	27° 30' 14.291" E	26° 25' 9.852" S
16	27° 30' 18.099" E	26° 25' 8.774" S
17	27° 30' 16.875" E	26° 25' 5.365" S

## 2.2 PROJECT INFRASTRUCTURE

The proposed project entails the construction of a 132kV grid connection overhead powerline including associated grid connection infrastructure, in order to connect the authorised Igolide WEF to the nearby East Drie Five Substation. The powerline will be approximately 4km in length.

The onsite grid switching station will consist of a high voltage substation yard to allow for multiple 132kV feeder bays and transformers, control building, telecommunication infrastructure, access roads, etc. The area for the onsite switching station will be up to 2.5ha. In addition, an area of approximately 4ha will be required for any upgrades that may be required at the East Drie Five Substation. The assessment area for the 132kV powerline and will cover a corridor of up to 250m , including a 500m wide buffer around the entire perimeter of the proposed substation sites, to allow for flexibility in the design of the final OHL and avoidance of sensitive features, where possible.

A technical summary of the 132 kV grid connection and its associated infrastructure is included in **Table 2-3**.

**Table 2-3 – 132kV Grid Connection for the Igolide WEF - Technical Details**

Overhead Powerline	Description
Powerline capacity	132kV
Powerline corridors width	A grid connection corridor has been identified for the assessment and placement of the grid connection infrastructure, comprising 250m (i.e., 125m on either side of centre line). The entire corridor is proposed for development provided the infrastructure remains within the assessed corridor.
Powerline servitude width	32m
Powerline pylons:	Monopole or Lattice pylons, or a combination of both where required and as informed by detailed design
Construction clearance required (per pylon)	Permanent footprint sizes may vary depending on design type, however up to 140m <sup>2</sup> may be required for each pylon foundations, depending on the number and design of the foundation.
Powerline pylon height:	40m

Overhead Powerline	Description
Minimum conductor clearance	8.1m
Pylon spacing	Up to 250m apart, depending on complexity and slope of terrain
Pylon designs	<p>Various pylon design types are considered (and will be determined during the detailed design engineering phase), and may include any of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>132kV (single or double circuit)</li> <li>Intermediate self-supporting monopole</li> <li>Inline or angle-strain self-supporting monopole</li> <li>Suspension self-supporting monopole</li> <li>Triple pole structure</li> <li>Cross rope suspension;</li> <li>Guyed "V" Structure</li> <li>Steel lattice structure; or</li> <li>Similar pylon design at 132kV specification</li> </ul> <p>The above designs may require anchors with guy-wires or be anchorless. For 132kV structures, concrete foundation sizes may vary depending on design type up to 140m<sup>2</sup> (12m by 12m), with depths reaching up to 4m typically in a rectangular 'pad' shape.</p>
<b>Station (Switching station connection components)</b>	
Switching Station	<p>The total footprint for the onsite switching station will be up to 2.5ha in extent.</p> <p>The on-site Eskom switching station will consist of a high voltage substation yard to allow for multiple 132kV feeder bays and transformers, control building, telecommunication infrastructure, and other substation components, as required.</p> <p>Standard substation electrical equipment, including but not limited to transformers, busbars, office area, operation and control room, workshop, and storage area, feeder bays, transformers, stringer strain beams, insulators, isolators, conductors, circuit breakers, lightning arrestors, relays, capacitor banks, batteries, wave trappers, switchyard, metering and indication instruments, equipment for carrier current, surge protection and outgoing feeders, as may be needed.</p> <p>A 500m buffer around the switching station will be assessed to ensure flexibility in routing the powerline.</p>
Station Capacity	132kV
Corridor width	A grid connection corridor has been identified for the assessment and placement of the grid connection infrastructure, comprising 250m (125m on either side of the centre line) around the entire perimeter of the proposed substation sites. The entire corridor is proposed for development provided the infrastructure remains within the assessed corridor.
Associated infrastructure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Telecommunication infrastructure (including along the length of the powerline and with the substations)</li> <li>Oil dam(s)</li> </ul>

Overhead Powerline	Description
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Workshop and controlling building and office area within the substation footprint</li> <li>Fencing around the substation</li> <li>Lighting and security infrastructure</li> <li>All the access road infrastructure to and within the substation</li> <li>Maintenance road/access track along the length of the powerline for maintenance purposes</li> </ul> <p>Further ancillary infrastructure including but not limited to lighting, lightning protection, fencing, buildings required for operation (ablutions, office, workshop and control room, security fencing and gating, parking area, concrete batching plant (if required), waste storage/disposal and storerooms).</p>
Termination works	Upgrades to the existing East Drie Five Substation will also be required, including possible expansion within the yard, where required, with a footprint of up to 4ha. This includes the installation of additional feeder bays to accommodate the power being evacuated from the proposed Igolide WEF and transformer upgrades.
Roads Infrastructure	
Road servitude and access roads	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>During construction, a permanent access road along the length of the powerline corridor, between 4 – 6m wide will be established to allow for large crane movement. This track will then be utilised for maintenance during operation.</li> <li>Permanent access roads to and within the substation, up to 8m wide, will be established.</li> </ul>

### 2.2.1 OVERHEAD POWERLINE

It is proposed that Igolide WEF will connect to the existing East Drie Five Substation through a 132 kV OHPL (either single or double circuit) between the grid connection substation portion.

The onsite switching station will consist of high voltage substation yard to allow for multiple 132 kV feeder bays and transformers, control building, telecommunication infrastructure, access roads, etc. The area for the switching station will be up to 2.5 ha. The OHPL will have a 250 m corridor (125m on either side of the centre line and the switching station (including terminating substation works) will have a 500m around the entire perimeter of the substation and termination works). This application includes the necessary 132 kV voltage electrical components required for connection at the existing East Drie Five Substation (i.e., the termination works).

### 2.2.2 ELECTRICITY POWER TRANSMISSION AND DISTRIBUTION

Electricity is carried at high voltages (kilovolts, or kV) along transmission lines in order to reduce the electrical losses that occur over long distances between power generation and consumption points. In order for electricity to be transmitted safely and efficiently over long distances, it must be at a high voltage and a low current. The voltages at which power is generated at the power generation facility are too low for transmission over long distances. To overcome this problem, transformers are installed at the power stations and substations to increase the voltage level. Transformer's step-up

the voltage from, for example, 11 or 22 kV to higher voltages such as 66 kV, 132kV, 220 kV, 275 kV, 400 kV or 765 kV, and feed the generated power into Eskom's national grid.

When the electricity arrives at a distribution substation, bulk supplies of electricity are taken for primary distribution to towns and industrial areas, groups of villages, farms and similar concentrations of consumers. The lines are fed into intermediate substations where transformers reduce (step-down) the voltage level. This could be 11 kV in large factories and 380/220 Volts in shops and homes. Power is distributed to end-users via reticulation power lines and cables. **Figure 2-3** illustrates a typical distribution system.

As of March 2019, South Africa's transmission network comprised 32,802 km of line length, 167 substations and 152,135 MVA of transformer capacity. All the high voltage lines, plus the transformers and related equipment, form the transmission system also known as the national grid.

### 2.2.3 COMPONENTS OF A TYPICAL TRANSMISSION LINE SYSTEM

The main components of a typical electrical transmission system include the following:

#### 2.2.3.1 TRANSMISSION STRUCTURES

Transmission structures are the most visible components of the power transmission system. Their function is to inter alia, keep the high-voltage conductors separated from their surroundings and from each other. Some structure designs reflect the specific function of the structure, while others have come about as a result of technological progress.

#### 2.2.3.2 CONDUCTORS

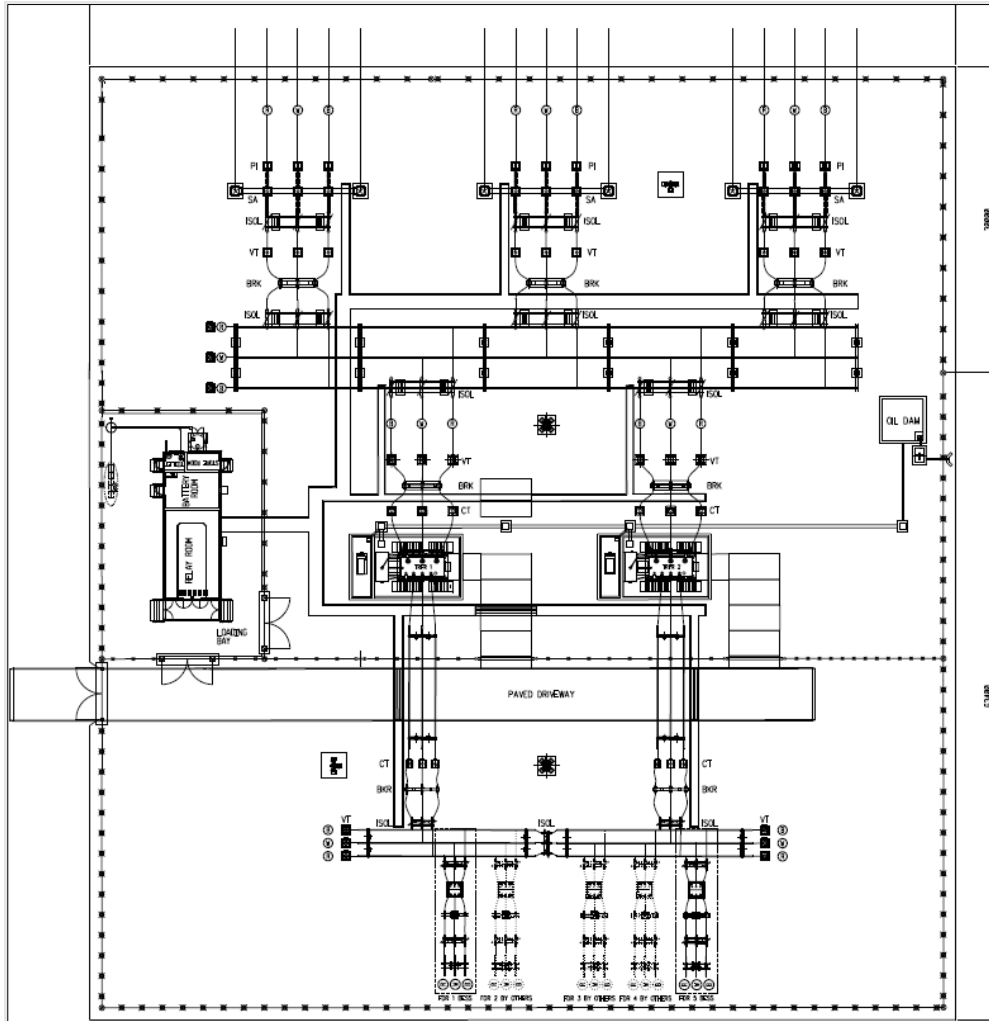
Conductors carry the power through and from the grid. Generally, several conductors per phase are strung from structure to structure. The number of conductors per phase depends on the performance of the line, typically, more than one conductor per phase is used when the operating voltage exceeds 132kV. Conductors are constructed primarily of aluminium, aluminium-alloy, steel or other types of materials as appropriate.

#### 2.2.3.3 SUBSTATIONS

The very high voltages used for power transmission are converted at substations to lower voltages for further distribution and consumer use. Substations vary in size and configuration but may cover several hectares; they are cleared of vegetation and typically surfaced with gravel. They are fenced and are normally reached by a permanent access road. In general, substations include a variety of indoor and outdoor electrical equipment such as switchgear, transformers, control and protection panels and batteries, and usually include other components such as control buildings, fencing, lighting etc.

For the substation to perform it needs sophisticated protection equipment to detect faults and abnormal conditions that may occur on the network. Action may consist for example, of automatically tripping a transmission line to cater for abnormal conditions such as lightning strikes, fires or trees falling on transmission lines. This action is necessary for safety reasons in the event of an accident or to maintain electricity supply and limit the disruption caused.

**Figure 2-3** provides an illustration of a typical substation layout.

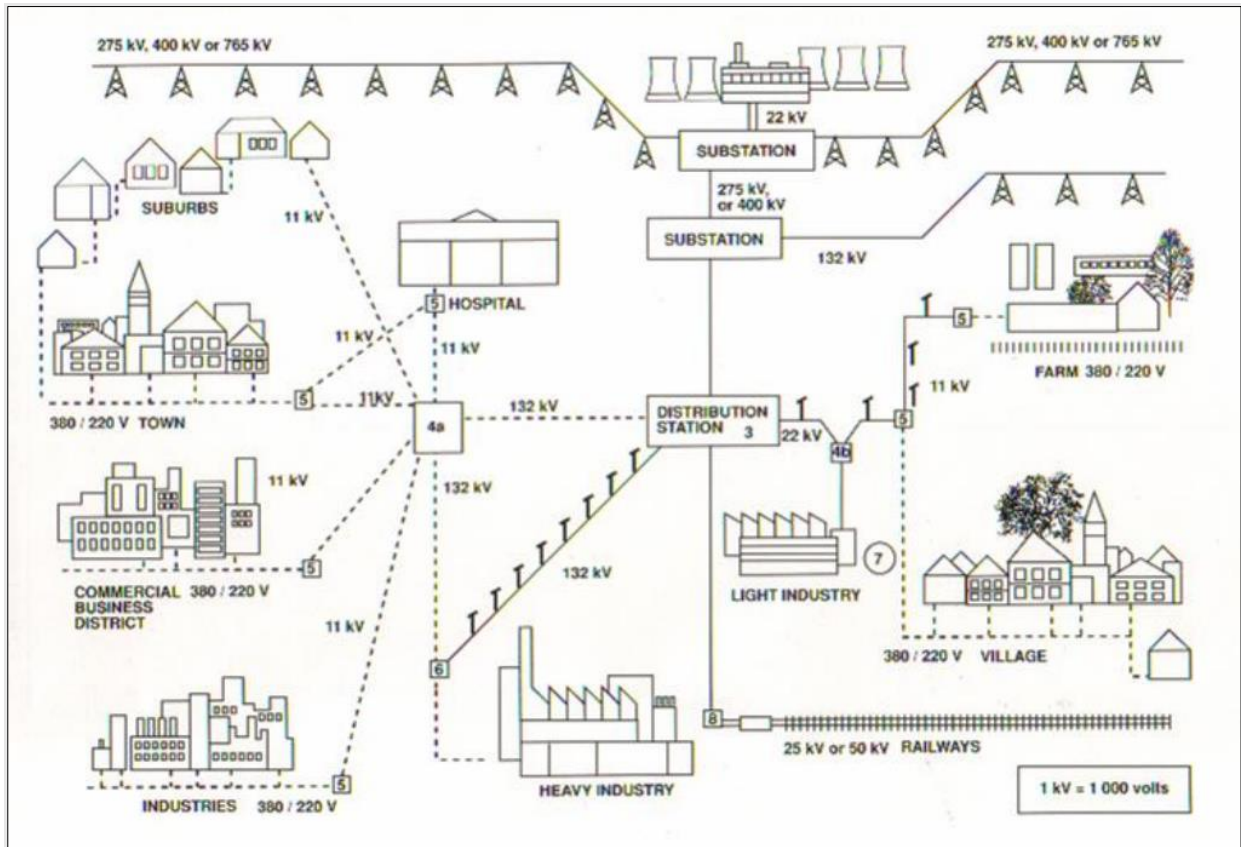


**Figure 2-3: Typical Substation Layout (illustrative only)**

#### 2.2.3.4 TRANSFORMERS

Transformers are major items found in a transmission or distribution substation. There may be a number of different types of transformers in a substation such as power transformers, voltage transformers or current transformers.

A power transformer is a very simple device piece of electrical equipment where alternating current (AC) is led through a primary coil of wire, which produces an alternating magnetic field in the ring-shaped core of soft iron. This in turn creates a voltage in a secondary coil, from which the output current can be drawn. If the secondary coil has more turns than the primary coil, the output voltage is higher than the input voltage. This is a step-up transformer. A step-down transformer has more turns in the primary coil than in the secondary coil to reduce the voltage (**Figure 2-4**).



**Figure 2-4: Typical Distribution System**

## 2.3 PROPOSED PROJECT DEVELOPMENT ACTIVITIES

The typical steps involved in the construction and operation of a transmission line is summarised below:

- Planning Phase
  - Step 1: Surveying of the development area and negotiation with affected landowners; and
  - Step 2: Final design and micro-siting of the infrastructure based on geotechnical, topographical conditions and potential environmental sensitivities.
- Construction Phase
  - Step 3: Vegetation clearing;
  - Step 4: Assembly and erection of infrastructure on site;
  - Step 5: Stringing of conductors; and
  - Step 6: Rehabilitation of disturbed areas and protection of erosion sensitive areas.
- Operation Phase
  - Step 7: Continued maintenance during operation.



## **2.3.1 CONSTRUCTION PHASE**

### **2.3.1.1 CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE**

Construction of the Overhead Powerline (OHPL) and associated infrastructure is anticipated to take 6 - 24 months.

### **2.3.1.2 SITE ESTABLISHMENT AND TRANSPORTATION OF MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT TO SITE**

The selected contractor will establish a temporary site camp including, but not be limited to, temporary offices, laydown areas for equipment and materials, storage facilities, ablutions, waste storage and handling area, and parking area. The location and extent of the Contractors camp, to be established within the Project, are undertaken as part of a different application and are not covered in the EMP. It is anticipated that materials will be collected on a daily basis from the contractor laydown area for the construction activities along the servitude. This limits areas to be impacted for storage along the servitude as well as for security purposes when activities cease at the end of each day.

The required materials and equipment will be transported to the site via public roads and private farm roads/tracks along the proposed servitude, as far as possible. Large mobile plant including mechanical/hydraulic augers, mobile cranes, bucket trucks/cherry pickers will be used during installation of the OHPL.

### **2.3.1.3 LABOUR REQUIREMENTS**

During site preparation and installation of Project related infrastructure the selected Contractor, working on behalf of Igolide WEF, is anticipated to require 20-30 people to undertake the required works. Approximately 5% of workers would be highly skilled, 15% medium skilled, and 80% low skilled subject to a skills assessment and confirmation of staffing availability.

### **2.3.1.4 VEGETATION CLEARING**

Due to the nature of the vegetation within the Project area, which is predominantly sparse, low shrubs and grasses, limited vegetation clearing will be required. Clearing of vegetation will be limited to pylon areas to facilitate installation of each pylon and that required for the substation and associated infrastructure footprints and clearing of roads where existing roads are not available. Clearing will be done in phases along the OHPL route as required prior to installation activities.

### **2.3.1.5 INSTALLATION OF OHPL**

Standard OHPL installation methods will be employed, which entails the excavations for foundations, planting of tower (concrete casting may be required) and stringing of the conductors.

A number of tower options could be utilised with a maximum height up to 40m above ground level, which are reported to have a life expectancy of more than 25 years. The actual height of the pylons will vary based on the site topography to maintain the specified clearance of the transmission lines.

Once the pylons have been installed, the lines will be strung. The Contractor in collaboration with Eskom will be responsible for functional testing and commissioning of the OHPL. This consists of connecting the line from the common switching station to the MTS.

### 2.3.1.6 SWITCHING STATION

The switching station assessment site is ~2.5ha as the switching station will be located adjacent to the approved 132kV on-site Substation (DFFE reference number: 14/12/16/3/3/2/2385, EA date 31 January 2024) which was assessed as part of the Igolide WEF Environmental Authorisation process. A 500m buffer around the switching station has been identified to ensure flexibility in routing the powerline. The switching station will include, but is not limited to:

- A high voltage substation yard to allow for multiple 132kV feeder bays.
- Standard substation electrical equipment, including but not limited to, busbars, office area, operation and control room, workshop and storage area, feeder bays, stringer strain beams, insulators, isolators, conductors, circuit breakers, lightning arrestors, relays, capacitor banks, batteries, wave trappers, switchyard, metering and indication instruments, equipment for carrier current, surge protection and outgoing feeders, as may be required.
- Control building, telecommunication infrastructure, oil dam(s), etc.
- Workshop and office area within the switching station footprint.
- Fencing around the switching station.
- All the access road infrastructure to and within the switching station.
- Associated infrastructure, including but not limited to, lighting, fencing, and buildings required for operation (ablutions, office, workshop and control room, security fencing and gating, parking area, concrete batching plant (if required), waste storage/disposal and storerooms).

### 2.3.1.7 DEMOBILISATION

Upon completion of the installation phase, any temporary infrastructure will be removed, and the affected areas rehabilitated.

## 2.3.2 OPERATIONAL PHASE

Eskom will be responsible for managing the operations of the OHPL and associated infrastructure in line with their internal management systems. Eskom is considered to have the requisite expertise to operate and maintain the transmission line. Eskom will adhere to all existing Safety Codes and Guidelines for the operation and maintenance of the OHPL infrastructure.

During the operational phase there will be little to no project-related movement along the servitude as the only activities are limited to maintaining the servitude (including maintenance of access roads and cutting back or pruning of vegetation to ensure that vegetation does not affect the OHPL), inspection of the powerline and associated infrastructure and repairs when required. Limited impact is expected during operation since there will not be any intrusive work done outside of maintenance in the event that major damage occurs to site infrastructure.

Operation of the OHPL and associated infrastructure will involve the following activities, discussed below.

### 2.3.2.1 SERVITUDE MANAGEMENT AND ACCESS ROAD MAINTENANCE

Servitude and access road maintenance is aimed at eliminating hazards, ensuring safety standards are met and facilitating continued maintenance access to the OHPL. The objective is to prevent all forms of potential interruption of power supply due to overly tall vegetation/climbing plants or establishment of illegal structures within the right servitude. It is also to facilitate ease of access for maintenance activities on the OHPL. During the operational phase of the project, the servitude will



be maintained to ensure that the OHPL functions optimally and does not compromise the safety of persons within the vicinity of the OHPL.

#### 2.3.2.2 TRANSMISSION LINE MAINTENANCE AND OPERATIONS

Eskom will develop comprehensive planned and emergency programmes through its technical operations during the operation and maintenance phase for the OHPL. The maintenance activities will include:

- Eskom's Maintenance Team will carry out periodic physical examination of the OHPL and its safety, security and integrity.
- Defects that are identified will be reported for repair. Such defects may include defective conductors, flashed over insulators, defective dampers, vandalised components, amongst others.
- Maintenance/ repairs will then be undertaken.

#### 2.3.3 DECOMMISSIONING PHASE

Decommissioning will be considered when the OHPL is regarded obsolete and will be subject to a separate authorisation and impact assessment process. This is not expected to occur in the near future.

### 2.4 NEED AND DESIRABILITY OF THE PROJECT

The DEA&DP Guideline (2013) states that the essential aim of need and desirability is to determine the suitability (i.e. is the activity proposed in the right location for the suggested land-use/activity) and timing (i.e. is it the right time to develop a given activity) of the development. Therefore, need and desirability addresses whether the development is being proposed at the right time and in the right place. Similarly, the 'Best Practicable Environmental Option' (BPEO) as defined in NEMA is "the option that provides the most benefit and causes the least damage to the environment as a whole, at a cost acceptable to society, in the long term as well as in the short term."

The development of renewable energy and the associated energy infrastructure is strongly supported at a national, provincial, and local level. The development of, and investment in, renewable energy and associated energy distribution infrastructure is supported by the National Development Plan, New Growth Path Framework and National Infrastructure Plan, which all highlight the importance of energy security and investment in energy infrastructure. The development of the proposed power line is therefore supported by key policy and planning documents and is in line with South Africa's strategic energy planning context (Refer to **Section 2**).

The energy security benefits associated with the proposed Igolide WEF is dependent upon it being able to connect to the national grid via the establishment of grid connection infrastructure. The proposed OHPL is therefore essential supporting infrastructure to the wind energy facility development, which, once developed, will generate power from renewable energy resources.

The land on which the OHPL will be constructed is located within the extent of the Igolide WEF site and the onsite substation. No physical or economic displacement will be required along the proposed route. Furthermore, negative environmental impacts associated with the activity will be mitigated to acceptable levels in accordance with this EMPr. Refer to **Section 9 of the draft BAR** for the Cumulative Impact Assessment and **Section 8 of the draft BAR** for the Environmental Impact Assessment and recommended mitigation measures.

## 3 ENVIRONMENTAL SENSITIVITY

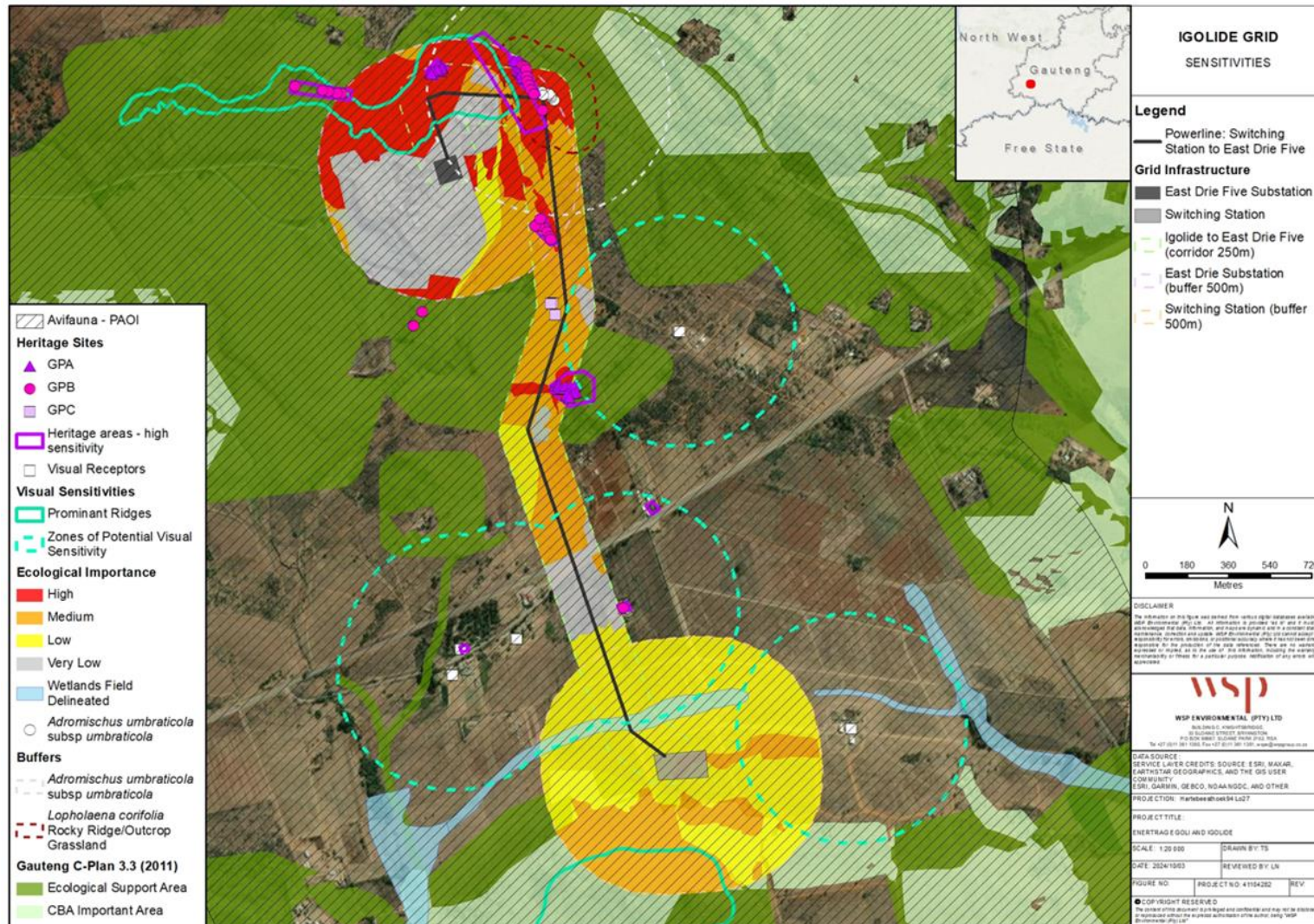
---

### 3.1 SENSITIVITY MAPPING

The following environmental sensitivities were identified on the site, as a result of the Project location and proposed activities and will require specific applications or measures for mitigation to minimise impact:

- Biodiversity:
  - CBA
  - ESA
  - Critically endangered and endangered species
  - Critical habitat
- Avifauna:
  - High value habitat unit
  - Presence of sensitive species
- Freshwater:
  - Aquatic CBAs
  - Wetland features
  - Freshwater ecosystem priority areas
- Heritage:
  - Heritage resource in study area

The above sensitivities are discussed in the sub-sections below. The combined environmental sensitivities of the proposed powerline Project footprint are shown in **Figure 3-1**.



**Figure 3-1 – Combined Sensitivity Map for the 132kV Grid Connection associate with the Igolide WEF**

## 3.2 IMPACT ASSESSMENT OUTCOMES

A summary of the identified impacts and corresponding significance ratings for the Project is provided in **Table 3-1** below.

**Table 3-1 – Impact Summary**

Aspect	Impact Description	Phase	Without Mitigation		With Mitigation	
			Significance	Status	Significance	Status
Geotechnical	Soil Erosion	Construction	Moderate	(-)	Very Low	(-)
	Oil Spillages	Construction	Moderate	(-)	Very Low	(-)
	Disturbance of fauna and flora	Construction	Low	(-)	Very Low	(-)
	Slope stability	Construction	Low	(-)	Very Low	(-)
	Seismic activity	Construction	Moderate	(-)	Low	(-)
	Soil Erosion	Operational	Low	(-)	Very Low	(-)
	Oil Spillages	Operational	Moderate	(-)	Very Low	(-)
	Seismic activity	Operational	Moderate	(-)	Low	(-)
	Soil Erosion	Decommissioning	Moderate	(-)	Very Low	(-)
	Oil Spillages	Decommissioning	Moderate	(-)	Very Low	(-)
	Disturbance of fauna and flora	Decommissioning	Low	(-)	Very Low	(-)
	Slope stability	Decommissioning	Low	(-)	Very Low	(-)
Aquatic	Loss of wetland habitat	Construction	High	(-)	Low	(-)
	Changes in wetland health/functioning	Construction	Moderate	(-)	Low	(-)
	Soil Erosion	Construction	Moderate	(-)	Low	(-)
	Spread of AIS	Construction	Moderate	(-)	Very Low	(-)
	Spread of AIS	Operational	Moderate	(-)	Very Low	(-)
	Soil Erosion	Operational	Moderate	(-)	Low	(-)
	Spread of AIS	Decommissioning	Moderate	(-)	Very Low	(-)
	Soil Erosion	Decommissioning	Moderate	(-)	Very Low	(-)



Aspect	Impact Description	Phase	Without Mitigation		With Mitigation	
			Significance	Status	Significance	Status
Terrestrial Biodiversity	Direct loss and disturbance of natural habitat	Construction	High	(-)	Moderate	(-)
	Habitat fragmentation impacting habitat connectivity and integrity	Construction	Moderate	(-)	Low	(-)
	Spread of AIS	Construction	Moderate	(-)	Low	(-)
	Soil erosion and sedimentation	Construction	Moderate	(-)	Low	(-)
	Spread of AIS	Operational	Moderate	(-)	Low	(-)
	Spread of AIS	Decommissioning	Moderate	(-)	Low	(-)
	Soil erosion and sedimentation	Decommissioning	Moderate	(-)	Low	(-)
Terrestrial Plant Species	Direct loss and disturbance of natural habitat	Construction	High	(-)	Low	(-)
	Habitat fragmentation	Construction	Moderate	(-)	Low	(-)
	Loss of flora of conservation concern	Construction	High	(-)	Low	(-)
	Establish and spread of alien invasive species	Construction	Moderate	(-)	Low	(-)
	Establish and spread of alien invasive species	Operational	Moderate	(-)	Low	(-)
	Establish and spread of alien invasive species	Decommissioning	Moderate	(-)	Low	(-)
Terrestrial Animal Species	Loss and disturbance of fauna habitat	Construction	High	(-)	Low	(-)
	Habitat fragmentation	Construction	Moderate	(-)	Low	(-)
	Injury, mortality and disturbance of fauna	Construction	Moderate	(-)	Low	(-)

Aspect	Impact Description	Phase	Without Mitigation		With Mitigation	
			Significance	Status	Significance	Status
	Loss of fauna species of conservation concern	Construction	Moderate	(-)	Low	(-)
	Injury, mortality and disturbance of fauna	Operational	Low	(-)	Very Low	(-)
	Injury, mortality and disturbance of fauna	Decommissioning	Moderate	(-)	Low	(-)
Avifauna	Displacement due to disturbance	Construction	Moderate	(-)	Moderate	(-)
	Displacement due to habitat transformation	Operational	Moderate	(-)	Moderate	(-)
	Electrocution of EGI sensitive species with OHPL	Operational	High	(-)	Low	(-)
	Collision of EGI sensitive species with OHPL	Operational	High	(-)	Low	(-)
	Population reduction of EGI sensitive species	Decommissioning	Moderate	(-)	Moderate	(-)
Heritage	Damage to Heritage Resources	Construction	Moderate	(-)	Very Low	(-)
	Cultural landscape	Construction	Moderate	(-)	Low	(-)
	Cultural landscape	Operational	Moderate	(-)	Low	(-)
	Cultural landscape	Decommissioning	Moderate	(-)	Low	(-)
Palaeontology	Cultural landscape	Construction	Low	(-)	Very Low	(-)
Socio-economic	Creation of employment and business opportunities during the construction phase	Construction	Low	(+)	Moderate	(+)
	Potential impacts on construction	Construction	Very Low	(-)	Very Low	(-)

Aspect	Impact Description	Phase	Without Mitigation		With Mitigation	
			Significance	Status	Significance	Status
	workers on local communities					
	Potential risk to safety of farmers and farm workers, livestock and damage to farm infrastructure associated with the presence of construction workers on site	Construction	Moderate	(-)	Low	(-)
	Increased risk of grass fires	Construction	Moderate	(-)	Low	(-)
	Nuisance impacts associated with construction related activities	Construction	Moderate	(-)	Low	(-)
	Improve energy security and support the renewable energy sector	Operational	Moderate	(+)	Moderate	(+)
	Creation of employment, skills development and business opportunities associated with the operational phase	Operational	Low	(+)	Moderate	(+)
	Generate income for affected landowners	Operational	Low	(+)	Moderate	(+)
	Visual impacts associated with the proposed facility and associated impact on property values	Operational	Low	(-)	Low	(-)
	Impact on farming operations during maintenance	Operational	Low	(-)	Low	(-)
	Tourism	Operational	Low	(-)	Low	(-)

Aspect	Impact Description	Phase	Without Mitigation		With Mitigation	
			Significance	Status	Significance	Status
Visual	Visual Landscape	Construction	Low	(-)	Low	(-)
	Visual Landscape	Operational	Low	(-)	Low	(-)
	Visual Landscape	Decommissioning	Low	(-)	Low	(-)

### 3.3 CUMULATIVE IMPACT ASSESSMENT OUTCOMES

Aspect	Impact Description	Character	Without Mitigation	With Mitigation
Geotechnical	Erosion	(-)	Moderate	Very Low
	Oil Spillages	(-)	Moderate	Very Low
	Disturbance of Fauna and Flora	(-)	Low	Very Low
	Slope stability	(-)	Low	Very Low
	Seismic Activity	(-)	Low	Very Low
Terrestrial Biodiversity	Loss, disturbance and fragmentation of natural habitat	(-)	High	Low
Plant Species	Loss, disturbance and fragmentation of natural habitat	(-)	High	Low
	injury, mortality and disturbance	(-)	Moderate	Low
Social	Social Impacts	(-)	Low	Low
Heritage	Impacts on heritage resources	(-)	Moderate	Moderate
Visual	Visual Impacts	(-)	High	Moderate

### 3.4 APPLICABLE DOCUMENTATION

The following documents are to be read in conjunction with the EMPr:

- Draft BA for the Proposed 132kV grid connection for the Igolide WEF;
- Generic EMPR (**Appendix D** and **Appendix E** for the proposed development (substation and OHPL))
- Environmental Authorisation (EA) issued by the GDARD in terms of the NEMA (once issued).

### 3.5 NATIONAL AND PROVINCIAL LEGAL AND REGULATORY FRAMEWORK

The South African regulatory framework establishes well-defined requirements and standards for environmental and social management of industrial and civil infrastructure developments. Different



authorities at both national and regional levels carry out environmental protection functions. The applicable legislation and policies are shown in **Table 3-2**.

**Table 3-2 – Applicable National Legislation**

Legislation	Description of Legislation and Applicability
The Constitution of South Africa (No. 108 of 1996)	The Constitution cannot manage environmental resources as a stand-alone piece of legislation hence additional legislation has been promulgated in order to manage the various spheres of both the social and natural environment. Each promulgated Act and associated Regulations are designed to focus on various industries or components of the environment to ensure that the objectives of the Constitution are effectively implemented and upheld in an on-going basis throughout the country. In terms of Section 7, a positive obligation is placed on the State to give effect to the environmental rights.
National Environmental Management Act (No. 107 of 1998)	<p>In terms of Section 24(2) of the NEMA, the Minister may identify activities, which may not commence without prior authorisation. The Minister thus published GNR 983 (as amended) (Listing Notice 1), GNR 984 (as amended) (Listing Notice 2) and GNR 985 (as amended) (Listing Notice 3) listing activities that may not commence prior to authorisation.</p> <p>The regulations outlining the procedures required for authorisation are published in the EIA Regulations of 2014 (GNR 982) (as amended). Listing Notice 1 identifies activities that require a BA process to be undertaken, in terms of the EIA Regulations, prior to commencement of that activity. Listing Notice 2 identifies activities that require an S&amp;EIR process to be undertaken, in terms of the EIA Regulations, prior to commencement of that activity. Listing Notice 3 identifies activities within specific areas that require a BA process to be undertaken, in terms of the EIA Regulations, prior to commencement of that activity.</p> <p>WSP undertook a legal review of the listed activities according to the proposed project description to conclude that the activities listed in in this section are considered applicable to the development: A S&amp;EIR process must be followed. An EA is required and has been applied for with the DFFE.</p>
Listing Notice 1: GNR 983	<p><b>Activity 11(i)</b></p> <p><i>The development of facilities or infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of electricity—</i></p> <p><i>(i) outside urban areas or industrial complexes with a capacity of more than 33 but less than 275 kilovolts</i></p> <p><i>excluding the development of bypass infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of electricity where such bypass infrastructure is —</i></p> <p><i>(a) temporarily required to allow for maintenance of existing infrastructure;</i></p> <p><i>(b) 2 kilometres or shorter in length;</i></p> <p><i>(c) within an existing transmission line servitude; and</i></p> <p><i>(d) will be removed within 18 months of the commencement of development.</i></p> <p><b>Description:</b></p>

Legislation	Description of Legislation and Applicability
	<p>The proposed powerline and substation are located outside urban areas. The project entails the construction of a 132kV overhead powerline (OHPL), switching station and associated grid connection infrastructure, including termination works to connect the Igolide Wind Energy Facility (WEF) to the existing East Drie Five Substation.</p> <p>Exclusions:</p> <p>In addition, the development of the activity does not trigger any of the exclusions as outlined below:</p> <p>(a) The proposed project will be permanent.</p> <p>(b) The grid connection corridor will be more than 2km in length.</p> <p>(c) The proposed grid connection corridor is not within an existing transmission line servitude.</p> <p>(d) The proposed project will not be removed within 18 months and is permanent.</p> <p><b>Activity 12(ii)(a)(c)</b></p> <p><i>The development of—</i></p> <p><i>(ii) infrastructure or structures with a physical footprint of 100 square metres or more; where such development occurs—</i></p> <p><i>(a) within a watercourse; or</i></p> <p><i>(c) if no development setback exists, within 32 metres of a watercourse, measured from the edge of a watercourse.</i></p> <p><i>excluding—</i></p> <p><i>(aa) the development of infrastructure or structures within existing ports or harbours that will not increase the development footprint of the port or harbour;</i></p> <p><i>(bb) where such development activities are related to the development of a port or harbour, in which case activity 26 in Listing Notice 2 of 2014 applies;</i></p> <p><b>Description:</b></p> <p>The construction of the Electrical Grid Infrastructure will result in construction activities within delineated watercourses within the corridor, or within 32m of the outer extent of the delineated watercourse within the corridor as the powerline traverses watercourses.</p> <p>Exclusions:</p> <p>In addition, the development of the activity does not trigger any of the exclusions as outlined below:</p> <p>(aa) the development of infrastructure or structures will not take place within existing ports or harbours and will not increase the development footprint of the port or harbour;</p> <p>(bb) The development activities are not related to the development of a port or harbour, therefore case activity 26 in Listing Notice 2 of 2014 does not apply;</p> <p>(cc) activities listed in activity 14 in Listing Notice 2 of 2014 does not apply. However, both activity 12 of LN 1 and activity 14 in LN 3 is applicable as</p>

Legislation	Description of Legislation and Applicability
	<p>they address different aspects. Activity 12 of LN 1 addresses the footprint of the disturbance, whilst activity 14 of LN 3 addresses the geographical aspect of the proposed development and its location within a protected area.</p> <p><b>Activity 19</b></p> <p><i>The infilling or depositing of any material of more than 10 cubic metres into, or the dredging, excavation, removal or moving of soil, sand, shells, shell grit, pebbles or rock of more than 10 cubic metres from a watercourse.</i></p> <p><i>but excluding where such infilling, depositing, dredging, excavation, removal or moving—</i></p> <p><i>(a) will occur behind a development setback;</i></p> <p><i>(b) is for maintenance purposes undertaken in accordance with a maintenance management plan [or]</i></p> <p><i>(c) falls within the ambit of activity 21 in this Notice, in which case that activity applies;</i></p> <p><i>(d) occurs within existing ports or harbours that will not increase the development footprint of the port or harbour; or</i></p> <p><i>(e) where such development is related to the development of a port or harbour, in which case activity 26 in Listing Notice 2 of 2014 applies.</i></p> <p><b>Description:</b></p> <p>The construction of the Electrical Grid Infrastructure, including associated infrastructure, will result in construction activities which require the excavation, infilling or removal of soil exceeding 10m<sup>3</sup> from delineated watercourses along the powerline alignment. The powerline will traverse watercourses.</p> <p>Exclusions:</p> <p>In addition, the development of the activity does not trigger any of the exclusions as outlined below:</p> <p>(a) The project will not occur behind a development setback;</p> <p>(b) The project is not intended for maintenance purposes undertaken in accordance with a maintenance management plan;</p> <p>(c) The project does not fall within the ambit of activity 21 in this Notice and therefore, activity 19 of LN 1 applies;</p> <p>(d) the project does not occur within existing ports or harbours, therefore, it will not increase the development footprint of the port or harbour; or</p> <p>(e) The project development is not related to the development of a port or harbour, therefore, activity 26 in Listing Notice 2 of 2014 does not apply.</p> <p><b>Activity 24(ii)</b></p> <p><i>The development of a road—</i></p> <p><i>(ii) with a reserve wider than 13,5 meters, or where no reserve exists where the road is wider than 8 metres;</i></p> <p><i>but excluding a road—</i></p>

Legislation	Description of Legislation and Applicability
	<p>(a) which is identified and included in activity 27 in Listing Notice 2 of 2014;</p> <p>(b) where the entire road falls within an urban area; or</p> <p>(c) which is 1 kilometre or shorter.</p> <p><b>Description:</b></p> <p>An access road will be required along the length of the powerline alignment. The road will be wider than 8 meters. Where required for turning circle/bypass areas, access or internal roads will be up to 20m wide to allow for larger component transport.</p> <p>The length of the access roads will be more than 1km and will be related to the length of the powerline as access roads will be required along the length of the powerline alignment whilst being located outside an urban area.</p> <p>Exclusions:</p> <p>In addition, the development of the activity does not trigger any of the exclusions as outlined below:</p> <p>(a) The proposed road infrastructure does not trigger activity 27 in Listing Notice 2 of 2014.</p> <p>(b) The proposed road infrastructure will fall outside an urban area.</p> <p>(c) The proposed road will be more than 1 kilometre in length.</p> <p><b>Activity 27(i)</b></p> <p><i>The clearance of an area of 1 hectares or more, but less than 20 hectares of indigenous vegetation, except where such clearance of indigenous vegetation is required for—</i></p> <p>(i) the undertaking of a linear activity; or</p> <p>(ii) maintenance purposes undertaken in accordance with a maintenance management plan.</p> <p><b>Description:</b></p> <p>The powerlines and access roads are considered a linear activity and therefore this activity is not triggered by the proposed construction of the powerlines or roads.</p> <p>However, the construction of the 132 kV onsite switching stations will require the clearance of indigenous vegetation of approximately 2.5ha for the grid operator substation, as well as an additional ~4ha for termination work upgrades required for connection into the East Drie Five Substation, thereby triggering this activity.</p> <p>Exclusions:</p> <p>In addition, the development of the activity does not trigger any of the exclusions as outlined below:</p> <p>Both substations are only considered due to linear exclusion, no maintenance management plan relevant at this time.</p>

Legislation	Description of Legislation and Applicability
	<p><b>Activity 28(ii)</b></p> <p><i>Residential, mixed, retail, commercial, industrial or institutional developments where such land was used for agriculture, game farming, equestrian purposes or afforestation on or after 01 April 1998 and where such development:</i></p> <p><i>(ii) will occur outside an urban area, where the total land to be developed is bigger than 1 ha.</i></p> <p><i>Excluding where such land has already been developed for residential, mixed, retail, commercial, industrial or institutional purposes.</i></p> <p><b>Description:</b></p> <p>The OHPL and substations are considered a commercial and/or industrial development and will be located on farm portions outside an urban area, used for agricultural purposes on or after 01 April 1998. The total area to be developed for the powerline and substation will exceed 1 hectare within agricultural use land.</p> <p>Exclusions:</p> <p>In addition, the development of the activity does not trigger any of the exclusions as the land has not been developed for residential, mixed, retail, commercial, industrial or institutional purposes.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Activity 48(i)(a)(c)</b></p> <p><i>The expansion of—</i></p> <p><i>(i) infrastructure or structures where the physical footprint is expanded by 100 square metres or more;</i></p> <p><i>where such expansion occurs—</i></p> <p><i>(a) within a watercourse;</i></p> <p><i>(c) if no development setback exists, within 32 metres of a watercourse, measured from the edge of a watercourse.</i></p> <p><i>excluding—</i></p> <p><i>(aa) the expansion of infrastructure or structures within existing ports or harbours that will not increase the development footprint of the port or harbour;</i></p> <p><i>(bb) where such expansion activities are related to the development of a port or harbour, in which case activity 26 in Listing Notice 2 of 2014 applies;</i></p> <p><i>(cc) activities listed in activity 14 in Listing Notice 2 of 2014 or activity 14 in Listing Notice 3 of 2014, in which case that activity applies;</i></p> <p><i>(dd) where such expansion occurs within an urban area; or</i></p> <p><i>(ee) where such expansion occurs within existing roads, road reserves or railway line reserves.</i></p> <p><b>Description:</b></p> <p>Transport of large infrastructure components related to the facility will require the expansion of existing access and/or internal roads, culverts or similar drainage crossing infrastructure collectively exceeding 100m<sup>2</sup> or more beyond existing roads or road reserves located within delineated</p>

Legislation	Description of Legislation and Applicability
	<p>watercourses on site, or within 32m of the outer extent of the delineated watercourses on site.</p> <p>Exclusions:</p> <p>In addition, the development of the activity does not trigger any of the exclusions as outlined below:</p> <p>(aa) The proposed infrastructure does not relate to the expansion of infrastructure or structures within existing ports or harbours and will not increase the development footprint of the port or harbour;</p> <p>(bb) The proposed infrastructure does not relate to the development of a port or harbour. Therefore activity 26 in Listing Notice 2 of 2014 does not apply;</p> <p>(cc) activities listed in activity 14 in Listing Notice 2 of 2014 does not apply. However, both activity 48 of LN 1 and activity 14 in LN 3 is applicable as they address different aspects. Activity 12 of LN 1 addresses the footprint of the disturbance, whilst activity 48 of LN 3 addresses the geographical aspect of the proposed development and its location within a protected area.</p> <p>(dd) Does not occur within an urban area;</p> <p>(ee) does not occur within existing roads, road reserves or railway line reserves.</p> <p><b>Activity 56(ii)</b></p> <p><i>The widening of a road by more than 6 m, or lengthening of a road by more than 1 km –</i></p> <p><i>(ii) where no reserve exists, where the existing road is wider than 8 metres.</i></p> <p><i>Excluding where widening or lengthening occur inside urban areas.</i></p> <p><b>Description:</b></p> <p>The construction of access roads along the powerline alignment will require the widening of existing access roads by more than 6 meters. Where required for turning circle/bypass areas, access or internal roads will be up to 20m wide (where no reserve exists) to allow for larger component transport.</p> <p>The length of the access roads will be more than 1km and will be related to the length of the powerline as access roads will be required along the length of the powerline alignment. In addition, the project is located within a rural area.</p> <p>Exclusions:</p> <p>In addition, the development of the activity does not trigger any of the exclusions as the proposed road will be developed outside an urban area.</p>
Listing Notice 3: GNR 985	<p><b>Activity 4(c) (iv)</b></p> <p><i>The development of a road wider than 4 metres with a reserve less than 13,5 metres.</i></p> <p><i>C. Gauteng</i></p> <p><i>(i) A protected area identified in terms of NEMPAA, excluding conservancies;</i></p>

Legislation	Description of Legislation and Applicability
	<p>(ii) National Protected Area Expansion Strategy Focus Areas;</p> <p>(iii) Gauteng Protected Area Expansion Priority Areas;</p> <p>(iv). Sites identified as Critical Biodiversity Areas (CBAs) and Ecological Support Areas (ESAs) in the Gauteng Conservation Plan or in bioregional plans;</p> <p>(v) Sites identified within threatened ecosystems listed in terms of the National Environmental Management Act: Biodiversity Act (Act No. 10 of 2004);</p> <p>(vi) Sensitive areas identified in an environmental management framework adopted by relevant environmental authority;</p> <p>(vii) Sites identified as high potential agricultural land in terms of Gauteng Agricultural Potential Atlas;</p> <p>(viii) Important Bird and Biodiversity Area (IBA);</p> <p>(ix) Sites or areas identified in terms of an International Convention;</p> <p>(x) Sites managed as protected areas by provincial authorities, or declared as nature reserves in terms of the Nature Conservation Ordinance (Ordinance 12 of 1983) or the National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act (Act No. 57 of 2003);</p> <p>(xi) Sites designated as nature reserves within municipal SDFs; or</p> <p>(xii) Sites zoned for a conservation or public open space or equivalent zoning.</p> <p><b>Description:</b></p> <p>The proposed 132kV grid connection transmission line will be constructed on undisturbed areas.</p> <p>An access road up to 20m wide will be required along the powerline alignment and substation sites.</p> <p>The proposed 132kV grid connection transmission line will be constructed on undisturbed areas.</p> <p>In addition, the Gauteng C-Plan (3.3) delineations indicate that a large patch of land in the far south of the proposed Igolide Grid Infrastructure area is designated Critical Biodiversity Area (CBA) consisting of Rand Highveld Grassland and a small patch is designated Ecological Support Areas (ESA). Furthermore, large patches of land in the north of the N12 Highway are also delineated as ESA consisting of Gauteng Shale Mountain Bushveld (iv).</p> <p><b>Activity 10(c)(iv):</b></p> <p><i>The development and related operation of facilities or infrastructure for the storage, or storage and handling of a dangerous good, where such storage occurs in containers with a combined capacity of 30 but not exceeding 80 Cubic metres.</i></p> <p><b>C. Gauteng</b></p> <p>(i) A protected area identified in terms of NEMPAA, excluding conservancies;</p> <p>(ii) National Protected Area Expansion Strategy Focus Areas;</p>



Legislation	Description of Legislation and Applicability
	<p>(iii) <i>Gauteng Protected Area Expansion Priority Areas</i>; iv. <i>Sites identified as Critical Biodiversity Areas (CBAs) and Ecological Support Areas (ESAs) in the Gauteng Conservation Plan or in bioregional plans</i>;</p> <p>(v) <i>Sites identified within threatened ecosystems listed in terms of the National Environmental Management Act: Biodiversity Act (Act No. 10 of 2004)</i>;</p> <p>(vi) <i>Sensitive areas identified in an environmental management framework adopted by relevant environmental authority</i>;</p> <p>(vii) <i>Sites identified as high potential agricultural land in terms of Gauteng Agricultural Potential Atlas</i>;</p> <p>(viii) <i>Sites or areas identified in terms of an International Convention</i></p> <p>(ix) <i>Sites managed as protected areas by provincial authorities, or declared as nature reserves in terms of the Nature Conservation Ordinance (Ordinance 12 of 1983) or the National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act (Act No. 57 of 2003)</i>;</p> <p>(x) <i>Sites designated as nature reserves within municipal SDFs</i>; or xi. <i>Sites zoned for conservation or public open space or equivalent zoning.</i></p> <p><b>Description:</b></p> <p>The proposed 132kV grid connection transmission line and associated infrastructure will require storage of fuel (diesel &amp; petrol), oils, paints and other necessary dangerous goods of approximately 79m<sup>3</sup> combined.</p> <p>In addition, the Gauteng C-Plan (3.3) delineations indicate that a large patch of land in the far south of the proposed Igolide Grid Infrastructure area is designated CBA consisting of Rand Highveld Grassland and a small patch is designated ESA. Furthermore, large patches of land in the north of the N12 Highway are also delineated as ESA consisting of Gauteng Shale Mountain Bushveld (iv).</p> <p><b>Activity 12 (c)(ii):</b></p> <p><i>The clearance of an area of 300 square metres or more of indigenous vegetation except where such clearance of indigenous vegetation is required for maintenance purposes undertaken in accordance with a maintenance management plan.</i></p> <p><b>C. Gauteng</b></p> <p>(i) <i>Within any critically endangered or endangered ecosystem listed in terms of section 52 of the NEMBA or prior to the publication of such a list, within an area that has been identified as critically endangered in the National Spatial Biodiversity Assessment 2004</i>;</p> <p>(ii) <i>Within critical biodiversity areas identified in bioregional plans</i>;</p> <p>(iii) <i>Within the littoral active zone or 100 metres inland from high water mark of the sea or an estuarine functional zone, whichever distance is the greater, excluding where such removal will occur behind the development setback line on erven in urban areas</i>; or</p> <p>(iv) <i>On land, where, at the time of the coming into effect of this Notice or thereafter such land was zoned open space, conservation or had an equivalent zoning.</i></p>

Legislation	Description of Legislation and Applicability
	<p><b>Description:</b></p> <p>The construction of the 132 kV Powerline and grid connection substations will require the clearance of indigenous vegetation.</p> <p>In addition, the Gauteng C-Plan (3.3) delineations indicate that a large patch of land in the far south of the proposed Igolide Grid Infrastructure area is designated CBA consisting of Rand Highveld Grassland and a small patch is designated ESA. Furthermore, large patches of land in the north of the N12 Highway are also delineated as ESA consisting of Gauteng Shale Mountain Bushveld (ii).</p> <p><b>Activity 14(ii)(a)(c)(iv)</b></p> <p><i>The development of—</i></p> <p><i>(ii) infrastructure or structures with a Physical footprint of 10 Square metres or more;</i></p> <p><i>where such development occurs—</i></p> <p><i>(a) within a watercourse;</i></p> <p><i>(c) if no development setback has been adopted, within 32 metres of a watercourse, measured from the edge of a watercourse;</i></p> <p><b>b. Gauteng</b></p> <p><i>(i) A protected area identified in terms of NEMPAA, excluding conservancies;</i></p> <p><i>(ii) National Protected Area Expansion Strategy Focus Areas;</i></p> <p><i>(iii) Gauteng Protected Area Expansion Priority Areas;</i></p> <p><i>(iv) Sites identified as Critical Biodiversity Areas (CBAs) and Ecological Support Areas (ESAs) in the Gauteng Conservation Plan or in bioregional plans;</i></p> <p><i>(v) Sites identified within threatened ecosystems listed in terms of the National Environmental Management Act: Biodiversity Act (Act No. 10 of 2004);</i></p> <p><i>(vi) Sensitive areas identified in an environmental management framework adopted by relevant environmental authority;</i></p> <p><i>(vii) Sites or areas identified in terms of an International Convention</i></p> <p><i>(viii) Sites managed as protected areas by provincial authorities, or declared as nature reserves in terms of the Nature Conservation Ordinance (Ordinance 12 of 1983) or the National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act (Act No. 57 of 2003);</i></p> <p><i>(ix) Sites designated as nature reserves within municipal SDFs; or</i></p> <p><i>(x) Sites zoned for conservation or public open space or equivalent zoning.</i></p> <p><b>Description:</b></p> <p>The construction of the Electrical Grid Infrastructure and associated infrastructure will result in construction activities occurring within delineated watercourses on site, or within 32m of the outer extent of the delineated watercourses on site. The powerline will traverse watercourses. In addition, the Gauteng C-Plan (3.3) delineations indicate that a large patch of land in the far south of the proposed Igolide Grid Infrastructure area is designated</p>

Legislation	Description of Legislation and Applicability
	<p>CBA, and a small patch is designated ESA. Furthermore, large patches of land in the north of the N12 Highway are also delineated as ESA (iv).</p> <p><b>Activity 18(c)(iv)</b></p> <p><i>The widening of a road by more than 4 metres, or the lengthening of a road by more than 1 kilometre.</i></p> <p><i>c. Gauteng</i></p> <p><i>i. A protected area identified in terms of NEMPAA, excluding conservancies;</i></p> <p><i>ii. National Protected Area Expansion Strategy Focus Areas;</i></p> <p><i>iii. Gauteng Protected Area Expansion Priority Areas;</i></p> <p><i>iv. Sites identified as Critical Biodiversity Areas (CBAs) or Ecological Support Areas (ESAs) in the Gauteng Conservation Plan or in bioregional plans;</i></p> <p><i>v. Sites identified within threatened ecosystems listed in terms of the National Environmental Management Act: Biodiversity Act (Act No. 10 of 2004);</i></p> <p><i>vi. Sensitive areas identified in an environmental management framework adopted by the relevant environmental authority;</i></p> <p><i>vii. Sites identified as high potential agricultural land in terms of Gauteng Agricultural Potential Atlas;</i></p> <p><i>viii. Sites or areas identified in terms of an international convention;</i></p> <p><i>ix. Important Bird and Biodiversity Area (IBA);</i></p> <p><i>The expansion of—</i></p> <p><i>(ii) infrastructure or structures where the physical footprint is expanded by 10 square metres or more; where such expansion occurs —</i></p> <p><i>(a) within a watercourse;</i></p> <p><i>(c) if no development setback has been adopted, within 32 metres of a watercourse, measured from the edge of a watercourse;</i></p> <p><i>c. Gauteng</i></p> <p><i>(i) A protected area identified in terms of NEMPAA, excluding conservancies;</i></p> <p><i>(ii) National Protected Area Expansion Strategy Focus Areas;</i></p> <p><i>(iii) Gauteng Protected Area Expansion Priority Areas;</i></p> <p><i>(iv) Sites identified as Critical Biodiversity Areas (CBAs) and Ecological Support Areas (ESAs) in the Gauteng Conservation Plan or in bioregional plans;</i></p> <p><i>(v) Sites identified within threatened ecosystems listed in terms of the National Environmental Management Act: Biodiversity Act (Act No. 10 of 2004)</i></p>

Legislation	Description of Legislation and Applicability
	<p>(vi) Sensitive areas identified in an environmental management framework adopted by relevant environmental authority;</p> <p>(vii) Sites or areas identified in terms of an International convention;</p> <p>(viii) Sites manages as protected areas by provincial authorities, or declared as nature reserves in terms of the Nature Conservation Ordinance (Ordinance 12 of 1983) or the National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act (Act No. 57 of 2003); or</p> <p>(ix) Sites designated as nature reserves within municipal SDFs;</p> <p>(x) Sites zoned for conservation or public open space or equivalent zoning.</p> <p><b>Description:</b></p> <p>The construction of the access road along the powerline alignment will require the widening of the existing access road by not more than 20m (where no reserve exists) and lengthening exceeding 1km in length. The project is located within a rural area.</p> <p>In addition, the Gauteng C-Plan (3.3) delineations indicate that a large patch of land in the far south of the proposed Igolide Grid Infrastructure area is designated CBA, and a small patch is designated ESA. Furthermore, large patches of land in the north of the N12 Highway are also delineated as ESA(iv).</p> <p><b>Activity 23(ii)(a)(c)(iv)</b></p> <p>The expansion of—</p> <p>(ii) infrastructure or structures where the physical footprint is expanded by 10 square metres or more; where such expansion occurs —</p> <p>(a) within a watercourse;</p> <p>(c) if no development setback has been adopted, within 32 metres of a watercourse, measured from the edge of a watercourse;</p> <p><b>c. Gauteng</b></p> <p>(i) A protected area identified in terms of NEMPAA, excluding conservancies;</p> <p>(ii) National Protected Area Expansion Strategy Focus Areas;</p> <p>(iii) Gauteng Protected Area Expansion Priority Areas;</p> <p>(iv) Sites identified as Critical Biodiversity Areas (CBAs) and Ecological Support Areas (ESAs) in the Gauteng Conservation Plan or in bioregional plans;</p> <p>(v) Sites identified within threatened ecosystems listed in terms of the National Environmental Management Act: Biodiversity Act (Act No. 10 of 2004)</p> <p>(vi) Sensitive areas identified in an environmental management framework adopted by relevant environmental authority;</p> <p>(vii) Sites or areas identified in terms of an International convention;</p> <p>(viii) Sites manages as protected areas by provincial authorities, or declared as nature reserves in terms of the Nature Conservation Ordinance</p>

Legislation	Description of Legislation and Applicability
	<p>(Ordinance 12 of 1983) or the National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act (Act No. 57 of 2003); or</p> <p>(ix) Sites designated as nature reserves within municipal SDFs;</p> <p>(x) Sites zoned for conservation or public open space or equivalent zoning.</p> <p><b>Description:</b></p> <p>The construction of the access road along the powerline alignment will require the expansion of existing access roads, culverts or similar drainage crossing infrastructure collectively exceeding 10m<sup>2</sup> or more within delineated watercourses on site, or within 32m of the outer extent of the delineated watercourses on site.</p> <p>In addition, the Gauteng C-Plan (3.3) delineations indicate that a large patch of land in the far south of the proposed Igolide Grid Infrastructure area is designated CBA, and a small patch is designated ESA. Furthermore, large patches of land in the north of the N12 Highway are also delineated as ESA(iv).</p>
Procedures for the Assessment and Minimum Criteria for Reporting on Identified Environmental Themes (GNR 320, 20 March 2020 and GNR 1150, 30 October 2020)	<p>The protocols provide the criteria for specialist assessment and minimum report content requirements for impacts for various environmental themes for activities requiring environmental authorisation. The protocols replace the requirements of Appendix 6 of the EIA Regulations, 2014, as amended. The assessment and reporting requirements of the protocols are associated with a level of environmental sensitivity identified by the national web based environmental screening tool (screening tool).</p> <p>The following environmental themes were applicable to the proposed project:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Agricultural Theme</li> <li>■ Animal Species Theme</li> <li>■ Aquatic Biodiversity Theme</li> <li>■ Archaeological and Cultural Heritage Theme</li> <li>■ Civil Aviation Theme</li> <li>■ Defence Theme</li> <li>■ Palaeontology Theme</li> <li>■ Plant Species Theme</li> <li>■ Terrestrial Biodiversity Theme</li> </ul>
Renewable Energy Development Zones and Strategic Transmission Corridors	<p>On 16 February 2018, the DFFE gazetted the Renewable Energy Development Zones (REDZs) and Strategic Transmission Corridors and Procedures for the Assessment of Large-scale Wind and Solar Photovoltaic Energy Development Activities (GN 114) and Grid Infrastructure (GN 113). Subsequently, on 26 February 2021 a further three REDZ were gazetted (GN 142).</p> <p>The procedure allows for wind and solar PV activities within the eight REDZs and electricity grid development within the five power corridors to be subjected to a BA and not a full S&amp;EIA process. In addition, the timeframes associated with the decision on the application is reduced from 107 days to 57 days.</p> <p><b>The Igolide 132kV Grid Connection is located within the Central Strategic Corridor.</b></p>



Legislation	Description of Legislation and Applicability
<p>Identification of Procedures to be followed when applying for or deciding on an Environmental Authorisation Application for the Development of Electricity Transmission and Distribution Infrastructure when occurring in Energy Development Zones (GN 145)</p>	<p>Regulation 3 of GN 145 states: The scope of this Notice applies to an application for an amendment to an environmental authorisation contemplated in Part 2 of Chapter 5 of the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations, 2014, as amended, and for an application for an environmental authorisation when triggering the following activities related to the development of electricity transmission and distribution infrastructure, including any associated activities necessary for the realisation of such infrastructure, where the greater part of the facility is undertaken within a Renewable Energy Development Zone contemplated in paragraph 1 or 2 of this Schedule. Regulation 3 of GN145 is therefore applicable to the Mura EGI Corridor, which is therefore subject to a BA process.</p> <p><b>As required by Regulation 5 of GNR 145, the BAR outlines and assesses the corridor within which the pre-negotiated route will occur.</b></p>
<p>Adoption Of The Standard For The Development And Expansion Of Power Lines And Substations Within Identified Geographical Areas And The Exclusion Of This Infrastructure From The Requirement To Obtain An Environmental Authorisation (GNR 2313 dated 27 July 2022)</p>	<p>The Standard for the Development and Expansion of Power Lines and Substations within Identified Geographical Areas Revision 2 June 2022, and based on compliance with this Standard, exclude, in terms of section 24(2)(d) of the National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998) the activities, as set out in the Schedule, including listed or specified activities necessary for the realisation of the development or expansion of power line and substation infrastructure, from the requirement to obtain environmental authorisation.</p> <p>The standard will only apply to powerlines and their associated infrastructure where a site sensitivity verification has been undertaken and has verified that all sensitivities on site are medium or low.</p> <p><b>In the case of the Igolide 132kV Grid Connection the norm does not apply as Terrestrial biodiversity was verified as Very High Sensitivity and Aquatic Biodiversity and Avifauna were both verified to be of high sensitivity.</b></p>
<p>National Environmental Management: Waste Act (59 of 2008) (NEM:WA)</p>	<p>This Act provides for regulating waste management in order to protect health and the environment by providing reasonable measures for the prevention of pollution and ecological degradation. The Act also provides for the licensing and control of waste management activities through GNR. 921 (2013): List of Waste Management Activities that Have, or are Likely to Have, a Detrimental Effect on the Environment.</p> <p>The proposed project does not constitute a Listed Activity requiring a Waste Management Licence (WML) as defined in GNR 921.</p> <p>However, the contents of this report will include reasonable measures for the prevention of pollution and good international industry practice (GIIP).</p>
<p>National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004 (Act No. 10 of 2004)</p>	<p>The National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004 (Act No. 10 of 2004) (NEMBA) was promulgated in June 2004 within the framework of NEMA to provide for the management and conservation of national biodiversity. The NEMBA's primary aims are for the protection of species and ecosystems that warrant national protection, the sustainable use of indigenous biological resources, the fair and equitable sharing of benefits arising from bioprospecting involving indigenous biological resources. In addition, the NEMBA provides for the establishment and functions of a South African National Biodiversity Institute (SANBI).</p>

Legislation	Description of Legislation and Applicability
	<p>SANBI was established by the NEMBA with the primary purpose of reporting on the status of the country's biodiversity and conservation status of all listed threatened or protected species and ecosystems.</p> <p>The Gauteng C-Plan (3.3) delineations indicate that a large patch of land in the far south of the proposed Igolide Grid Infrastructure area is designated CBA, and a small patch is designated ESA. Furthermore, large patches of land in the north of the N12 Highway are also delineated as ESA. Refer to terrestrial biodiversity assessment in <b>Appendix F.4 of the Draft BAR</b>.</p> <p>The Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act (No. 43 of 1983) (CARA) Regulations with regards to alien and invasive species have been superseded by the National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004 (Act no. 10 of 2004) – Alien and Invasive Species (AIS) Regulations which became law on 1 October 2014. Specific management measures for the control of alien and invasive plants have been included in the Environmental Management Programme (EMPr).</p>
National Environmental Management Protected Areas Act (No. 57 of 2003)	<p>The purpose of the National Environmental Management Protected Areas Act (No. 57 of 2003) (NEMPAA) is to, <i>inter alia</i>, provide for the protection and conservation of ecologically viable areas representative of South Africa's biological diversity and its natural landscapes and seascapes. To this end, it provides for the declaration and management of various types of protected areas.</p> <p>Section 50(5) of NEMPAA states that “no development, construction or farming may be permitted in a nature reserve or world heritage site without the prior written approval of the management authority.”</p> <p>The Gauteng C-Plan (3.3) delineations indicate that a large patch of land in the far south of the proposed Igolide Grid Infrastructure area is designated ‘Critical Biodiversity Area (CBA), and a small patch is designated ‘Ecological Support Areas’ (ESA). Furthermore, large patches of land in the north of the N12 Highway are also delineated as Ecological Support Areas (ESA). Refer to terrestrial biodiversity assessment in <b>Appendix F.4 of the Draft BAR</b>.</p>
The National Water Act (No. 36 Of 1998)	<p>The National Water Act, 1998 (Act No. 36 of 1998) (NWA) provides the framework to protect water resources against over exploitation and to ensure that there is water for social and economic development, human needs and to meet the needs of the aquatic environment.</p> <p>The Act defines water source to include watercourses, surface water, estuary or aquifer. A watercourse is defined in the Act as a river or spring, a natural channel in which water flows regularly or intermittently, a wetland, lake or dam into which or from which water flows, and any collection of water that the Minister may declare a watercourse.</p> <p>Section 21 of the Act outlines a number of categories that require a water user to apply for a Water Use License (WUL) and Section 22 requires water users to apply for a General Authorisation (GA) with the Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS) if they are under certain thresholds or meet certain criteria. The list of water uses applicable to the proposed Project include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Taking water from a water resource;</li> <li>c) Impeding or diverting the flow of water in a watercourse;</li> </ul>

Legislation	Description of Legislation and Applicability
	<p>g) Disposing of waste in a manner which may detrimentally impact on a water resource;</p> <p>i) Altering the bed, banks, course or characteristics of a watercourse;</p> <p>The DWS will make the final decision on water uses that are applicable to the project through a pre-application meeting after which a Water Use Authorisation Application (WUA) as determined by the risk assessment will be undertaken in compliance with procedural regulations published by the DWS within General Notice 267 (GN267). These regulations specify required information per water use and the reporting structure of required supporting technical information.</p>
<p>The National Heritage Resources Act (No. 25 Of 1999)</p>	<p>The National Heritage Resource Act (Act No. 25 of 1999) (NHRA) serves to protect national and provincial heritage resources across South Africa. The NHRA provides for the protection of all archaeological and palaeontological sites, the conservation and care of cemeteries and graves by the South African Heritage Resources Agency (SAHRA) and lists activities that require any person who intends to undertake to notify the responsible heritage resources agency and furnish details regarding the location, nature, and extent of the proposed development.</p> <p>Part 2 of the NHRA details specific activities that require a Heritage Impact Assessment (HIA) that will need to be approved by SAHRA. Parts of Section 35, 36 and 38 apply to the proposed project, principally:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Section 35 (4) - No person may, without a permit issued by the responsible heritage resources authority- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• destroy, damage, excavate, alter, deface or otherwise disturb any archaeological or palaeontological site or any meteorite;</li> <li>• destroy, damage, excavate, remove from its original position, collect or own any archaeological or palaeontological material or object or any meteorite.</li> </ul> </li> <li>■ Section 38 (1) Subject to the provisions of subsections (7), (8) and (9), any person who intends to undertake a development categorised as- <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• any development or other activity which will change the character of a site— (i) exceeding 5 000 m<sup>2</sup> in extent, must at the very earliest stages of initiating such a development, notify the responsible heritage resources authority and furnish it with details regarding the location, nature and extent of the proposed development.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>In terms of Section 38(8), approval from the heritage authority is not required if an evaluation of the impact of such development on heritage resources is required in terms of any other legislation (such as NEMA), provided that the consenting authority ensures that the evaluation of impacts fulfils the requirements of the relevant heritage resources authority in terms of Section 38(3) and any comments and recommendations of the relevant resources authority with regard to such development have been taken into account prior to the granting of the consent. However, should heritage resources of significance be affected by the proposed Igolide WEF, a permit is required to be obtained prior to disturbing or destroying such resources as per the requirements of Section 48 of the NHRA, and the SAHRA Permit Regulations (GN R668).</p>

Legislation	Description of Legislation and Applicability
	<p>A Heritage Report (<b>Appendix F.8 of the Draft BAR</b>) has been carried out by a suitably qualified specialist, revealing:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The survey for this project resulted in the finding of a number of stone-walled archaeological sites.</li> <li>■ The other main impact is on the cultural landscape. Given the existence of various mines and powerlines in the area this is not a significant consideration in terms of heritage impacts.</li> </ul> <p>The proposed project has been loaded onto the SAHRIS portal, and a case ID has been issued. This report will be uploaded on the SAHRIS portal for comment by SAHRA and PHRA-G.</p>
Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (No. 28 of 2002)	<p>The aim of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (No. 28 of 2002) (MPRDA) is to make provision for equitable access to and sustainable development of the nation's mineral and petroleum resources.</p> <p>Section 53(1) of the MPRDA provides that any person who intends to use the surface of any land in any way that may be contrary to any object of the MPRDA, or which is likely to impede any such object, must apply to the Minister of Mineral Resources (the Minister) for approval. Section 53 of the MPRDA provides a mechanism for ensuring that, inter alia, the mining of mineral resources is not detrimentally affected through the use of the surface of land and which may, for example, result in the sterilisation of a mineral resource.</p> <p>A Section 53 approval will be required due to the fact that the project is located on various mining right areas.</p> <p>The Amendment Regulations (GNR 420 of 27 March 2020) introduced a template for section 53 applications (Form Z) and the specific information that applicants will need to provide as part of a section 53 application.</p>
Noise Control Regulations in terms of the Environmental Conservation, 1989 (Act 73 of 1989)	<p>In South Africa, environmental noise control has been in place for three decades, beginning in the 1980s with codes of practice issued by the South African National Standards (formerly the South African Bureau of Standards, SABS) to address noise pollution in various sectors of the country. Under the previous generation of environmental legislation, specifically the Environmental Conservation Act 73 of 1989 (ECA), provisions were made to control noise from a National level in the form of the Noise Control Regulations (GNR 154 of January 1992). In later years, the ECA was replaced by the National Environmental Management Act 107 of 1998 (NEMA) as amended. The National Environmental Management: Air Quality Act 39 of 2004 (NEMAQA) was published in line with NEMA and contains noise control provisions under Section 34:</p> <p><i>(1) The minister may prescribe essential national standards –</i></p> <p><i>(a) for the control of noise, either in general or by specific machinery or activities or in specified places or areas; or</i></p> <p><i>(b) for determining –</i></p> <p><i>(i) a definition of noise; and</i></p> <p><i>(ii) the maximum levels of noise.</i></p> <p><i>(2) When controlling noise, the provincial and local spheres of government are bound by any prescribed national standards.</i></p>

Legislation	Description of Legislation and Applicability
	<p>Under NEMAQA, the Noise Control Regulations were updated and are to be applied to all provinces in South Africa. The Noise Control Regulations give all the responsibilities of enforcement to the Local Provincial Authority, where location specific by-laws can be created and applied to the locations with approval of Provincial Government. Where province-specific regulations have not been promulgated, acoustic impact assessments must follow the Noise Control Regulations.</p> <p>Furthermore, NEMAQA prescribes that the Minister must publish maximum allowable noise levels for different districts and national noise standards. These have not yet been accomplished and as a result all monitoring and assessments are done in accordance with the South African National Standards (SANS) 10103:2008 and 10328:2008.</p>
National Environment Management Air Quality Act (No. 39 of 2004)	<p>The National Environment Management: Air Quality Act (No. 39 of 2004) (NEMAQA) came into effect on 11 September 2005. Persons undertaking such activities listed under GNR 893, as amended, are required to possess an Atmospheric Emissions License (AEL).</p> <p>The National Dust Control Regulations (GNR 827) were promulgated in terms of Section 32 of NEMAQA, which aim at prescribing general measures for the control of dust in both residential and non-residential areas.</p> <p>Although no AEL will be required for the construction and operation of the proposed project, the dust control regulations will be applicable during construction.</p>
Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act (No. 43 of 1983)	<p>The Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act (Act 43 of 1983) (CARA) provides for the implementation of control measures for soil conservation works as well as alien and invasive plant species in and outside of urban areas.</p> <p>In terms of the amendments to the regulations under the CARA, landowners are legally responsible for the control of alien species on their properties. Various Acts administered by the DFFE and the DWS, as well as other laws (including local by-laws), spell out the fines, terms of imprisonment and other penalties for contravening the law. Although no fines have yet been placed against landowners who do not remove invasive species, the authorities may clear their land of invasive alien plants and other alien species entirely at the landowners' cost and risk.</p> <p>The CARA Regulations with regards to alien and invasive species have been superseded by NEMBA Alien and Invasive Species (AIS) Regulations which became law on 1 October 2014.</p>
Civil Aviation Act (No. 13 of 2009)	<p>Civil aviation in South Africa is governed by the Civil Aviation Act (Act 13 of 2009). This Act provides for the establishment of a stand-alone authority mandated with controlling, promoting, regulating, supporting, developing, enforcing and continuously improving levels of safety and security throughout the civil aviation industry. This mandate is fulfilled by South African Civil Aviation Authority (SACAA) as an agency of the Department of Transport (DoT). SACAA achieves the objectives set out in the Act by complying with the Standards and Recommended Practices (SARPs) of the International Civil Aviation Organisation (ICAO), while considering the local context when issuing the South African Civil Aviation Regulations (SA CARs).</p>



Legislation	Description of Legislation and Applicability
	<p>As of the 1st of May 2021, Air Traffic and Navigation Services (ATNS) has been appointed as the new Obstacle application Service Provider for Windfarms and later Solar Plants. Their responsibility would pertain to the assessments, maintenance, and all other related matters in respect to Windfarms and in due time Power Plant assessments.</p> <p>The DFFE Screening Tool Report identified Civil Aviation as having high sensitivity for the proposed project, with a civil aviation aerodrome located within 8km and 15km of the site.</p> <p>ATNS and SACAA have been included on the project stakeholder database.</p>
Occupational Health and Safety Act (No. 85 of 1993)	<p>The National Occupational Health and Safety Act (No. 85 of 1993) (OHSA) and the relevant regulations under the Act are applicable to the proposed project. This includes the Construction Regulations promulgated in 2014 under Section 43 of the Act. Adherence to South Africa's OHSA and its relevant Regulations is essential.</p>
National Energy Act (No. 34 of 2008)	<p>The National Energy Act aims to ensure that diverse energy resources are available, in sustainable quantities, and at affordable prices, to the South African economy in support of economic growth and poverty alleviation, taking into account environmental management requirements and interactions amongst economic sectors.</p> <p>The main objectives of the Act are to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Ensure uninterrupted supply of energy to the Republic;</li> <li>■ Promote diversity of supply of energy and its sources;</li> <li>■ Facilitate effective management of energy demand and its conservation;</li> <li>■ Promote energy research;</li> <li>■ Promote appropriate standards and specifications for the equipment, systems and processes used for producing, supplying and consuming energy;</li> <li>■ Ensure collection of data and information relating to energy supply, transportation and demand;</li> <li>■ Provide for optimal supply, transformation, transportation, storage and demand of energy that are planned, organised and implemented in accordance with a balanced consideration of security of supply, economics, consumer protection and a sustainable development;</li> <li>■ Provide for certain safety, health and environment matters that pertain to energy;</li> <li>■ Facilitate energy access for improvement of the quality of life of the people of Republic;</li> <li>■ Commercialise energy-related technologies;</li> <li>■ Ensure effective planning for energy supply, transportation, and consumption; and</li> <li>■ Contribute to sustainable development of South Africa's economy.</li> </ul> <p>In terms of the act, the Minister of Energy is mandated to develop and, on an annual basis, review and publish the Integrated Energy Plan (IEP) in the Government Gazette. The IEP analyses current energy consumption trends within different sectors of the economy (i.e. agriculture, commerce, industry, residential and transport) and uses this to project future energy requirements, based on different scenarios. The IEP and the Integrated Resource Plan are intended to be updated periodically to remain relevant. The framework is intended to create a balance between energy demand and resource availability so as to provide low-cost electricity for social and</p>

Legislation	Description of Legislation and Applicability
	economic development, while taking into account health, safety and environmental parameters.
Electricity Regulation Act (No. 4 of 2006)	<p>The Electricity Regulation Act (No. 4 of 2006) (ERA) aims to:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Achieve the efficient, effective, sustainable and orderly development and operation of electricity supply infrastructure in South Africa;</li> <li>■ Ensure that the interests and needs of present and future electricity customers and end users are safeguarded and met, having regard to the governance, efficiency, effectiveness and long-term sustainability of the electricity supply industry within the broader context of economic energy regulation in the Republic;</li> <li>■ Facilitate investment in the electricity supply industry;</li> <li>■ Facilitate universal access to electricity;</li> <li>■ Promote the use of diverse energy sources and energy efficiency;</li> <li>■ Promote competitiveness and customer and end user choice; and</li> <li>■ Facilitate a fair balance between the interests of customers and end users, licensees, investors in the electricity supply industry and the public.</li> </ul> <p>The Act establishes a National Energy Regulator as the custodian and enforcer of the National Electricity Regulatory Framework. The Act also provides for licenses and registration as the manner in which generation, transmission, distribution, trading and the import and export of electricity are regulated.</p>

## 3.6 INTERNATIONAL STANDARDS AND GUIDELINES

### 3.6.1 IFC PERFORMANCE STANDARDS

The International Finance Corporation (IFC) is an international financial institution that offers investment, advisory, and asset management services to encourage private sector development in developing countries. The IFC is a member of the World Bank Group (WBG) and is headquartered in Washington, D.C., United States. It was established in 1956 as the private sector arm of the WBG to advance economic development by investing in strictly for-profit and commercial projects that purport to reduce poverty and promote development.

The IFC's stated aim is to create opportunities for people to escape poverty and achieve better living standards by mobilizing financial resources for private enterprise, promoting accessible and competitive markets, supporting businesses and other private sector entities, and creating jobs and delivering necessary services to those who are poverty-stricken or otherwise vulnerable. Since 2009, the IFC has focused on a set of development goals that its projects are expected to target. Its goals are to increase sustainable agriculture opportunities, improve health and education, increase access to financing for microfinance and business clients, advance infrastructure, help small businesses grow revenues, and invest in climate health.

The IFC is owned and governed by its member countries but has its own executive leadership and staff that conduct its normal business operations. It is a corporation whose shareholders are member governments that provide paid-in capital and which have the right to vote on its matters. Originally more financially integrated with the WBG, the IFC was established separately and

eventually became authorized to operate as a financially autonomous entity and make independent investment decisions. It offers an array of debt and equity financing services and helps companies face their risk exposures, while refraining from participating in a management capacity. The corporation also offers advice to companies on making decisions, evaluating their impact on the environment and society, and being responsible. It advises governments on building infrastructure and partnerships to further support private sector development.

The IFC's Sustainability Framework articulates the Corporation's strategic commitment to sustainable development and is an integral part of IFC's approach to risk management. The Sustainability Framework comprises IFC's Policy and Performance Standards on Environmental and Social Sustainability, and IFC's Access to Information Policy. The Policy on Environmental and Social Sustainability describes IFC's commitments, roles, and responsibilities related to environmental and social sustainability. IFC's Access to Information Policy reflects IFC's commitment to transparency and good governance on its operations and outlines the Corporation's institutional disclosure obligations regarding its investment and advisory services. The Performance Standards (PSs) are directed towards clients, providing guidance on how to identify risks and impacts, and are designed to help avoid, mitigate, and manage risks and impacts as a way of doing business in a sustainable way, including stakeholder engagement and disclosure obligations of the client in relation to project-level activities. In the case of its direct investments (including project and corporate finance provided through financial intermediaries), IFC requires its clients to apply the PSs to manage environmental and social risks and impacts so that development opportunities are enhanced. IFC uses the Sustainability Framework along with other strategies, policies, and initiatives to direct the business activities of the Corporation to achieve its overall development objectives. The PSs may also be applied by other financial institutions (FIs).

The Project is considered a **Category B project** in terms of the IFC Policy on E&S Sustainability (2012), having the potential to cause limited adverse environmental or social risks and/or impacts that are few in number, generally site specific, largely reversible, and readily addressed through mitigation measures.

The objectives and applicability of the eight PSs are outlined in **Table 3-3**.

**Table 3-3 – Objectives and Applicability of the IFC Performance Standards**

Reference	Requirements	Project Specific Applicability
<b>Performance Standard 1: Assessment and Management of Environmental and Social Risks and Impacts</b>		
<b>Overview</b>	Performance Standard 1 underscores the importance of managing environmental and social performance throughout the life of a project. An effective Environmental and Social Management System (ESMS) is a dynamic and continuous process initiated and supported by management, and involves engagement between the client, its workers, local communities directly affected by the project (the Affected Communities) and, where appropriate, other stakeholders."	
<b>Objectives</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To identify and evaluate environmental and social risks and impacts of the project.</li> <li>■ To adopt a mitigation hierarchy to anticipate and avoid, or where avoidance is not possible, minimize, and, where residual impacts remain, compensate/offset for risks and impacts to workers, Affected Communities, and the environment.</li> </ul>	

Reference	Requirements		Project Specific Applicability
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ To promote improved environmental and social performance of clients through the effective use of management systems.</li><li>■ To ensure that grievances from Affected Communities and external communications from other stakeholders are responded to and managed appropriately.</li><li>■ To promote and provide means for adequate engagement with Affected Communities throughout the project cycle on issues that could potentially affect them and to ensure that relevant environmental and social information is disclosed and disseminated.</li></ul>		
Aspects	1.1	Policy	The IFC Standards state under PS 1 (Guidance Note 23) that <i>“the breadth, depth and type of analysis included in an ESIA must be proportionate to the nature and scale of the proposed project’s potential impacts as identified during the course of the assessment process.”</i> This document is the first deliverable from the BA process undertaken for the proposed Project. The impact assessment comprehensively assesses the key environmental and social impacts and complies with the requirements of the South African EIA Regulations.
	1.2	Identification of Risks and Impacts	
	1.3	Management Programmes	
	1.4	Organisational Capacity and Competency	
	1.5	Emergency Preparedness and Response	
	1.6	Monitoring and Review	
	1.7	Stakeholder Engagement	
	1.8	External Communication and Grievance Mechanism	
	1.9	Ongoing Reporting to Affected Communities	
Performance Standard 2: Labour and Working Conditions;			
Overview	Performance Standard 2 recognises that the pursuit of economic growth through employment creation and income generation should be accompanied by protection of the fundamental rights of workers.		
Objectives	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ To promote the fair treatment, non-discrimination, and equal opportunity of workers.</li><li>■ To establish, maintain, and improve the worker-management relationship.</li><li>■ To promote compliance with national employment and labour laws.</li><li>■ To protect workers, including vulnerable categories of workers such as children, migrant workers, workers engaged by third parties, and workers in the client’s supply chain.</li><li>■ To promote safe and healthy working conditions, and the health of workers.</li><li>■ To avoid the use of forced labour.</li></ul>		
Aspects	2.1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Working Conditions and Management of Worker Relationship</li><li>■ Human Resources Policy and Management</li><li>■ Working Conditions and terms of Engagement</li><li>■ Workers organisation</li></ul>	<p>A safe working environment and fair contractual agreements must be in place. The operational phase will have permanent employees for day-to-day activities as well as contractors who will all need a safe working environment and fair contractual agreements.</p> <p>Whilst PS2 will be applicable to the Project, it is not intended to be addressed in detail at the final BA stage. Recommendations are provided concerning development</p>

Reference	Requirements		Project Specific Applicability
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Non- Discrimination and Equal Opportunity</li><li>Retrenchment</li><li>Grievance Mechanism</li></ul>	<p>of a detailed Human Resources (HR) and Occupational Health and Safety (OHS) system by the developer and its partners as the Project moves towards implementation. In addition, measures to address the Interim Advice for IFC Clients on Supporting Workers in the Context of COVID-19 are referenced.</p> <p>This EMPr incorporates the requirements for compliance with local and international Labour and Working legislation and good practice on the part of the contractors.</p>
	2.2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Protecting the Workforce</li><li>Child Labour</li><li>Forced Labour</li></ul>	
	2.3	Occupational health and Safety	
	2.4	Workers Engaged by Third Parties	
	2.5	Supply Chain	
Performance Standard 3: Resource Efficiency and Pollution Prevention			
Overview	Performance Standard 3 recognises that increased economic activity and urbanisation often generate increased levels of pollution to air, water, and land, and consume finite resources in a manner that may threaten people and the environment at the local, regional, and global levels. There is also a growing global consensus that the current and projected atmospheric concentration of greenhouse gases (GHG) threatens the public health and welfare of current and future generations. At the same time, more efficient and effective resource use and pollution prevention and GHG emission avoidance and mitigation technologies and practices have become more accessible and achievable in virtually all parts of the world.		
Objectives	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>To avoid or minimise adverse impacts on human health and the environment by avoiding or minimising pollution from project activities.</li><li>To promote more sustainable use of resources, including energy and water.</li><li>To reduce project related GHG emissions.</li></ul>		
Aspects	3.1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Policy Resource Efficiency</li><li>Greenhouse Gases</li><li>Water Consumption</li></ul>	<p>PS3-related impacts, such as the management of construction waste, hazardous substances, and stormwater are assessed in Section 7 of this report.</p>
	3.2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Pollution Prevention</li><li>Air Emissions</li><li>Stormwater</li><li>Waste Management</li><li>Hazardous Materials Management</li><li>Pesticide use and Management</li></ul>	<p>There are no material resource efficiency issues associated with the Project. Refer to <b>Section 6.3</b> of this EMPr for general resource efficiency measures.</p> <p>The project is not GHG emissions intensive and a climate resilience study or a GHG emissions-related assessment is not deemed necessary for a project of this nature. However, as supporting infrastructure to the Igolide WEF, the OHPL and substations seeks to facilitate resource efficiency and pollution prevention by contributing to the South African green economy.</p> <p>Dust air pollution in the construction phase will be addressed in the EMPr.</p> <p>The Project will not result in the release of industrial effluents. Potential pollution associated with sanitary wastewater is low and mitigation measures are included in the EMPr.</p>



Reference	Requirements		Project Specific Applicability
			<p>Land contamination of the site from historical land use (i.e., low intensity agricultural / grazing) is not considered to be a cause for concern.</p> <p>The waste generation profile of the project is not complex. Waste mitigation and management measures is included in <b>Section 6.4</b> of this EMPr.</p> <p>Hazardous materials are not a key issue; small quantities of construction materials (oil, grease, diesel fuel etc.) are the only wastes expected to be associated with the project. The anticipated hazardous materials were considered in this EMPr and the relevant mitigation and management measures have been provided in refer to <b>Section 6</b>.</p>
Performance Standard 4: Community Health, Safety, and Security			
Overview	Performance Standard 4 recognizes that project activities, equipment, and infrastructure can increase community exposure to risks and impacts.		
Objectives	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ To anticipate and avoid adverse impacts on the health and safety of the Affected Community during the project life from both routine and non-routine circumstances.</li><li>■ To ensure that the safeguarding of personnel and property is carried out in accordance with relevant human rights principles and in a manner that avoids or minimizes risks to the Affected Communities</li></ul>		
Aspects	4.1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Community Health and Safety</li><li>■ Infrastructure and Equipment Design and Safety</li><li>■ Hazardous Materials Management and Safety</li><li>■ Ecosystem Services</li><li>■ Community Exposure to Disease</li><li>■ Emergency Preparedness and Response</li></ul>	<p>The requirements included in PS 4 will be addressed in the BA process and the development of the EMPr.</p> <p>During the construction phase there will be an increase in vehicular traffic along public roads, largely due to the need for importation of construction material. Pedestrian and road safety risks will be qualitatively evaluated in the BA process and the clients' standard safety and security measures, as well as potential additional measures recommended by WSP is detailed in <b>Section 6</b> of this EMPr.</p>
	4.2	Security Personnel	
Performance Standard 5: Land Acquisition and Involuntary Resettlement			
Overview	Performance Standard 5 recognises that project-related land acquisition and restrictions on land use can have adverse impacts on communities and persons that use this land. Involuntary resettlement refers both to physical displacement (relocation or loss of shelter) and to economic displacement (loss of assets or access to assets that leads to loss of income sources or other means of livelihood) as a result of project-related land acquisition and/or restrictions on land use.		
Objectives	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ To avoid, and when avoidance is not possible, minimise displacement by exploring alternative project designs.</li><li>■ To avoid forced eviction.</li></ul>		

Reference	Requirements	Project Specific Applicability
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To anticipate and avoid, or where avoidance is not possible, minimise adverse social and economic impacts from land acquisition or restrictions on land use by (i) providing compensation for loss of assets at replacement cost and (ii) ensuring that resettlement activities are implemented with appropriate disclosure of information, consultation, and the informed participation of those affected.</li> <li>To improve, or restore, the livelihoods and standards of living of displaced persons.</li> <li>To improve living conditions among physically displaced persons through the provision of adequate housing with security of tenure at resettlement sites.</li> </ul>	
Aspects	5.1 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Displacement</li> <li>Physical Displacement</li> <li>Economic Displacement</li> <li>Private Sector Responsibilities under Government Managed Resettlement</li> </ul>	<p>PS5 is not applicable to the proposed Igolide project as no physical or economic displacement or livelihood restoration will be required.</p> <p>The proposed Igolide project is located on privately owned land. A section of the land is utilised for agriculture by the landowners. The significance of all potential agricultural impacts is kept low by the very small proportion of the land that is impacted. An Agricultural Potential Assessment has been undertaken and is included in <b>Appendix F.1</b> of the draft BAR.</p>
<b>Performance Standard 6: Biodiversity Conservation and Sustainable Management of Living Natural Resources</b>		
Overview	Performance Standard 6 recognizes that protecting and conserving biodiversity, maintaining ecosystem services, and sustainably managing living natural resources are fundamental to sustainable development.	
Objectives	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To protect and conserve biodiversity.</li> <li>To maintain the benefits from ecosystem services.</li> <li>To promote the sustainable management of living natural resources through the adoption of practices that integrate conservation needs and development priorities.</li> </ul>	
Aspects	6.1 <p>Protection and Conservation of Biodiversity</p>	<p>The Gauteng C-Plan (3.3) delineations indicate that a large patch of land in the far south of the proposed Igolide Grid Infrastructure area is designated Critical Biodiversity Area (CBA) consisting of Rand Highveld Grassland and a small patch is designated Ecological Support Areas (ESA). Furthermore, large patches of land in the north of the N12 Highway are also delineated as Ecological Support Areas (ESA) consisting of Gauteng Shale Mountain Bushveld. A Terrestrial Biodiversity assessment as well as an Avifaunal Impact Assessment (Appendix F.7 of the draft BAR) and Aquatic Biodiversity Impact Assessment (Appendix F.3 of the draft BAR) have been included in this draft BA report.</p> <p>The methodologies for the specialist assessments include a combination of literature review, in-field surveys and sensitivity mapping. This substantively complies with the PS 6 general requirements for scoping and baseline assessment for determination of biodiversity and ecosystem services issues. The determination of habitat sensitivity was undertaken within the legal and best practice reference framework for South Africa.</p>

Reference	Requirements		Project Specific Applicability
			The prevalence of invasive alien species has been determined, and mitigation and management measures are included in <b>Section 6</b> of this EMP.
<b>Performance Standard 7: Indigenous People</b>			
<b>Overview</b>	Performance Standard 7 recognizes that Indigenous Peoples, as social groups with identities that are distinct from mainstream groups in national societies, are often among the most marginalized and vulnerable segments of the population. In many cases, their economic, social, and legal status limits their capacity to defend their rights to, and interests in, lands and natural and cultural resources, and may restrict their ability to participate in and benefit from development. Indigenous Peoples are particularly vulnerable if their lands and resources are transformed, encroached upon, or significantly degraded.		
<b>Objectives</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To ensure that the development process fosters full respect for the human rights, dignity, aspirations, culture, and natural resource-based livelihoods of Indigenous Peoples.</li> <li>■ To anticipate and avoid adverse impacts of projects on communities of Indigenous Peoples, or when avoidance is not possible, to minimize and/or compensate for such impacts.</li> <li>■ To promote sustainable development benefits and opportunities for Indigenous Peoples in a culturally appropriate manner.</li> <li>■ To establish and maintain an ongoing relationship based on Informed Consultation and Participation (ICP) with the Indigenous Peoples affected by a project throughout the project's life-cycle.</li> <li>■ To ensure the Free, Prior, and Informed Consent (FPIC) of the Affected Communities of Indigenous Peoples when the circumstances described in this Performance Standard are present.</li> <li>■ To respect and preserve the culture, knowledge, and practices of Indigenous Peoples.</li> </ul>		
<b>Aspects</b>	7.1	<b>General</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Avoidance of Adverse Impacts</li> <li>■ Participation and Consent</li> </ul>	As per the international instruments under the United Nations (UN) Human Rights Conventions, no indigenous peoples are present within the study area.
	7.2	<b>Circumstances Requiring Free, Prior, and Informed Consent</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Impacts on Lands and Natural Resources Subject to Traditional Ownership or Under Customary Use</li> <li>■ Critical Cultural Heritage</li> <li>■ Relocation of Indigenous Peoples from Lands and Natural Resources Subject to Traditional Ownership or Under Customary Use</li> </ul>	

Reference	Requirements		Project Specific Applicability
	7.3	Mitigation and Development Benefits	
	7.4	Private Sector Responsibilities Where Government is Responsible for Managing Indigenous Peoples Issues	
<b>Performance Standard 8: Cultural Heritage</b>			
<b>Overview</b>	Performance Standard 8 recognizes the importance of cultural heritage for current and future generations.		
<b>Objectives</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To protect cultural heritage from the adverse impacts of project activities and support its preservation.</li> <li>■ To promote the equitable sharing of benefits from the use of cultural heritage.</li> </ul>		
<b>Aspects</b>	8.1	Protection of Cultural Heritage in Project Design and Execution	A Heritage Assessment (Appendix H.6 of the Draft BAR) has been carried out by a suitably qualified specialist. A Chance Find Procedure is included in this EMPr (Section 7.12.3.1).

### 3.7 GENERIC EMPR RELEVANT TO AN APPLICATION FOR SUBSTATION AND OVERHEAD ELECTRICITY TRANSMISSION AND DISTRIBUTION INFRASTRUCTURE

NEMA requires that an EMPr be submitted where a BA has been identified as the environmental instrument to be utilised as the basis for a decision on an application for environmental authorisation. The content of an EMPr must either contain the information set out in Appendix 4 of the EIA Regulations, 2014, as amended, or must be a generic EMPr relevant to an application as identified and gazetted by the Minister in a government notice. Once the Minister has identified, through a government notice, that a generic EMPr is relevant to an application for EA, that generic EMPr must be applied by all parties involved in the EA process, including, but not limited to, the applicant and the CA.

GN 435 of 22 March 2019 identified a generic EMPr relevant to applications for substations and overhead electricity transmission and distribution infrastructure which require authorisation in terms of Section 42(2) of NEMA. Applications for overhead electricity transmission and distribution infrastructure that trigger Activity 11 of Listing Notice 1 or Activity 9 of Listing Notice 2 and any other listed or specified activities must use the generic EMPr.

The objective of the generic EMPr is to prescribe and pre-approve generally accepted impact management outcomes and impact management actions, which can commonly and repeatedly be used for the avoidance, management and mitigation of impacts and risks associated with the development or expansion of overhead electricity transmission and distribution infrastructure and the development or expansion of substation infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of

electricity. The use of a generic EMPr is intended to reduce the need to prepare and review individual EMPs for applications of a similar nature.

Both the generic EMPr for substations as well as the generic EMPr for transmission lines have been used as a basis for this EMPr. The Generic EMPr for the Development and Expansion of Substation Infrastructure for the Transmission and Distribution of Electricity is attached as **Appendix D** and the Generic EMPr for the Development and Expansion for Overhead Electricity Transmission and Distribution Infrastructure is attached as **Appendix E**.

## 4 MANAGEMENT PROCEDURES AND ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

### 4.1 ORGANISATIONAL STRUCTURE AND RESPONSIBILITIES

Formal responsibilities are necessary to ensure that key management measures/procedures are executed. ENERTRAG South Africa (Pty) Ltd (the Project Company), will be responsible for the overall control of the project site during the pre-construction, construction, operation and rehabilitation phases of the Project responsibilities will include the following:

- Appointing an independent environmental control officer (ECO) for the duration of the Contract during construction and as specified by the GDARD during operation;
- Being fully familiar with the BA, EA conditions and the EMPr;
- Applying for an amendment of the EA from the GDARD as and when required in line with the prevailing legislation
- The overall implementation of the EMPr;
- Ensuring compliance, by all parties, and the imposition of penalties for noncompliance;
- Implementing corrective and preventive actions, where required;
- Ensuring that any other necessary permits or licences are obtained and complied with;
- Preventing pollution and actions that will harm or may cause harm to the environment;
- Notifying the GDARD within 30 days that construction activity will commence;
- Notifying the GDARD in writing within 24 hours if any condition in the EA cannot be or is not adhered to; and
- Notifying the GDARD 14 days prior to commencement of the operational phase.

Specific roles and responsibilities for the construction phase of this project are as defined in **Table 4-1** below.

While the term ECO is referenced in Specialist Reports, the ECO is an independent function, reporting to the GDARD. The term used in this EMPr for the Permit Holder's onsite compliance management function is Environmental Site Compliance Officer (ESCO).

**Table 4-1 – Roles and Responsibilities**

Designation	Roles and Responsibilities
<b>DFFE</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Is the designated authority responsible for authorising this EMPr and has overall responsibility for ensuring that the ENERTRAG South Africa (Pty) Ltd complies with this EMPr, and any conditions listed in the Environmental Authorisation.</li> <li>■ Shall also be responsible for approving any significant amendments that may be required to the EMPr.</li> <li>■ May further perform random site inspections to check compliance with the EMPr.</li> </ul>
<b>Holder of the EA</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The Holder of the EA shall take overall responsibility for the adherence to the EMPr and EA conditions.</li> </ul>



Designation	Roles and Responsibilities
<b>Project Manager/Engineer/Site Engineer</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Ensure that ENERTRAG South Africa (Pty) Ltd and the relevant contractor/s are aware of all specifications, legal constraints pertaining to the project during construction, specifically with regards to the environment.</li> <li>■ Ensure that all stipulations within the EMPr and conditions of the environmental authorisation are communicated and adhered to ENERTRAG and its contractor(s).</li> <li>■ Monitor the implementation of the EMPr and conditions of the environmental authorisation throughout the project by means of site inspections and meetings. This will be documented as part of the site meeting minutes.</li> <li>■ Be fully conversant with the BA for the project, the conditions of environmental authorisation and all relevant environmental legislation.</li> </ul>
<b>Site Manager (EPC Contractor)</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Be fully conversant with the EIR, the conditions of environmental authorisation and the EMPr.</li> <li>■ Approve method statements (co-approval with the ESCO).</li> <li>■ Provide support to the ESCO.</li> <li>■ Be fully conversant with all relevant environmental legislation and ensure compliance thereof.</li> <li>■ Have overall responsibility for the implementation of the EMPr and conditions of the environmental authorisation</li> <li>■ Ensure that audits are conducted to ensure compliance to the EMPr and conditions of the environmental authorisation.</li> <li>■ Liaise with the Project Manager or his delegate, the ESCO and others on matters concerning the environment</li> <li>■ Prevent actions that will harm or may cause harm to the environment and take steps to prevent pollution and unnecessary degradation onsite.</li> <li>■ Confine construction activities to demarcated areas.</li> </ul>
<b>Environmental Officer (EO)</b>	<p>The EO must be appointed by the Contractor / Project Manager and is responsible for managing the day-to-day onsite implementation of the EMPr, and for the compilation of weekly environmental monitoring reports during construction. During the operational phase environmental monitoring reports may be as specified by the DFFE (such as annually) by the external EO or ECO. In addition, the EO must act as liaison and advisor on all environmental and related issues, seek advice from the ESCO when necessary, and ensure that any complaints received from I&amp;APs are duly processed and addressed and that conflicts are resolved in an acceptable manner and timely manner. The EO shall be a full-time dedicated member of the Contractor's team and must be approved by ENERTRAG South Africa (Pty) Ltd (Project Company).</p> <p>The following qualifications, qualities and experience are recommended for the individual appointed as the EO:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ A relevant environmental diploma or degree in natural sciences, as well as a minimum of three years' experience in construction site monitoring, excluding health and safety;</li> <li>■ A level-headed and firm person with above-average communication and negotiating skills. The ability to handle and address conflict management situations will be an advantage; and</li> <li>■ Relevant experience in environmental site management and EMPr compliance monitoring.</li> </ul> <p>The EO's responsibilities include, but not limited to:</p>

Designation	Roles and Responsibilities
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Monitoring, on a daily basis, environmental specifications on site and compliance with the conditions of the EA, environmental legislation and EMPr;</li> <li>■ Keeping a register of compliance / non-compliance with the environmental specifications;</li> <li>■ Identifying and assessing previously unforeseen, actual or potential impacts on the environment;</li> <li>■ Ensuring that a brief weekly environmental monitoring report is submitted to the ESCO;</li> <li>■ Conducting site inspections during the defects liability period, and bringing any environmental concerns to the attention of the ESCO and Contractor;</li> <li>■ Advising the Contractor on the rectification of any pollution, contamination or damage to the construction site, rights of way and adjacent land;</li> <li>■ Attending site meetings (scheduled and ad hoc);</li> <li>■ Presenting the environmental awareness training course to all staff, Contractors and Sub contractors, and monitoring the environmental awareness training for all new personnel on-site, as undertaken by the Contractor;</li> <li>■ Ensuring that a copy of the EA and the latest version of the EMPr are available on site at all times, and maintaining a records-keeping system of all compliance and environmental documentation;</li> <li>■ Ensuring that the Contractor is made aware of all applicable changes to the EMPr that are approved by the DEA;</li> <li>■ Assisting the Contractor in drafting environmental method statements and/or the Environmental Policy where such knowledge/expertise is lacking;</li> <li>■ Undertaking daily environmental monitoring to ensure the Contractor's activities do not impact upon the receiving environment. Such monitoring shall include dust, noise and water monitoring; and</li> <li>■ Maintaining the following on site: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>● A weekly site diary.</li> <li>● A non-conformance register (NCR).</li> <li>● An I&amp;AP communications register, and</li> <li>● A register of audits.</li> <li>● Records of all communication received in relation to compliance actions.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>The EO will remain employed until all rehabilitation measures, as required for implementation due to construction damage, are completed and the site is handed over to the Operator.</p>
<b>ESCO</b>	<p>A suitably qualified ESCO must be appointed by the Holder of the EA to monitor the project compliance onsite on a full-time basis.</p> <p>Responsibilities of the ESCO include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Be fully conversant with the EIR, the conditions of environmental authorisation and the EMPr;</li> <li>■ Be fully conversant with all relevant environmental legislation and ensure compliance thereof;</li> <li>■ Approve method statements (co-approval with the Site Manager);</li> <li>■ Remain employed until the completion of the construction activities; and</li> <li>■ Report to the Project Manager, including all findings identified onsite.</li> </ul> <p>In addition, the ESCO will:</p>

Designation	Roles and Responsibilities
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Undertake monthly inspections of the site and surrounding areas in order to audit compliance with the EMPr and conditions of the environmental authorisation;</li> <li>Take appropriate action if the specifications contained in the EMPr and conditions of the environmental authorisation are not followed;</li> <li>Monitor and verify that environmental impacts are kept to a minimum, as far as possible; and</li> <li>Ensure that activities onsite comply with all relevant environmental legislation.</li> </ul>
ECO	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A suitably qualified external ECO must be appointed by the Holder of the EA to audit the project compliance in terms of the EMPr and conditions of the EA on a monthly basis, during the construction phase.</li> <li>The costs of the ECO shall be borne by the Holder of the EA (proof of appointment must be maintained onsite).</li> </ul>
Contractors, Staff and Service Providers	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Prepare Method Statements as per the EMPr, and ensure all activities are conducted as per the approved Method Statements.</li> <li>Regular on-site auditing to assess performance against the requirements of this EMPr.</li> <li>Completion of the appropriate training requirements as specified in the training program.</li> <li>Implementation and maintenance of environmental management controls as set out in the project's environmental management documentation.</li> </ul>

**Refer to: Table 1 (Part A, Section 3) of the Generic EMPr for the development and expansion of substation infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of electricity, attached as Appendix D and Table 1 (Part A, Section 3) of the Generic EMPr for the development of overhead transmission and distribution infrastructure, attached as Appendix E.**

## 4.2 ENVIRONMENTAL AWARENESS PLAN

Legislation requires that ENERTRAG (via the appointed EPC contractor/contractor/principal contractor) must develop an environmental awareness plan that describes the manner in which ENERTRAG intends to inform employees of any environmental risks which may result from their work and the manner in which the risks must be dealt with in order to avoid pollution or the degradation of the environment. In recognition of the need to protect our environment, environmental management should not only be seen as a legal obligation but also as a moral obligation.

It is important to ensure that all relevant personnel have the appropriate level of environmental awareness and competence to ensure continued environmental due diligence and ongoing minimisation of environmental degradation and harm.

To achieve effective environmental management, it is important that employees, contractors (including subcontractors) are aware of the responsibilities in terms of the relevant environmental legislation and the contents of the EMPr, conditions of the environmental authorisation.

ENERTRAG will provide appropriate resources to facilitate social and environmental awareness training during the construction, and operational phases of the project. ENERTRAG will require that

all managers associated with the project adhere to the mitigation/management measures detailed in the EMPr and identify, evaluate, and minimise risks to the social, physical and biophysical environments. This will be implemented by educating employees in social and environmental matters and responsibilities relating to performance of their assigned tasks. Furthermore, employees will be entrusted to maintain the necessary level of environmental performance for their activities. Contractors, and their associated sub-contractors, will also need to demonstrate compliance to mitigation/ management measures included in the EMPr.

The following methodology described must be used to implement and ensure environmental and social awareness and competence:

#### **4.2.1 INTERNAL COMMUNICATION**

Internal Communication of environmental issues to ensure environmental awareness will be achieved by using any combination of the following means:

- Meetings;
- Memos;
- Notice boards;
- Briefs;
- Reports;
- Monthly themes;
- Daily operational bulletins;
- Newsletter;
- E-mail;
- Telephone; and
- Induction training.

#### **4.2.2 STANDARD MEETINGS**

The following standard meetings will be held at specific times to ensure that environmental and social awareness; potential problems; complaints etc. are heard and addressed proactively:

- Safety, Health and Environmental Meetings will be held monthly by the Senior Management;
- Safety, Health and Environmental Meetings will be held weekly (during construction) and monthly (during operation) by the relevant personnel, environmental and social issues will form part of the agenda;
- Communication between all personnel and Senior Management will be facilitated through the appropriate reporting lines, or by using complaint and incident forms.

#### **4.2.3 ENVIRONMENTAL AND SOCIAL TALK TOPICS**

Monthly environmental and social talk topics must be compiled and distributed/shared to relevant personnel and must be displayed on appropriate notice boards or shared by whatever means established on site. As a minimum, the following topics must be considered during the course of the construction phase:

- Water Quality;
- Water Use and Consumption;
- Air Quality i.e. dust;
- Power Consumption and Energy Efficiency;

- Waste Management;
- Fauna and Flora;
- Emergency Procedures;
- Incidents Reporting;
- Systems;
- Noise;
- Heritage Impacts;
- Landowner Etiquette;
- Speed Limits;
- Health Risks (such as HIV/ Aids); and
- General Awareness (e.g. World Environment Day, National Arbour Day).

#### 4.2.4 GENERAL COMMUNICATIONS

Communication to the community, government, landowners, neighbouring farmers, environmental groups, non-government organisations and other stakeholders will be communicated to ensure environmental and social awareness by means of the following:

- Fax or E-mail;
- Telephone; or
- Formal meetings.

#### 4.2.5 TRAINING

It is important to ensure that all personnel, contractors and their sub-contractors have the appropriate level of environmental awareness and competence to ensure continued environmental due diligence and on-going minimisation of environmental harm. As a minimum environmental training must include the following:

- Employees must have a basic understanding of the key environmental features of the site and the surrounding environment.
- Employees will be thoroughly familiar with the requirements of the EMP and the environmental specifications as they apply to the project.
- Employees must undergo training for the operation and maintenance activities associated with project and have a basic knowledge of the potential environmental impacts that could occur and how they can be minimised and mitigated.
- Awareness of any other environmental matters, which are deemed to be necessary by the Environmental Officer.
- Training must include the environment, health and safety as well as basic HIV/AIDS education.

The following facets to training form part of this Environmental and Social Awareness Plan:

- **Induction:** Environmental and social awareness training will be given at induction when personnel join the company and/or return from leave. Induction training will also be given to visitors entering the site. Induction training will include, inter alia:
  - A discussion on the environment concept, what does it comprise of and how do we interact with it;
  - A description on the components and phases of the specific renewable power generation facility;

- A general account of how the facility and its associated activities can affect the environment, giving rise to what are called environmental impacts;
  - A discussion on what staff can do in order to help prevent the negative environmental impacts from degrading the environment i.e. environmental impact management.
- **Job Specific Training:** Job specific training programmes will be developed as and when required. The programs will be based on the significant environmental and social aspects/ impacts that are identified during regular audits and site inspections. Supervisory staff will be equipped with the necessary knowledge and information to guide their employees on environmental and social aspects applicable to performing a specific task.
  - **Competency Training:** The Environmental Officer will be responsible for the environmental and social competency and awareness training of Middle Management and supervisors. This training will be performed both on a one-on-one basis and through workshops and presentations. Competence and the effectiveness of training and development initiatives will be determined through the following methods:
    - Trend analysis of incidents reported; and
    - Analysis of work areas during visits and audits.

The process to declare competency of personnel is documented in the ISO9001:2000 procedure. This plan will be amended periodically in light of operational changes, learning experienced during its implementation and other activities that can affect the risk profiles.

- **Training Records:** Training can be done either in a written or verbal format but will be in an appropriate format for the receiving audience. Persons having received training must indicate in writing that they have indeed attended a training session and have been notified in detail of the contents and requirements of the EMP. The attendance registers must be kept on file.

To ensure accountable and demonstrated implementation of the EMP, a number of reporting systems, documentation controls and compliance mechanisms must be in place. **Table 4-2** indicates the minimum requirements as set out in the generic EMPs for the development of overhead transmission and distribution infrastructure and for the development and expansion of substation infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of electricity.

**Table 4-2 - Documentation Reporting and Compliance Requirements as per the generic EMPs**

Aspect	Refer to Generic EMP (Part A)
Document control/Filing system	Section 4.1
Documentation to be available	Section 4.2
Weekly Environmental Checklist	Section 4.3
Environmental site meetings	Section 4.4
Required Method Statements	Section 4.5
Environmental Incident Log (Diary)	Section 4.6



Aspect	Refer to Generic EMPr (Part A)
Non-compliance	Section 4.7
Corrective action records	Section 4.8
Photographic record	Section 4.9
Complaints register	Section 4.10
Claims for damages	Section 4.11
Interactions with affected parties	Section 4.12
Environmental audits	Section 4.13
Final environmental audits	Section 4.14

**Refer to: Part A, Section 4 of the Generic EMPr for the development and expansion of substation infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of electricity, attached as Appendix D and for the Development and Expansion for Overhead Electricity Transmission and Distribution Infrastructure attached as Appendix E.**

### 4.3 MONITORING

The internal ESCO will monitor the day-to-day site activities on an ongoing basis and will produce weekly monitoring reports during construction. The independent, external ECO will undertake monthly audits to ensure compliance with the EMPr and conditions of the environmental authorisation during the construction activities and will report to the Site Manager should any non-compliance be identified or corrective action deemed necessary.

During the operational phase, the Holder of the EA will establish, implement and maintain a procedure to monitor and measure, on a regular basis, the key characteristics of the operations that may have a significant environmental impact. The procedure shall include the documenting of information to monitor performance, applicable operational controls and conformity with the operation's environmental objectives and targets.

The Holder of the EA will ensure that all instruments and devices used for the measurement or monitoring are calibrated and appropriately operated and maintained. Calibration records must be kept on site or in close proximity to the equipment for ease of availability.

All the conditions outlined in the EMPr (**Section 5**) will be subject to required internal day-to-day monitoring and external compliance monitoring. Where required, any specific additional monitoring has been outlined in the EMPr (**Section 5**).

### 4.4 NON-CONFORMANCE AND CORRECTIVE ACTION

The auditing of the construction and operational activities may identify non-conformances to the EMPr and conditions of the EA. Non-conformances may also be identified through incidents, emergencies or complaints recorded. In order to correct non-conformances, the source must be determined, and corrective actions must be identified and implemented.

#### **4.4.1 COMPLIANCE WITH THE EMPR AND CONDITIONS OF THE ENVIRONMENTAL AUTHORISATION**

- A copy of the EMPr and conditions of the environmental authorisation will be available onsite at all times for the duration of the construction and operational activities;
- All persons employed by a contractor or their sub-contractors will abide by the requirements of the EMPr and conditions of the environmental authorisation;
- Any members of the workforce found to be in breach of any of the specifications contained within the EMPr and conditions of the environmental authorisation may be ordered by the Site Manager to leave the site. A contractor will not direct a person to undertake any activity which would place them in contravention of the specifications contained within the EMPr and conditions of the environmental authorisation;
- Should a contractor be in breach of any of the specifications contained in the EMPr and conditions of the environmental authorisation, the Site Manager will, in writing, instruct the contractor responsible for the incident of non-compliance regarding corrective and/or remedial action required, specify a timeframe for implementation of these actions, implement a penalty and/or indicate that work will be suspended should non-compliance continue;
- Should non-compliance continue, further written notification will be forwarded to the contractor responsible for the incident of non-compliance outlining the required corrective and/or remedial action, the timeframe for implementation, penalties and/or work will be suspended as specified previously; and
- Departmental officials will be given access to the property referred to in the EIR and EMPr for the purpose of assessing and/or monitoring compliance with the EMPr and conditions of the environmental authorisation, at all reasonable times.

#### **4.4.2 SPOT FINES**

The ESCO and ECO shall be authorised to impose spot fines for any of the transgressions detailed below:

- Littering on site;
- Lighting of illegal fires on site;
- Any persons, vehicles or equipment related to the contractor's operations found within the designated 'no-go' areas (especially for significant cultural resources such as nearby graves etc.);
- Creating excessive dust or excess noise emanating from site;
- Possession or use of intoxicating substances or weapons on site;
- Trapping, hunting or trading of fauna and / or plants on site;
- Any vehicles being driven in excess of designated speed limits;
- Any farm gates being left open;
- Unauthorised removal and/or damage to fauna, flora or cultural or heritage objects on site; and
- Urination and defecation anywhere other than using the toilet facilities that have been provided.

These activities, along with the appropriate guidelines to determining the fines, shall be agreed to by the Holder of the EA, the Site Manager and the Contractor. Such fines will be issued in addition to any remedial costs incurred as a result of non-compliance with the environmental specifications and or legal obligations. ENERTRAG will inform the contractor of the contravention and the amount of the fine.

It is important to note that fines can be issued on an organisational level, as well as at an individual level. These fines will be paid to an organisation as discussed and agreed to by the Holder of the EA, Site Manager, Contractors, ESCO and ECO. Proof of payment is to be provided to the EO within 30 days of the fine being issued. Payment of a fine may not be subtracted from any moneys owed to the contractor by the client. A fine is not deemed a cost saver to the client but a measure to ensure that all construction activities are undertaken in a manner that reduces further environmental damage.

#### **4.4.3 PENALTY FINES**

Where environmental damage is caused or a pollution incident, and/or failure to comply with any of the environmental specifications contained in the EMPr, the Contractor shall be liable to pay a penalty fine. The following transgressions should be penalised:

- Hazardous chemical/oil spill;
- Damage to sensitive environments;
- Damage to cultural and historical sites;
- Unauthorised removal/damage to indigenous trees and other vegetation, particularly in identified sensitive areas;
- Uncontrolled/unmanaged erosion;
- Unauthorised blasting activities; and
- Violation of environmental authorisation conditions.

These activities, along with the appropriate guidelines to determining fines, shall be agreed to by the Holder of the EA, the Site Manager and Contractor. The fines will be calculated on a severity basis and imposed as per the merits of the case. In addition to penalties, the Site Manager has the power to remove from site any person who is in contravention of the EMPr, and if necessary, the engineer can suspend part of or all the works, as required.

#### **4.4.4 DUTY OF CARE**

Under Section 28 of the NEMA, all personnel involved with the construction and operational activities onsite will be responsible for implementing measures to prevent pollution or degradation of the environment from occurring, continuing or recurring. Failure to comply with the above conditions is a breach of the duty of care. If such harm is unavoidable, steps must be taken to minimise and rectify such pollution or degradation of the environment.

### **4.5 DOCUMENTATION AND REPORTING**

The following documentation must be kept onsite in order to record compliance with the EMPr and conditions of the environmental authorisation:

- Record of complaints; and
- Record of emergencies and incidents.

The contractor will be required to report on the following:

- Environmental incidents involving contractor/ employees and/or the public;
- Environmental complaints and correspondence received from the public; and
- Incidents that cause harm or may cause harm to the environment.

The above records will form an integral part of the ESCO and ECO's reports and records thereof maintained for the duration of the project. These records will be kept with the EMPr and conditions of the EA, and will be made available for scrutiny if so requested by the Site Manager or his delegate, the ESCO and the ECO.

The contractor will ensure that the following information is recorded for all environmental complaints/incidents/emergencies:

- Date of complaint/incident/emergency;
- Location of complaint/incident/emergency;
- Nature of complaint/incident/emergency;
- Causes of complaint/incident/emergency;
- Party/parties responsible for causing complaint/incident/emergency;
- Immediate actions undertaken to stop/reduce/contain the causes of the complaint/incident/emergency;
- Additional corrective or remedial action taken and/or to be taken to address and to prevent reoccurrence of the complaint/incident/emergency;
- Timeframes and the parties responsible for the implementation of the corrective or remedial actions;
- Procedures to be undertaken and/or penalties to be applied if corrective or remedial actions are not implemented; and
- Copies of all correspondence received regarding complaints/incidents/emergency.

## 4.6 METHOD STATEMENTS

Before the contractor begins each construction activity, the contractor shall give to the ESCO and Site Manager a written Method Statement setting out the following:

- The type of construction activity;
- Locality where the activity will take place;
- Identification of impacts that might result from the activity;
- Identification of activities or aspects that may cause an impact;
- Methodology and/or specifications for impact prevention for each activity or aspect;
- Methodology and/or specifications for impact containment for each activity or aspect;
- Emergency/disaster incident and reaction procedures; and
- Treatment and continued maintenance of impacted environment.

The contractor must provide such information at least two weeks in advance of any or all construction activities for review and approval. Any changes made to the Method Statement after approval shall be given to the ESCO for review and the Site Manager for approval.

The ESCO and/or Site Manager may provide comment on the methodology and procedures proposed by the contractor but shall not be responsible for the contractor's chosen measures of impact mitigation and emergency/disaster management systems.

## 4.7 PUBLIC COMPLAINTS

The Contractor shall keep a Complaints Register on site to allow the general public to document any comments on or complaints regarding the activities of the site.

The Complaints Register must:

- Have numbered pages – any missing pages must be accounted for by the Contractor;
- Be tabled during monthly site meetings;
- Be made available to the SE/Contract Manager, the ECO, the Project Company, and/or any authority at any time if requested; and
- Include a section for the documentation of the action taken to address the complaint.

All complaints must be investigated, responded to, and recorded in the Complaints Register within 28 calendar days.

A generic grievance mechanism is detailed in **Section 5**.

## 5 GENERIC ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS

This section refers to construction related activities that are common to the development of the substation associated with the Project as defined within the pre-approved generic EMPs. For each activity, a set of prescribed environmental controls and associated management actions have been identified. Contractors shall implement these controls as a minimum requirement for mitigating the impact of particular construction related activities.

These control measures are defined within Part B: Section 1 of the pre-approved generic EMPs (attached as **Appendix D** and **Appendix E**). The format of a general environmental control is shown below, see **Table 5-1**. The boxes shaded in green are predefined and represent minimum standards for the management of that particular aspect. The Contractor will be required to adhere to all impact management actions (where applicable to the construction related activity) for the Project. The boxes shaded in red assign responsibility for the implementation and monitoring of the impact management actions. This implementation and monitoring information is project specific and shall be completed by the Contractor prior to commencement of construction.

**Table 5-1 – Format of a general environmental control illustrating aspects which are predefined versus those which still need to be completed by the contractor**

<b>Management Objective:</b>	Predefined as part of Generic EMP					
<b>Management Outcome:</b>	Predefined as part of Generic EMP					
<b>Impact Management Actions</b>	<b>Implementation</b>			<b>Monitoring</b>		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<b>Predefined as part of Generic EMP</b>	To be completed by Contractor	To be completed by Contractor	To be completed by Contractor	To be completed by Contractor	To be completed by Contractor	To be completed by Contractor

The completed template must be signed and dated on each page by both the contractor and the holder of the EA prior to commencement of the activity. The method statements must be prepared and agreed to by the holder of the EA, prior to commencement, and must be appended to the template. Each method statement must also be duly signed and dated on each page by the contractor and the holder of the EA. This template, once signed and dated, is legally binding. The holder of the EA will remain responsible for its implementation.



The construction related activities addressed within Part B: Section 1 of the pre-approved generic EMPs are as follows:

**Table 5-2 - Activities and management measures as per generic EMPr (Part B: Section 1)**

<b>Activity</b>	<b>Refer to Generic EMPr for the development and expansion of substation infrastructure, attached as Appendix D (Part B: Section 1)</b>	<b>Refer to Generic EMPr for the development of overhead transmission and distribution infrastructure, attached as Appendix E (Part B: Section 1)</b>
Environmental awareness training	5.1	5.1
Site Establishment development	5.2	5.2
Access restricted areas	5.3	5.3
Access roads	5.4	5.4
Fencing and Gate installation	5.5	5.5
Water Supply Management	5.6	5.6
Storm and wastewater management	5.7	5.7
Solid and hazardous waste management	5.8	5.8
Protection of watercourses and estuaries	5.9	5.9
Vegetation clearing	5.10	5.10
Protection of fauna	5.11	5.11
Protection of heritage resources	5.12	5.12
Safety of the public	5.13	5.13
Sanitation	5.14	5.14
Prevention of disease	5.15	5.15
Emergency procedures	5.16	5.16
Hazardous substances	5.17	5.17
Workshop, equipment maintenance and storage	5.18	5.18
Batching plants	5.19	5.19
Dust emissions	5.20	5.20

Activity	Refer to Generic EMPr for the development and expansion of substation infrastructure, attached as Appendix D (Part B: Section 1)	Refer to Generic EMPr for the development of overhead transmission and distribution infrastructure, attached as Appendix E (Part B: Section 1)
Blasting	5.21	5.21
Noise	5.22	5.22
Fire prevention	5.23	5.23
Stockpiling and stockpile areas	5.24	5.24
Finalising tower positions		5.25
Civil works	5.25	5.25
Excavation (and Installation) of foundations	5.26	5.26
Installation of foundations, cable trenching and drainage systems	5.27	5.27
Assembly and erecting towers		5.27
Installation of equipment (circuit breakers, current Transformers, Isolators, Insulators, surge arresters, voltage transformers, earth switches)	5.28	5.28
Stringing (and cabling)	5.30	5.28
Testing and Commissioning (all equipment testing, earthing system, system integration)	5.31	5.31
Socio-economic	5.32	5.29
Temporary closure of site	5.33	5.30
Dismantling of old equipment	5.34	5.34
Landscaping and rehabilitation	5.35	5.31

**Refer to: Part B – Section 1 of the Generic EMPr for the development and expansion of substation infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of electricity, attached as Appendix D and Part B – Section 1 of the Generic EMPr for the development of overhead transmission and distribution infrastructure, attached as Appendix E.**

## 6 SITE SPECIFIC ENVIRONMENTAL CONTROLS

The EMPr contains guidelines, operating procedures, rehabilitation and pollution control requirements which will be binding to the onsite personnel working for, or on behalf of ENERTRAG. It is essential that the EMPr be carefully studied, understood, implemented and adhered to at all times.

In instances where the method statements provided by the contractor conflict with the EMPr, such conflicts will be discussed between the Site Manager, ESCO, ECO and contractor and if unresolved the EMPr will take precedent.

The EMPr identifies various actions which are undertaken throughout the construction and operational phases of the Project. Not every action will be required during the entire course of activities. Therefore, the actions identified in the EMPr have been given priority timeframes for proposed implementation. The columns in the structure of the EMPr have been described **Table 6-1** below.

**Table 6-1 – Structure of EMPr**

Column	Description
<b>Activity/Aspect</b>	Highlights the various activities/aspects associated with the project i.e. the contractors' activities that will interact with the environment.
<b>Impact Management Outcome</b>	The desired outcomes from effectively minimising negative impacts and/or enhancing positive impacts.
<b>Impact Management Actions/Measures</b>	Indicates the actions required to prevent and /or minimise the potential impacts on the environment that are associated with the project.
<b>Indicator and Compliance Management</b>	Items that will assist with determining compliance against management actions.
<b>Responsibility</b>	Indicates the party responsible for implementing the environmental measures and action plans laid out in the EMPr. Please note that the Site Manager will have authority to stop works if/as necessary.
<b>Priority Timeframe</b>	Indicates when the actions for the specific aspect must be implemented and/or monitored.

**Table 6-2 – Contractor laydown area and site access: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures**

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
<b>CONTRACTOR LAYDOWN AREA AND SITE ACCESS</b>			
<b>Impact Management Outcome:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To implement measures to minimise impacts on the environment from the initiation of construction activities through planning, careful site access route selection and implementation of mitigation measures.</li> </ul>			
<b>Indicator and Compliance Mechanism:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Health, safety, environmental and community incident and complaints management system register.</li> <li>Close-out on incidents.</li> <li>Monitoring and audit reports.</li> <li>Inductions training and register.</li> <li>Environmental awareness programme/toolbox talks.</li> </ul>			
Project Initiation of Construction Activities	Appoint an ECO to manage and verify compliance with the EA and EMPr.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Project Manager</li> <li>EO</li> <li>Contractor (Site Manager)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pre-Construction</li> <li>Construction</li> </ul>
	The development footprint must be demarcated to ensure that only the demarcated areas are impacted upon. The sensitive areas identified must be demarcated before the construction commences. This includes all wetlands and the associated buffers, and any high sensitivity areas as indicated in <b>Figure 3-1</b> . Label these areas as environmentally sensitive areas, keep out.		
	Contractor laydown areas, vehicle re-fuelling areas and material storage facilities to remain outside of the delineated freshwater ecosystems and the associated NEMA 32m ZoR.		
	All personnel and contractors to undergo Environmental Awareness Training, including awareness of the surrounding area and wetlands to inform importance of		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction</li> <li>Operation</li> </ul>



Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
	these areas and their conservation. A signed register of attendance must be kept for proof.		
	Site clearing must be limited to the footprint of the infrastructure requirements.		■ Construction
	Locate firefighting measures at laydown areas and vehicles, such as fire extinguishers, and make personnel aware of fire prevention and firefighting measures.		
	Firefighting equipment must be securely placed and inspected monthly.		

**Table 6-3 – Vehicle, Equipment and Machinery Management: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures**

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
<b>VEHICLE, EQUIPMENT AND MACHINERY MANAGEMENT</b>			
<b>Impact Management Outcome:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To implement measures to minimise impacts on the environment from poorly maintained equipment, machinery and vehicles onsite.</li> </ul>			
<b>Indicator and Compliance Mechanism:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Health, safety, environmental and community incident and complaints management system register.</li> <li>Close-out on incidents.</li> <li>Monitoring and audit reports.</li> <li>Transport route delineation.</li> <li>Daily equipment, machinery and vehicle checklists.</li> <li>Incident classification and reporting procedure.</li> </ul>			
Operation of Equipment, Machinery and Vehicles	Ensure that the equipment, machinery and vehicles are adequately maintained so as to: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reduce the potential for spillages of oil, diesel, fuel or hydraulic fluid.</li> <li>Ensure road-worthiness.</li> <li>Reduce emissions.</li> </ul> Evidence of such maintenance must be recorded and maintained onsite for verification.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>EO</li> <li>ESCO / ECO</li> <li>Contractor</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction</li> <li>Operation</li> </ul>
	Maintenance vehicles should stick to demarcated road as far as practically possible to minimise soil compaction on adjacent soils.		
	The movement of vehicles into and out of the site must be managed to ensure the impact on public areas is minimised, and reasonable measures are taken to ensure that public and staff safety is managed adequately		



**Table 6-4 – Fuel and Chemical Management: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures**

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
<b>FUEL AND CHEMICAL MANAGEMENT</b>			
<b>Impact Management Outcome:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To ensure the correct storage, handling and disposal of fuels and chemicals in order to prevent impacts to the surrounding environment.</li> </ul>			
<b>Indicator and Compliance Mechanism:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Maintenance records.</li> <li>Safe disposal certificates (if applicable)</li> <li>Material safety data sheets (MSDS).</li> <li>Health, safety, environmental and community incident and complaints management system register.</li> <li>Chemicals management procedure (to be developed).</li> <li>Monitoring and audit reports.</li> <li>Training records.</li> </ul>			
Fuel and Chemical Management	Provide secure storage for fuel, oil, chemicals and other hazardous materials. Securely fence and lock the storage areas to accommodate all hazardous substances such as fuel, oils and chemicals. The storage area must be roofed and the floor must be an impermeable surface and suitably bunded as per the requirements outlined in SANS 10089-1 (2008). If storage capacity triggers licencing, those must be acquired.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>EO</li> <li>ESCO / ECO</li> <li>Contractor</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction</li> <li>Operation</li> </ul>
	Indicate the location of the fuel and chemical storage area on the layout plans.		
	Label all liquids (chemicals and hydrocarbons) stored onsite for easy identification. MSDS for onsite chemicals, hydrocarbon materials and hazardous substances must be readily available. MSDS must include mitigation measures to ameliorate potential environmental impacts which may result from a spill, incorporating health and safety mitigation measures.		

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
	A spill management plan must be in place to ensure that should there be any chemical spill out or over that it does not run into the surrounding areas. Drip trays or any form of oil absorbent material must be placed underneath vehicles/machinery and equipment when not in use.		
	No servicing of equipment on site unless necessary. All contaminated soil / yard stone shall be treated in situ or removed and be placed in containers for safe disposal.		
	In cases where a surface leak occurs during loading and off-loading activities, the spill material will be cleaned using a spill kit.		
	Leaking equipment and vehicles must be repaired immediately or be removed from project area to facilitate repair		
Health and Safety	Display “no smoking” and “no naked flame” signs in and around the project area, as well as near the hazardous material store.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ EO</li> <li>■ ESCO / ECO</li> <li>■ Contractor</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Construction</li> <li>■ Operation</li> </ul>
	Strategically place the correct types of fire extinguishers onsite and near the hazardous material store. Train key personnel on basic firefighting skills		
	Frequently inspect and maintain containment facilities and retain records onsite.		

**Table 6-5 – Waste Management: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures**

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
<b>WASTE MANAGEMENT</b>			
<b>Impact Management Outcome:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To ensure the correct handling, storage, transportation and disposal of general waste and hazardous waste.</li> </ul>			
<b>Indicator and Compliance Mechanism:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Induction training and records.</li> <li>Waste Management Plan (WMP).</li> <li>Relevant SANS Codes of Practice.</li> <li>Waste manifests and safety disposal certificates (all waste streams).</li> <li>Emergency preparedness and response procedure.</li> <li>Incident classification and reporting management procedure (to be developed).</li> <li>Health, safety, environmental and community incident and complaints management system register.</li> <li>Monitoring and audit reports.</li> </ul>			
General Waste Management	General waste generated as a result of construction and operational activities must be managed in accordance with a WMP (to be developed).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>EO</li> <li>ESCO / ECO</li> <li>Contractor</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction</li> <li>Operation</li> </ul>
	Train and inform all onsite personnel regarding general waste minimisation, management and disposal as per the WMP.		
	Prohibit littering, burning and burying of waste onsite.		
	Place an adequate number of labelled or colour coded general waste bins around the laydown area and at the construction sites during construction activities in order to minimise littering. The bins must be removed from the site on a regular basis for disposal at a registered or licensed disposal facility.		

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
	Waste management must be a priority and all waste must be collected and stored adequately. It is recommended that all waste be removed from site on a weekly basis to prevent rodents and pests entering the site.		
	Refuse bins shall be emptied daily (or as required) and secured.		
	Temporary storage of domestic waste shall be in covered waste skips.		
	Maximum domestic waste storage period shall be 10 days.		
	Retain records such as waybills and waste manifests associated with waste removal, transportation and disposal (safe disposal certificates).		
	Prohibit the mixing of general waste with hazardous waste. Should general waste be mixed with hazardous waste, it will be considered hazardous waste.		
	There should be waste segregation (e.g. electronic equipment, chemicals, oil contaminated rags, paper, plastic) and management on the site.		
	Recover, recycle and reuse waste of general waste as far as possible.		
Hazardous Waste Management	Hazardous waste generated as a result of construction, and operational activities must be managed in accordance with a WMP that is aligned to ANS 10234: Classification and Labelling of Chemicals – SANS 10228: The Identification and Classification of Dangerous Substances – SANS 10229: Packing of Dangerous Goods for Road and Rail Transportation.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ ESCO / ECO</li> <li>■ EO</li> <li>■ Contractor</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Construction</li> <li>■ Operation</li> </ul>
	The WMP must include a procedure for handling spillages.		
	Strict use and management of all hazardous materials used on site.		

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
	Strict management of potential sources of pollution (e.g. litter, hydrocarbons from vehicles & machinery, cement during construction, etc.) within demarcated / bunded areas		
	Train and inform all onsite personnel regarding hazardous waste minimisation, management and disposal as per the WMP.		
	A designated and appropriately demarcated and covered hazardous waste storage area must be established on a hard standing area.		
	Ensure that all hazardous wastes temporarily stored on site are stored in a covered skip and are placed on a hard standing.		
	Clean areas where hazardous waste spills have occurred and dispose of the hazardous material appropriately. Key personnel must be trained on handling spillages.		
	Retain records of appropriate safety disposal certificates associated with hazardous waste removal, transportation and disposal.		
	An emergency preparedness and response plan is to be developed by the contractor/operator for any hazardous waste being removed, transported and disposed of offsite.		
	Ensure that waste manifest documentation (as per the Waste Classification and Management Regulations – GNR 634) is prepared and maintained for the generation, transportation and disposal of waste.		
	All spills should be reported to the authorities as per the emergency preparedness and response frequencies / specifications.		

**Table 6-6 – Health and Safety: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures**

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
<b>HEALTH AND SAFETY</b>			
<b>Impact Management Outcome:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To ensure communication with members of the public to promote safety awareness.</li> <li>■ To prevent public access to construction sites and storage areas.</li> <li>■ To ensure safety for all onsite personnel.</li> </ul>			
<b>Indicator and Compliance Mechanism:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Induction training and records.</li> <li>■ Health, safety, environmental and community incident and complaints management system register.</li> <li>■ Monitoring and audit reports.</li> <li>■ Incident classification and reporting management procedure (to be developed).</li> <li>■ PPE Register.</li> <li>■ Occupational health and safety plan (to be developed).</li> <li>■ Health and safety protocol (to be developed).</li> <li>■</li> </ul>			
Health and Safety	The construction phase will be managed according to all the requirements of the Occupational Health and Safety Act 85 of 1993 specifically the Construction Regulations.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site Manager</li> <li>■ Contractor</li> <li>■ ESCO / ECO</li> <li>■ EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Construction</li> <li>■ Operation</li> </ul>
	All onsite personnel are required to undergo induction training and regular toolbox talks in order to raise awareness of the conditions contained herein.		
	Development and implementation of an occupational health and safety plan and Safety Health Environment Risk & Quality (SHERQ) policy	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Contractor/Operator</li> <li>■ Site Manager</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Construction</li> <li>■ Operation</li> </ul>



Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
	The appointed contractor will be responsible for the development of a comprehensive health and safety protocol which must be adhered to.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Contractor</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Construction</li></ul>
	Emergency response plan to be in place prior to beginning construction and to include aspects such as appointment of emergency controller, provision of first aid, first responder contact numbers.		
	Provide and wear appropriate PPE onsite.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Contractor/Operator</li><li>Site Manager</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Construction</li><li>Operation</li></ul>
	All normal procedures for working at heights, hot work permits, confined space entry, cordon off excavations etc to be in place before construction begins	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Contractor/Operator</li><li>Site Manager</li></ul>	
	All necessary good hygiene practices to be in place, e.g. provision of toilets, eating areas, infectious disease controls.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Site Manager</li><li>Contractor</li><li>ESCO / ECO</li><li>EO</li></ul>	
	Policies and practice for dealing with known vectors of disease such as AIDS, TB, COVID 19 and others.		
	Prior to construction determine the dangerous species in the area and what responses are needed to bites/exposure/attacks.		
	Train all onsite personnel handling chemical or hazardous substances in the use of such substances and the environmental, health and safety consequences of incidents.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Site Manager</li><li>Contractor</li><li>ESCO / ECO</li><li>EO</li></ul>	
	Outside work must be stopped during thunderstorms. Lighting conductors may be required for the final installation, to be confirmed during design phase.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Site Manager</li><li>Contractor</li><li>EO</li></ul>	

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
Facility emergencies	Emergency response plan for full operation and maintenance phase to be in place prior to beginning commissioning and to include aspects such as: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ appointment of emergency controller,</li> <li>■ emergency isolation systems for electricity,</li> <li>■ emergency isolation and containment systems for electrolyte,</li> <li>■ provision of PPE for hazardous materials response,</li> <li>■ provision of emergency facilities for staff at the main office building,</li> <li>■ provision of first aid facilities,</li> <li>■ first responder contact numbers etc</li> </ul>	■ Operator	■ Operation
	A detailed risk assessment of all normal operating and maintenance activities on site to be compiled, and form the basis of operating instructions, prior to commencing commissioning.	■ Operator	■ Operation
	Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDSs) must be made available for all chemicals and substances on site	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site Manager</li> <li>■ Contractor</li> <li>■ Operator</li> <li>■ ESCO / ECO</li> <li>■ EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Construction</li> <li>■ Operation</li> </ul>
Fire risk	Full Process Safety Management system with all elements to be implemented to highest international best practice levels.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site Manager</li> <li>■ Contractor</li> <li>■ Operator</li> <li>■ ESCO / ECO</li> <li>■ EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Construction</li> <li>■ Operation</li> </ul>
	Suitable fire-fighting equipment on site near source of fuel, e.g. diesel tank, generators, mess, workshops etc		
	Safety integrity level rating of equipment (failure probably) with suitable redundancy if required.		
	Emergency Response plan in compliance with SANS 1514 to be compiled, e.g. plan from transport and construction phase to be extended to operational phase to		



Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
	include the hazards of the systems containing large quantities of highly hazardous chemicals.		
Public Safety	Restrict public access by employing full time security for the site.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Site Manager</li><li>■ ESCO / ECO</li><li>■ EO</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>■ Construction</li><li>■ Operation</li></ul>

**Table 6-7 – Water Management: EMP Mitigation and Management Measures**

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
<b>WATER MANAGEMENT</b>			
<b>Impact Management Outcome:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To implement measures to prevent the contamination on surface and groundwater resources.</li> <li>■ To prevent erosion.</li> </ul>			
<b>Indicator and Compliance Mechanism:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Induction training and records.</li> <li>■ WMP (to be developed).</li> <li>■ Water Use Licence (or General Authorisation as applicable).</li> <li>■ Incident classification and reporting management procedure (to be developed).</li> <li>■ Environmental awareness programme/toolbox talks.</li> <li>■ SWMP (to be developed).</li> </ul>			
Surface Water and Groundwater Management	Investigate feasibility of construction activities being conducted during the dry season if practical and feasible to avoid possible wetland contamination from storm water runoff (as well as soil erosion) that may be experienced during wet seasons, as much as possible.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site Manager</li> <li>■ ESCO / ECO</li> <li>■ EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Pre-Construction</li> </ul>
	The entire construction area (development site) must be fenced prior to the commencement of construction and vegetation clearing to ensure that no vehicle or other construction personnel access occurs off the site and within the 32m Zone of Regulation (ZoR) of the or into the freshwater ecosystems themselves.		
	The freshwater ecosystems and associated NEMA 32m ZoR must be clearly demarcated by an ESCO / ECO and marked as a no-go area;		

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
	A stormwater management plan must be developed in the preconstruction phase, detailing the stormwater structures and management interventions that must be installed to manage the increase of surface water flows directly into any natural systems.		
	The stormwater control systems must be inspected on an annual basis to ensure these are functional. Effective stormwater management must include effective stabilisation (gabions and Reno mattresses) of exposed soil and the re-vegetation of any disturbed riverbanks.		
	Drifts fences/silt curtains (as part of construction-phase stormwater control system) must be placed along the NEMA 32m ZoR to mitigate against potential sediment deposition and erosion control.		
	Working protocols incorporating pollution control measures (including approved method statements by the contractor) <u>must</u> be clearly set out for the project and strictly enforced.		
	Install properly sized culverts with erosion protection measures at the present road / track crossings where already installed by local landowners / public works entities.		
	To appropriately manage storm water, the SWMP needs to be implemented.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site Manager</li> <li>Contractor</li> <li>ESCO / ECO</li> <li>EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pre- construction</li> <li>Construction</li> <li>Operation</li> </ul>
	It is recommended that a comprehensive rehabilitation / monitoring plan be implemented from the project onset i.e. during the detailed design phase prior to construction, to ensure a net benefit to the environment within all areas that will remain undisturbed.		

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
	The site must be prepared/managed/contoured as according to the SWMP (to be developed) to allow for surface water to readily drain away and to prevent ponding of water anywhere within the site.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site Manager</li> <li>Contractor</li> <li>ESCO / ECO</li> <li>EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction</li> </ul>
	No runoff must be discharged or directed into the wetlands.		
	Containment of all contaminated water by means of careful run-off management on site.		



**Table 6-8 – Air quality: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures**

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
<b>AIR QUALITY</b>			
<b>Impact Management Outcome:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To ensure that impacts to air quality of the surrounding environment are minimised.</li> </ul>			
<b>Indicator and Compliance Mechanism:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Complaints register.</li> <li>Incident reporting system.</li> <li>Health, safety, environmental and community incident and complaints management system register.</li> <li>Incident classification and reporting management procedure (to be developed).</li> <li>Equipment, machinery and vehicle maintenance.</li> </ul>			
Dust Management	Before the commencement of any site works and during the operation, as much vegetation as possible must be retained, including patches and strips to minimise dust.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>EO</li> <li>ESCO / ECO</li> <li>Contractor</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction</li> <li>Operation</li> </ul>
	Activities with high dust-causing potential, such as grading and moving of soil, must not be carried out in sensitive areas during adverse wind conditions.		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction</li> </ul>
	All stockpiles (if any) must be restricted to designated areas and may not exceed a height of two (2) metres;		
	Earth-moving works have the potential to generate large amounts of dust. Pre-planning of earth-moving works can reduce dust emissions by limiting the time the site is exposed. Options for dust control can include the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Plan earth-moving works so that they are completed just prior to the time they are needed</li> </ul>		

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Observe weather conditions and do not commence or continue earth moving works if conditions are unsuitable e.g., under conditions of strong winds</li> <li>Reduce off-site hauling via balanced cut and fill operations</li> <li>Pre-water areas to be disturbed</li> </ul>		
	Cover and/or maintain appropriate freeboard on trucks hauling any loose material that could produce dust when travelling. Minimise transfer points.		
	Re-vegetate disturbed areas as soon as possible to prevent excessive dust from occurring.		
	Once construction is complete, initiate rehabilitation (e.g. re-vegetation) procedures to reduce wind speed across exposed surfaces.		
	Dampen exposed soil to suppress dust if required. Use watering sprays on materials to be loaded and during loading.		
	Where possible, minimise speed limits, vehicle weights and the number of vehicles using unpaved roads.		

**Table 6-9 – Noise: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures**

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
<b>NOISE</b>			
<b>Impact Management Outcome:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To ensure that noise impacts to the surrounding environment are minimal or mitigated.</li> </ul>			
<b>Indicator and Compliance Mechanism:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Complaints register.</li> <li>Incident reporting system.</li> <li>Health, safety, environmental and community incident and complaints management system register.</li> <li>Incident classification and reporting management procedure (to be developed).</li> <li>Equipment, machinery and vehicle maintenance.</li> </ul>			
Noise	Fit equipment, machinery and vehicles generating excessive noise with appropriate noise abatement measures and undergo regular maintenance to ensure optimum efficiency during operation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>EO</li> <li>ESCO / ECO</li> <li>Contractor/Operator</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction</li> <li>Operation</li> </ul>
	Provide a complaints register to report any excessive noise incidents. Manage all complaints as per the Incident Classification and Reporting Management Procedure		
	Regular maintenance of equipment to reduce the generation of additional unwanted noise		
	Avoid noisy activities at night-time and outside of normal weekend working hours where possible.		

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
	Due to rural nature of site, construction is unlikely to continue at after sunset, however if required to work afterhours, notices should be put up informing the public accordingly.		
	Employees / contractors are to be provided with appropriate hearing protection when undertaking noisy activities.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>EO</li> <li>ESCO / ECO</li> <li>Contractor/Operator</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction</li> <li>Operation</li> </ul>
	Employees to be provided with hearing protection if working near equipment that exceeds the noise limits.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>EO</li> <li>ESCO / ECO</li> <li>Contractor/Operator</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction</li> <li>Operation</li> </ul>

**Table 6-10 – Soil, Land Use and Agriculture: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures**

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
<b>SOIL, LAND USE AND AGRICULTURE</b>			
<b>Impact Management Outcome:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To prevent any disturbance, erosion or contamination of soil resources.</li> </ul>			
<b>Indicator and Compliance Mechanism:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Induction training and records.</li> <li>WMP (to be developed).</li> <li>Incident classification and reporting management procedure (to be developed).</li> <li>Health, safety, environmental and community incident and complaints management system register.</li> <li>Monitoring and audit reports.</li> <li>Stormwater Management Plan (SWMP) (to be developed).</li> </ul>			
Soil and Land Management (Agricultural impacts)	There are no additional mitigation measures required, over and above what has already been included in the <i>Generic Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) For The Development And Expansion For Overhead Electricity Transmission And Distribution Infrastructure and the Generic Environmental Management Programme (EMPr) For Substation Infrastructure For The Transmission And Distribution Of Electricity, as per Government Notice 435, which was published in Government Gazette 42323 on 22 March 2019.</i>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site Manager</li> <li>Contractor</li> <li>Developer</li> <li>ESCO / ECO</li> <li>EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Pre-Construction</li> </ul>
Erosion Management	<p>Revegetate adjacent areas with an indigenous grass mix, to re-establish a protective cover, in order to minimise soil erosion and dust emissions.</p> <p>All disturbed areas adjacent to the proposed development areas should be re-vegetated with an indigenous grass mix, if necessary, to re-establish a protective cover, to minimise soil erosion and dust emission;</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site Manager</li> <li>Contractor</li> <li>Operator/Developer</li> <li>ESCO / ECO</li> <li>EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction</li> </ul>



Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
	The footprint areas should be lightly ripped to alleviate compaction.		
	Disturbed areas adjacent to the footprint area should be revegetated with indigenous grass mix to limit potential soil erosion.		■ Operation



**Table 6-11 – Aquatic Biodiversity: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures**

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
<b>AQUATIC BIODIVERSITY</b>			
<b>Impact Management Outcome:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Prevent the unnecessary destruction of, and fragmentation of the aquatic biodiversity of the area.</li> <li>No excess aquatic habitat withing the area</li> <li>Prevent contamination of wetlands</li> </ul>			
<b>Indicator and Compliance Mechanism:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Induction training and records.</li> <li>Incident classification and reporting management procedure (to be developed).</li> <li>Environmental awareness programme/toolbox talks.</li> <li>Monitoring and audit reports.</li> </ul>			
Loss of Wetland Habitat	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Areas of undisturbed, natural grassland and wetland habitat should be avoided. Areas of direct loss that cannot be avoided must be addressed via additional conservation actions/offsets as required.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site Manager</li> <li>ESCO / ECO</li> <li>EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A loss/disturbance buffer zone of at least 100 m should be maintained between the maximum extent of construction works and the outer boundary of the wetland.</li> </ul>		
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To prevent loss of natural habitat in wetlands beyond the direct disturbance footprint, prior to any vegetation clearing, the development footprints should be clearly marked out with flagging tape/posts in the field.</li> </ul>		

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
Changes in wetland health/functioning	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Areas of undisturbed, natural grassland and wetland habitat should be avoided. Areas of direct loss that cannot be avoided must be addressed via additional conservation actions/offsets as required.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site Manager</li> <li>ESCO / ECO</li> <li>EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A loss/disturbance buffer zone of at least 100 m should be maintained between the maximum extent of construction works and the outer boundary of the wetland.</li> </ul>		
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To prevent loss of natural habitat in wetlands beyond the direct disturbance footprint, prior to any vegetation clearing, the development footprints should be clearly marked out with flagging tape/posts in the field.</li> </ul>		
Soil Erosion	Install erosion prevention measures as part of the stormwater management plan, prior to the onset of construction activities. Measures should include energy dissipating measures such as sandbags, Ecology, or low berms on approach and departure slopes to crossings to prevent flow concentration. Sediment barriers such as silt fences or the placement of hay bales around the lower edge of bare soil areas, and active re-vegetation of disturbed areas as soon as possible.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site Manager</li> <li>ESCO / ECO</li> <li>EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction</li> <li>Operational</li> <li>Decommissioning</li> </ul>
Establishment of Alien invasive species (AIS)	An alien and invasive species management plan should be developed for the Project, which includes details of strategies and procedures that must be implemented on site to control the spread of alien and invasive species. A combined approach using both chemical and mechanical control methods, with periodic follow-up treatments informed by regular monitoring, is recommended.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site Manager</li> <li>ESCO / ECO</li> <li>EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction</li> <li>Operational</li> <li>Decommissioning</li> </ul>

**Table 6-12 – Plant Species: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures**

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
<b>PLANT SPECIES</b>			
<b>Impact Management Outcome:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To minimise impact to the vegetation community</li> <li>■ To minimise impact to plant SCC</li> </ul>			
<b>Indicator and Compliance Mechanism:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Induction training and records.</li> <li>■ Environmental awareness programme/toolbox talks.</li> <li>■ Monitoring and audit reports.</li> </ul>			
Direct loss and disturbance of natural habitat including Loss of Flora Species of Conservation Concern	<b>Avoidance:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ As much of the proposed Project infrastructure as possible should be located in disturbed/modified habitat units, such as <i>Hyparrhenia hirta</i> – <i>Eragrostis chloromelas</i> Grassland, Alien Tree Plantations, and Transformed and Degraded Areas) and localised disturbed sites;</li> <li>■ As far as practical, access roads should be aligned with existing farm roads and access tracks, and if feasible, no permanent access roads should be constructed in Mixed Rocky Ridge Bushveld and <i>Lopholaena corifolia</i> Rocky Ridge/Outcrop Grassland;</li> <li>■ A pre-construction micro-siting walkdown of the approved development footprints should be conducted during the wet/growing season.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site Manager</li> <li>■ Contractor</li> <li>■ ESCO/ ECO</li> <li>■ EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Construction</li> </ul>
	<b>Minimisation:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ All vegetation clearing for the Project should be restricted to the proposed Project footprints only, with no clearing permitted outside of these areas;</li> </ul>		

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The footprints to be cleared of vegetation should be clearly demarcated prior to construction to prevent unnecessary clearing outside of these areas;</li> <li>No heavy vehicles should travel beyond the marked works zone;</li> <li>Temporary facilities associated with construction, such as portable toilets, storage and laydown areas, should be located on land that is modified.</li> </ul>		
	<p>Rehabilitation:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A rehabilitation/ landscaping protocol should be developed and implemented to stabilise and revegetate all non-operational sites that have been disturbed by construction. The protocol should include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stockpiling of topsoil from development footprints during site preparation;</li> <li>Post-construction, the land form should be correctly contoured to limit potential erosion and compacted soils should be ripped and loosened to facilitate vegetation establishment;</li> <li>Topsoil removed during construction should be applied to all non-operational sites that were disturbed during construction and require revegetation; and</li> <li>Grass species used during rehabilitation should be indigenous and locally-occurring perennial species, and include a mixture of pioneer, sub-climax and climax species</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		
Establishment and spread of alien invasive species	<p>An AIS control and eradication plan must be developed for the Project that focuses on controlling and eradicating AIS in, and immediately adjacent to, the construction footprints. The plan must include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Identification of AIS management units</li> <li>Prioritisation of sites and species requiring control;</li> <li>Targets and indicators of success;</li> <li>Scheduling of AIS control;</li> <li>Species-specific control methods, using a combined approach of both chemical and mechanical control methods; and</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site Manager</li> <li>Contractor</li> <li>ESCO/ ECO</li> <li>EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction</li> <li>Operational</li> <li>Decommissioning</li> </ul>



Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
	■ Provision for follow-up treatments, as informed by regular AIS monitoring.		
	Active alien invasive species control should continue throughout the operational phase, as per the approved AIS control and eradication programme.		

**Table 6-13 – Animal Species: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures**

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
<b>ANIMAL SPECIES</b>			
<b>Impact Management Outcome:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Prevent the loss of the faunal community</li> </ul>			
<b>Indicator and Compliance Mechanism:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Induction training and records.</li> <li>Incident classification and reporting management procedure (to be developed).</li> <li>Environmental awareness programme/toolbox talks.</li> <li>Adhere to sensitivity map criteria</li> <li>Monitoring and audit reports.</li> </ul>			
Direct loss and disturbance of natural habitat  And  Habitat fragmentation impacting fauna movement/dispersal	<b>Avoidance:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>As much of the proposed Project infrastructure as possible should be located in disturbed/modified habitat units, such as <i>Hyparrhenia hirta</i> – <i>Eragrostis chloromelas</i> Grassland, Alien Tree Plantations, and Transformed and Degraded Areas) and localised disturbed sites;</li> <li>As far as practical, access roads should be aligned with existing farm roads and access tracks, and if feasible, no permanent access roads should be constructed in Mixed Rocky Ridge Bushveld and <i>Lopholaena corifolia</i> Rocky Ridge/Outcrop Grassland;</li> <li>A pre-construction micro-siting walkdown of the approved development footprints should be conducted during the wet/growing season.</li> </ul> <b>Minimisation:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All vegetation clearing for the Project should be restricted to the proposed Project footprints only, with no clearing permitted outside of these areas;</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site Manager</li> <li>Contractor</li> <li>ESCO/ ECO</li> <li>EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction</li> </ul>



Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The footprints to be cleared of vegetation should be clearly demarcated prior to construction to prevent unnecessary clearing outside of these areas;</li> <li>No heavy vehicles should travel beyond the marked works zone;</li> <li>Temporary facilities associated with construction, such as portable toilets, storage and laydown areas, should be located on land that is modified.</li> </ul>		
	<p>Rehabilitation:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A rehabilitation/ landscaping protocol should be developed and implemented to stabilise and revegetate all non-operational sites that have been disturbed by construction. The protocol should include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stockpiling of topsoil from development footprints during site preparation;</li> <li>Post-construction, the land form should be correctly contoured to limit potential erosion and compacted soils should be ripped and loosened to facilitate vegetation establishment;</li> <li>Topsoil removed during construction should be applied to all non-operational sites that were disturbed during construction and require revegetation; and</li> <li>Grass species used during rehabilitation should be indigenous and locally-occurring perennial species, and include a mixture of pioneer, sub-climax and climax species.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		
Injury, mortality and disturbance of fauna	<p>Avoidance and minimisation:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>An Environmental Control Officer (ECO) should be on-site during vegetation clearing to monitor and manage any wildlife-human interactions;</li> <li>As appropriate, barriers should be erected around construction trenches and excavations to prevent fauna being trapped in these features;</li> <li>Any fauna species trapped in construction areas, should be safely and correctly relocated to an adjacent area of natural habitat;</li> <li>A low-speed limit (recommended 20-40 km/h) should be enforced on site to reduce wildlife collisions;</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site Manager</li> <li>Contractor</li> <li>ESCO/ ECO</li> <li>EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction</li> <li>Operational</li> <li>Decommissioning</li> </ul>

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The handling, poisoning and killing of on-site fauna by contractors must be strictly prohibited;</li> <li>General noise abatement equipment should be fitted to construction machinery and vehicles;</li> <li>Dust suppression using water bowzers should be undertaken on all roads and other sites where dust entrainment occurs;</li> <li>The rules and regulations concerning fauna should be communicated to contractors through on-site signage and awareness training; and</li> <li>An incidence register should be maintained throughout all phases of the Project detailing any fauna mortalities/injuries caused by on-site activities. The register should be used to identify additional biodiversity management requirements.</li> <li>Refer to the Avifauna Specialist Assessment for mitigation and management measures concerning birds.</li> </ul>		
	<p>Avoidance and minimisation</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>No off-road driving is permitted for vehicles and mobile machinery used during operations and for maintenance purposes.</li> <li>A low-speed limit (recommended 20-40 km/h) should be enforced on site to reduce wildlife collisions;</li> <li>The handling, poisoning and killing of on-site fauna by maintenance personnel must be strictly prohibited;</li> <li>The rules and regulations concerning fauna should be communicated to maintenance personnel through on-site signage and awareness training.</li> <li>Refer to the Avifauna Specialist Assessment for mitigation and management measures concerning birds.</li> </ul>		
Loss of fauna species of conservation concern	<p>Avoidance and minimisation</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>See mitigation measures for: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Direct loss and disturbance of natural habitat; and</li> <li>Injury, mortality and disturbance of fauna.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

**Table 6-14 – Avifauna: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures**

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
<b>AVIFAUNA</b>			
<b>Impact Management Outcome:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To minimise impacts to avifauna and their habitat</li> </ul>			
<b>Indicator and Compliance Mechanism:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Induction training and records.</li> <li>Incident classification and reporting management procedure (to be developed).</li> <li>Environmental awareness programme/toolbox talks.</li> <li>Monitoring and audit reports.</li> </ul>			
Displacement due to disturbance associated with the construction of the EGI	Restrict construction to the immediate infrastructural footprint. Access to remaining areas should be strictly controlled to minimise disturbance of EGI sensitive species.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site Manager</li> <li>Contractor</li> <li>ESCO/ ECO</li> <li>EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction</li> </ul>
	Minimise removal of natural vegetation and rehabilitate natural vegetation post-construction where possible.		
	Prioritise upgrading existing roads (where the requisite roads authority permission has been issued) over constructing new roads.		
	Apply noise and dust control measures according to best practice in the industry.		
	Strictly implement the recommendations of ecological and botanical specialists to reduce the level of habitat loss.		
Displacement of EGI sensitive species from	Restrict construction to the immediate infrastructural footprint where possible. Access to remaining areas should be strictly controlled to minimise disturbance of	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site Manager</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Operational</li> </ul>

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
breeding/feeding/roosting areas	EGL sensitive species. Rehabilitate natural vegetation post-construction where possible.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Contractor</li> <li>ESCO/ ECO</li> <li>EO</li> </ul>	
	Once operational, vehicle and pedestrian access to the site should be controlled and restricted to the facility footprint as much as possible to prevent unnecessary destruction of vegetation.		
Population reduction of EGL sensitive species	A vulture-friendly pole design should be used, with appropriate mitigation measures for complicated pole structures (e.g., insulation of live components to prevent electrocutions on terminal structures and pole transformer), as recommended by the Avifaunal Specialist.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site Manager</li> <li>Contractor</li> <li>ESCO/ ECO</li> <li>EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Operational</li> <li>Decommissioning</li> </ul>
	Apply insulation reactively in the substation if significant electrocutions of avifauna are recorded.		
	Restrict dismantling to the immediate infrastructural footprint where possible. Access to remaining areas should be strictly controlled to minimise disturbance of EGL sensitive species.		
	Apply noise and dust control measures according to best practice in the industry.		
	Prioritise the use of existing access roads during the decommissioning phase and avoid construction of new roads where feasible.		
Population reduction of EGL sensitive species through collisions with 132kV power line	A vulture-friendly pole design should be used, with appropriate mitigation measures for complicated pole structures (e.g., insulation of live components to prevent electrocutions on terminal structures and pole transformer), as recommended by the Avifaunal Specialist.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site Manager</li> <li>Contractor</li> <li>ESCO/ ECO</li> <li>EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Operational</li> </ul>
	Apply insulation reactively in the substation if significant electrocutions of avifauna are recorded		

**Table 6-15 – Archaeological and Cultural Heritage: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures**

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
<b>ARCHAEOLOGICAL AND CULTURAL HERITAGE</b>			
<b>Impact Management Outcome:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To ensure that sites/artefacts of heritage value are identified and protected.</li> </ul>			
<b>Indicator and Compliance Mechanism:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Health, safety, environmental and community incident and complaints management system register.</li> <li>Incident classification and reporting management procedure (to be developed).</li> <li>Monitoring and audit reports.</li> </ul>			
Damage to or destruction of sites	Avoid impacts (preferred) or locate and sample or rescue sites/burials before disturbance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Project developer</li> <li>Site Manager</li> <li>Contractor</li> <li>ESCO / ECO</li> <li>EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Planning Phase</li> <li>Construction</li> </ul>
	Appoint archaeologist to evaluate alignment well before construction (noting that further survey may be required if there are doubts).		
	Should any evidence of archaeological sites or remains (e.g. remnants of stone-made structures, indigenous ceramics, bones, stone artefacts, ostrich eggshell fragments, charcoal and ash concentrations), fossils or other categories of heritage resources be found during the proposed development, SAHRA APM Unit (Natasha Higgitt/Phillip Hine 021 462 5402) must be alerted.		
	If unmarked human burials are uncovered, the SAHRA Burial Grounds and Graves (BGG) Unit (Mimi Seetelo 012 320 8490), must be alerted immediately as per section 36(6) of the NHRA. A professional archaeologist must be contracted as soon as possible to inspect the findings. A Phase 2 rescue excavation operation may be required subject to permits issued by SAHRA.		

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
	No-Go signage will need to be placed at sites close to the final alignment. To be determined during planning phase.		
	Reporting chance finds as early as possible to SAHRA ( <a href="https://www.sahra.org.za/contact/">https://www.sahra.org.za/contact/</a> ) or an archaeologist, protect in-situ.		
Visible landscape scarring	Ensure disturbance is kept to a minimum and does not exceed project requirements. Avoid construction on very steep slopes. Rehabilitate areas not needed during operation.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction Manager or Contractor</li> <li>ECO</li> <li>Environmental Manager</li> <li>Project Developer</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction</li> <li>Operational</li> <li>Decommissioning</li> </ul>
Intrusion into cultural landscape	Ensure that all maintenance vehicles and operational activities stay within designated areas.		
	Paint buildings in earthy colours to reduce contrast. Make use of motion detectors and downlighting to reduce night-time light pollution.		
	Ensure all areas are rehabilitated following specialist rehabilitation plan.		

**Table 6-16 – Palaeontology: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures**

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
<b>PALAEONTOLOGY</b>			
<b>Impact Management Outcome:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To ensure that palaeontological material is identified and protected.</li> </ul>			
<b>Indicator and Compliance Mechanism:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Health, safety, environmental and community incident and complaints management system register.</li> <li>■ Incident classification and reporting management procedure (to be developed).</li> <li>■ Monitoring and audit reports.</li> </ul>			
Impacts to Cultural landscape	The impact on the palaeontological heritage can be reduced greatly by a palaeontologist conducting a pre-construction site visit when the final layout is known to look for fossils and removing any scientifically important fossils with the relevant SAHRA permit.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site Manager</li> <li>■ Contractor</li> <li>■ ESCO / ECO</li> <li>■ EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Construction</li> </ul>



**Table 6-17 – Traffic: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures**

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
<b>TRAFFIC</b>			
<b>Impact Management Outcome:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To ensure that the traffic impacts of the project are mitigated and managed.</li> </ul>			
<b>Indicator and Compliance Mechanism:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Induction training and records.</li> <li>Health, safety, environmental and community incident and complaints management system register.</li> <li>Monitoring and audit reports.</li> <li>Incident classification and reporting management procedure (to be developed).</li> <li>PPE Register.</li> <li>Occupational health and safety plan (to be developed).</li> <li>Health and safety protocol (to be developed).</li> <li>Traffic and transportation management plan</li> </ul>			
Traffic Management	Reduce the construction period where possible.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site Manager</li> <li>Contractor</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction</li> </ul>
	Stagger components delivery to site.		
	Possibly provide two access points to the site to split construction vehicle trips and reduce the risk of congestion.		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction</li> </ul>
	Staff and general trips should occur outside of peak traffic periods as much as possible.		
Maintenance	Maintenance of haulage routes.		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction</li> </ul>

**Table 6-18 – Visual: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures**

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
<b>VISUAL</b>			
<b>Impact Management Outcome:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To ensure that the changes to the landscape character of the area are mitigated to minimise the negative impact.</li> </ul>			
<b>Indicator and Compliance Mechanism:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Health, safety, environmental and community incident and complaints management system register.</li> <li>Incident classification and reporting management procedure (to be developed).</li> <li>Monitoring and audit reports.</li> </ul>			
Direct Visual Impacts during construction	Carefully plan to minimise the construction period and avoid construction delays.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site Manager</li> <li>Contractor</li> <li>ESCO / ECO</li> <li>EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction</li> </ul>
	Inform receptors within 500m of the proposed powerline and / or switching station of the construction programme and schedules.		
	Maintain a neat construction site by removing rubble, litter and waste materials regularly.		
	Minimise vegetation clearing and rehabilitate cleared areas as soon as possible.		
	Position storage / stockpile areas in unobtrusive positions in the landscape, where possible.		
	Make use of existing gravel access roads where possible.		
	Limit the number of vehicles and trucks travelling to and from the construction site, where possible.		

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
	Ensure that dust suppression techniques are implemented: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>on all access roads;</li> <li>in all areas where vegetation clearing has taken place;</li> <li>on all soil stockpiles.</li> </ul>		
Direct Visual Impacts during Operation	Where possible, limit the number of maintenance vehicles using access roads.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site Manager</li> <li>Contractor</li> <li>ESCO / ECO</li> <li>EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Operational</li> </ul>
	Ensure that dust suppression techniques are implemented on all gravel access roads.		
	As far as possible, limit the amount of security and operational lighting present on the switching station site.		
	Where feasible, light fittings for security at night should reflect the light toward the ground to reduce light spill.		
	Lighting fixtures should make use of minimum lumen or wattage.		
	Mounting heights of lighting fixtures should be limited, or alternatively foot-light or bollard level lights should be used.		
	If possible, make use of motion detectors on security lighting.		
	The buildings on the substation site should not be illuminated at night and should be painted in natural tones that fit with the surrounding environment.		
	Non-reflective surfaces should be used where possible.		
Direct Visual Impacts during Decommissioning	All infrastructure that is not required for post-decommissioning use should be removed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site Manager</li> <li>Contractor</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Decommissioning</li> </ul>

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
	Carefully plan to minimize the decommissioning period and avoid delays.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ESCO / ECO</li> <li>EO</li> </ul>	
	Maintain a neat decommissioning site by removing rubble and waste materials regularly.		
	Position storage / stockpile areas in unobtrusive positions in the landscape, where possible.		
	Ensure that dust suppression procedures are maintained on all gravel access roads throughout the decommissioning phase.		
	Impose speed limits on gravel access roads to reduce dust emissions.		
	All cleared areas should be rehabilitated as soon as possible.		

**Table 6-19 – Socio-Economic: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures**

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
<b>SOCIO-ECONOMIC</b>			
<b>Impact Management Outcome:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To ensure that the negative socio-economic impacts are mitigated and managed.</li> <li>■ To ensure that the positive socio-economic impacts are enhanced.</li> </ul>			
<b>Indicator and Compliance Mechanism:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Induction training and records.</li> <li>■ Health, safety, environmental and community incident and complaints management system register.</li> <li>■ Monitoring and audit reports.</li> <li>■ Incident classification and reporting management procedure (to be developed).</li> <li>■ PPE Register.</li> <li>■ Occupational health and safety plan (to be developed).</li> <li>■ Health and safety protocol (to be developed).</li> <li>■ Employment records and community engagement local enterprise development records.</li> </ul>			
Creation of local employment, training, and business opportunities	Where reasonable and practical, the proponent should appoint local contractors and implement a 'locals first' policy, especially for semi and low-skilled job categories. However, due to the low skills levels in the area, the majority of skilled posts are likely to be filled by people from outside the area.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site Manager</li> <li>■ Contractor</li> <li>■ ESCO / ECO</li> <li>■ EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Construction</li> <li>■ Operational</li> </ul>
	Where feasible, efforts should be made to employ local contractors that are compliant with Broad Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) criteria.		
	Before the construction phase commences the proponent should meet with representatives from the LLM to establish the existence of a skills database for the area. If such as database exists, it should be made available to the contractors appointed for the construction phase.		

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
	The local authorities, community representatives, and organisations on the interested and affected party database should be informed of the final decision regarding the project and the potential job opportunities for locals and the employment procedures that the proponent intends following for the construction phase of the project.		
	Where feasible, training and skills development programmes for locals should be initiated prior to the initiation of the construction phase.		
	The recruitment selection process should seek to promote gender equality and the employment of qualified women wherever possible.		
	The proponent should liaise with the LM with regards the establishment of a database of local companies, specifically BBBEE companies, which qualify as potential service providers (e.g., construction companies, catering companies, waste collection companies, security companies etc.) prior to the commencement of the tender process for construction service providers. These companies should be notified of the tender process and invited to bid for project-related work.		
	Appoint a local service provider to undertake maintenance and repairs		
Presence of construction workers in the area on local communities	Where possible, the proponent should make it a requirement for contractors to implement a 'locals first' policy for construction jobs, specifically for semi and low-skilled job categories.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site Manager</li> <li>■ Contractor</li> <li>■ ESCO / ECO</li> <li>■ EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Construction</li> </ul>
	The proponent and the contractor(s) should develop a code of conduct for the construction phase. The code should identify which types of behaviour and activities are not acceptable. Construction workers in breach of the code should be subject to appropriate disciplinary action and/or dismissed. All dismissals must comply with the South African labour legislation.		

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
	The proponent and the contractor should implement an HIV/AIDS awareness programme for all construction workers at the outset of the construction phase.		
	The contractor should provide transport for workers to and from the site on a daily basis. This will enable the contractor to effectively manage and monitor the movement of construction workers to an extent on and off the site.		
	The contractor must ensure that all construction workers from outside the area are transported back to their place of residence within 2 days from their contract coming to an end.		
	No construction workers, with the exception of security personnel, should be permitted to stay over-night on the site.		
Risk to safety, livestock, and damage to farm infrastructure	The developer should compensate the directly affected landowners for impact during the construction phase.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site Manager</li> <li>■ Contractor</li> <li>■ ESCO / ECO</li> <li>■ EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Construction</li> </ul>
	The proponent should enter into an agreement with the directly affected farmers whereby damages to farm property etc. during the construction phase will be compensated for. The agreement should be signed before the construction phase commences.		
	All farm gates must be closed after passing through.		
	Contractors appointed by the proponent should provide daily transport for low and semi-skilled workers to and from the site.		
	The proponent should consider the option of establishing a (Monitoring Forum) MF (see above) that includes local farmers and develop a Code of Conduct for construction workers. This committee should be established prior to commencement of the construction phase. The Code of Conduct should be signed by the proponent and the contractors before the contractors move onto site.		



Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
	The proponent should hold contractors liable for compensating farmers and communities in full for any stock losses and/or damage to farm infrastructure that can be linked to construction workers. This should be contained in the Code of Conduct to be signed between the proponent, the contractors, and neighbouring landowners. The agreement should also cover losses and costs associated with fires caused by construction workers or construction related activities (see below).		
	The EMP must outline procedures for managing and storing waste on site, specifically plastic waste that poses a threat to livestock if ingested.		
	Contractors appointed by the proponent must ensure that all workers are informed at the outset of the construction phase of the conditions contained in the Code of Conduct, specifically consequences of stock theft and trespassing on adjacent farms.		
	Contractors appointed by the proponent must ensure that construction workers who are found guilty of stealing livestock and/or damaging farm infrastructure are dismissed and charged. This should be contained in the Code of Conduct. All dismissals must be in accordance with South African labour legislation.		
	It is recommended that no construction workers, with the exception of security personnel, should be permitted to stay over-night on the site		
Increased risk of grass fires	The proponent should enter into an agreement with the directly affected farmers whereby damages to farm property etc., during the construction phase will be compensated for. The agreement should be signed before the construction phase commences.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site Manager</li> <li>■ Contractor</li> <li>■ ESCO / ECO</li> <li>■ EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Construction</li> </ul>
	Contractor should ensure that open fires on the site for cooking or heating are not allowed except in designated areas.		
	Smoking on site should be confined to designated areas.		

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
	Contractor should ensure that construction related activities that pose a potential fire risk, such as welding, are properly managed and are confined to areas where the risk of fires has been reduced. Measures to reduce the risk of fires include avoiding working in high wind conditions when the risk of fires is greater. In this regard special care should be taken during the high risk dry, windy summer months.		
	Contractor should provide adequate fire-fighting equipment on-site, including a fire fighting vehicle.		
	Contractor should provide fire-fighting training to selected construction staff.		
	No construction staff, with the exception of security staff, to be accommodated on site overnight.		
	As per the conditions of the Code of Conduct, in the advent of a fire being caused by construction workers and or construction activities, the appointed contractors must compensate farmers for any damage caused to their farms. The contractor should also compensate the fire-fighting costs borne by farmers and local authorities		
Construction related activities	Timing of construction activities should be planned to avoid / minimise impact on key farming activities, including planting and harvesting operations.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site Manager</li> <li>■ Contractor</li> <li>■ ESCO / ECO</li> <li>■ EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Construction</li> </ul>
	Repair private roads at the end of construction period where required.		
	Dust suppression measures must be implemented on un-surfaced roads, such as wetting on a regular basis and ensuring that vehicles used to transport building materials are fitted with tarpaulins or covers.		
	All vehicles must be roadworthy, and drivers must be qualified and made aware of the potential road safety issues and need for strict speed limits		

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
Improving energy security and support renewable sector	Maximise the number of employment opportunities for local community members.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site Manager</li> <li>Contractor</li> <li>ESCO / ECO</li> <li>EO</li> </ul>	Operational
	Maximise opportunities for local content and procurement.		
Generate income for affected landowners	Implement agreements with affected landowners.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site Manager</li> <li>Contractor</li> <li>ESCO / ECO</li> <li>EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Operational</li> </ul>
	The loss of high-quality agricultural land should be avoided and or minimised. The recommendations of the agricultural / soil assessment should be implemented.		
Visual impact and impact on sense of place	The recommendations contained in the VIA should also be implemented.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site Manager</li> <li>Contractor</li> <li>ESCO / ECO</li> <li>EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Operational</li> </ul>
Risk to farming operations and damage to farm infrastructure	Affected property owners should be notified in advance of the timing and duration of maintenance activities.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site Manager</li> <li>Contractor</li> <li>ESCO / ECO</li> <li>EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Operational</li> </ul>
	Maintenance teams must ensure that all farm gates must be closed after passing through.		
	Property owners should be compensated for damage to farm property and or loss of livestock or game associated maintenance related activities.		
	Movement of traffic and maintenance related activities should be strictly contained within designated areas associated with transmission lines and substations.		
	Strict traffic speed limits must be enforced on the farm.		
	No maintenance workers should be allowed to stay over-night on the affected properties.		



Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
Impact on tourism	Potential impact on current rural sense of place and future tourism opportunities in the area.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Site Manager</li><li>Contractor</li><li>ESCO / ECO</li><li>EO</li></ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Operational</li></ul>

**Table 6-20 – Geotechnical: EMPr Mitigation and Management Measures**

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
<b>GEOTECHNICAL</b>			
<b>Impact Management Outcome:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To implement measures to minimise impacts on the environment from the initiation of construction activities through planning, careful site access route selection and implementation of mitigation measures.</li> </ul>			
<b>Indicator and Compliance Mechanism:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Induction training and records.</li> <li>Health, safety, environmental and community incident and complaints management system register.</li> <li>Monitoring and audit reports.</li> <li>Incident classification and reporting management procedure (to be developed).</li> <li>PPE Register.</li> <li>Occupational health and safety plan (to be developed).</li> <li>Health and safety protocol (to be developed).</li> <li>Employment records and community engagement local enterprise development records.</li> </ul>			
Soil Erosion	Rehabilitate affected areas (such as revegetation)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site Manager</li> <li>Contractor</li> <li>ESCO / ECO</li> <li>EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction</li> <li>Operational</li> <li>Decommissioning</li> </ul>
	Use temporary berms and drainage channels to divert surface water		
	Limit excavations to what is necessary		
	Where possible, use existing road network and access track		
	Ensure correct engineering design and construction of gravel roads and water crossings		

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
	Ensure adequate control of stormwater flow		
	Reinstate channelized drainage features		
	Strip, stockpile and re-spread topsoil		
Oil Spillages	Contamination of ground and surface water resources from heavy plant leading to quality deterioration of the water resources.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site Manager</li> <li>Contractor</li> <li>ESCO / ECO</li> <li>EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction</li> <li>Operational</li> <li>Decommissioning</li> </ul>
	Vehicle repairs to be undertaken in designated areas.		
Disturbance of fauna and flora	Limit excavations to what is necessary.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site Manager</li> <li>Contractor</li> <li>ESCO / ECO</li> <li>EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction</li> <li>Decommissioning</li> </ul>
Seismic activity	Design all infrastructure according to SANS 10160-4 to ensure the proposed development meets the minimum requirements for infrastructure in a seismic zone.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site Manager</li> <li>Contractor</li> <li>ESCO / ECO</li> <li>EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction</li> <li>Operational</li> </ul>
Slope stability	Avoid steep slopes areas.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site Manager</li> <li>Contractor</li> <li>ESCO / ECO</li> <li>EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Decommissioning</li> </ul>
	Design cut slopes according to detailed geotechnical analysis.		

**Table 6-21 – Terrestrial Biodiversity: EMP Mitigation and Management Measures**

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
<b>TERRESTRIAL BIODIVERSITY</b>			
<b>Impact Management Outcome:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ To minimise impact to the vegetation community</li> <li>■ To minimise impact to plant SCC</li> </ul>			
<b>Indicator and Compliance Mechanism:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Induction training and records.</li> <li>■ Environmental awareness programme/toolbox talks.</li> <li>■ Monitoring and audit reports.</li> </ul>			
Direct loss and disturbance of natural habitat  And  Habitat fragmentation impacting habitat connectivity and integrity	<b>Avoidance:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ As much of the proposed Project infrastructure as possible should be located in disturbed/modified habitat units, such as <i>Hyparrhenia hirta</i> – <i>Eragrostis chloromelas</i> Grassland, Alien Tree Plantations, and Transformed and Degraded Areas) and localised disturbed sites;</li> <li>■ As far as practical, access roads should be aligned with existing farm roads and access tracks, and if feasible, no permanent access roads should be constructed in Mixed Rocky Ridge Bushveld and <i>Lopholaena corifolia</i> Rocky Ridge/Outcrop Grassland;</li> <li>■ A pre-construction micro-siting walkdown of the approved development footprints should be conducted during the wet/growing season.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Site Manager</li> <li>■ Contractor</li> <li>■ ESCO/ ECO</li> <li>■ EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Construction</li> </ul>
	<b>Minimisation:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ All vegetation clearing for the Project should be restricted to the proposed Project footprints only, with no clearing permitted outside of these areas;</li> </ul>		



Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The footprints to be cleared of vegetation should be clearly demarcated prior to construction to prevent unnecessary clearing outside of these areas;</li> <li>No heavy vehicles should travel beyond the marked works zone;</li> <li>Temporary facilities associated with construction, such as portable toilets, storage and laydown areas, should be located on land that is modified.</li> </ul>		
	<p>Rehabilitation:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A rehabilitation/ landscaping protocol should be developed and implemented to stabilise and revegetate all non-operational sites that have been disturbed by construction. The protocol should include: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stockpiling of topsoil from development footprints during site preparation;</li> <li>Post-construction, the land form should be correctly contoured to limit potential erosion and compacted soils should be ripped and loosened to facilitate vegetation establishment;</li> <li>Topsoil removed during construction should be applied to all non-operational sites that were disturbed during construction and require revegetation; and</li> <li>Grass species used during rehabilitation should be indigenous and locally-occurring perennial species, and include a mixture of pioneer, sub-climax and climax species</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		
Establishment and spread of alien invasive species	<p>An AIS control and eradication plan must be developed for the Project that focuses on controlling and eradicating AIS in, and immediately adjacent to, the construction footprints. The plan must include:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Identification of AIS management units</li> <li>Prioritisation of sites and species requiring control;</li> <li>Targets and indicators of success;</li> <li>Scheduling of AIS control;</li> <li>Species-specific control methods, using a combined approach of both chemical and mechanical control methods; and</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site Manager</li> <li>Contractor</li> <li>ESCO/ ECO</li> <li>EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction</li> <li>Operational</li> <li>Decommissioning</li> </ul>

Activity/Aspect	Impact Management Actions/Measures	Responsible Person	Priority Timeframe
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Provision for follow-up treatments, as informed by regular AIS monitoring.</li> </ul>		
	Active alien invasive species control should continue throughout the operational phase, as per the approved AIS control and eradication programme.		
soil erosion and sedimentation	All sites disturbed by construction activities should be stabilised and actively revegetated, as per the rehabilitation/ landscaping protocol; and	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Site Manager</li> <li>Contractor</li> <li>ESCO/ ECO</li> <li>EO</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Construction</li> <li>Decommissioning</li> </ul>
	Erosion prevention and control measures (e.g., brush-packing, gabions, silt-traps) should be implemented at any sites of erosion.		

## 7 MANAGEMENT PLANS

---

As defined in the generic EMPr various method statements are to be compiled and implemented throughout the construction phase (refer to Part A: Section 4.5 of the generic EMPs attached as **Appendix D** and **Appendix E**).

This section provides an overview of various aspects / thematic areas and requirements whereby the Method Statements / management plans must be developed and followed throughout the proposed construction and operation of the Project. It must be noted that these method statement / management plans can be updated at any stage depending on any changes that may occur on the site.

A number of generic management plans have been included in the EMPr. The plans included below provide an indication of the requirements that must be followed on the proposed construction and operation of the Project. It must be noted that many of these plans can be updated at any stage depending on any changes that may occur on the site.

### 7.1 ALIEN INVASIVE MANAGEMENT PLAN

Invasive alien species pose the second largest threat to biodiversity after direct habitat destruction. The purpose of this Alien Plant Management Plan is to provide a framework for the management of alien and invasive plant species during the construction and operation of the facility. The broad objectives of the plan include the following:

- Ensure alien plants do not become dominant in parts affected by the development through the control and management of alien and invasive species presence, dispersal and encroachment.
- Managing and maintaining the ecosystem in a near-natural state and restoring and/or rehabilitating the ecosystems to such a state.
- Develop and implement a monitoring and eradication programme for alien and invasive species.
- Promote the natural re-establishment and planting of indigenous species in order to retard erosion and alien plant invasion.

#### 7.1.1 LEGISLATIVE

Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act (Act No. 43 of 1983)

In terms of the amendments to the regulations under the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act (Act No. 43 of 1983), all declared aliens must be effectively controlled. Landowners are legally responsible for the control of invasive alien plants on their properties. In terms of this Act, 198 alien species were listed as declared weeds and invaders and ascribed to one of the following categories:

- Category 1: Prohibited and must be controlled.
- Category 2 (commercially used plants): May be grown in demarcated areas provided that there is a permit and that steps are taken to prevent their spread.
- Category 3 (ornamentally used plants): May no longer be planted. Existing plants may be retained as long as all reasonable steps are taken to prevent the spreading thereof, except within the flood line of watercourses and wetlands.
- National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004 (Act No.10 of 2004)

The National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act (NEM:BA) regulates all invasive organisms in South Africa, including a wide range of fauna and flora. Regulations have been published in Government Notices R.506, R.507, R.508 and R.509 of 2013 under NEMBA. According to this Act and the regulations, any species designated under Section 70 cannot be propagated, grown, bought or sold without a permit. Below is an explanation of the three categories:

- Category 1a: Invasive species requiring compulsory control. Any specimens of Category 1a listed species need, by law, to be eradicated from the environment. No permits will be issued.
- Category 1b: Invasive species requiring compulsory control as part of an invasive species control programme. Remove and destroy. These plants are deemed to have such a high invasive potential that infestations can qualify to be placed under a government sponsored invasive species management programme. No permits will be issued.
- Category 2: Invasive species regulated by area. A demarcation permit is required to import, possess, grow, breed, move, sell, buy or accept as a gift any plants listed as Category 2 plants. No permits will be issued for Category 2 plants to exist in riparian zones.
- Category 3: Invasive species regulated by activity. An individual plant permit is required to undertake any of the following restricted activities (import, possess, grow, breed, move, sell, buy or accept as a gift) involving a Category 3 species. No permits will be issued for Category 3 plants to exist in riparian zones.

Plants listed under the categories above are detailed within Notice 1 of the Alien and Invasive Species published in GNR599 of 01 August 2014. The following guide is a useful starting point for the identification of alien species: Bromilow, C. 2010. Problem Plants and Alien Weeds of South Africa. Briza, Pretoria.

It is important to note that alien species that are regulated in terms of the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act (Act 43 of 1983) (CARA) as weeds and invader plants are exempted from NEM:BA. This implies that the provisions of the CARA in respect of listed weed and invader plants supersede those NEM:BA.

## **7.1.2 ALIEN PLANT MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES**

### **7.1.2.1 Prevention and early eradication**

A prevention strategy must be considered and established, including regular surveys and monitoring for invasive alien plants, effective rehabilitation of disturbed areas and prevention of unnecessary disturbance of natural areas.

Monitoring plans must be developed which are designed to identify Invasive Alien Plant Species shortly after they arrive in the project area. Keeping up to date on which weeds are an immediate threat to the site is important, but efforts should be planned to update this information on a regular basis. When new Invasive Alien Plant Species are recorded on site, an immediate response of locating the site for future monitoring and either hand-pulling the weeds or an application of a suitable herbicide should be planned. It is, however, better to monitor regularly and act swiftly than to allow invasive alien plants to become established on site.

### **7.1.2.2 Containment and Control**

If any alien invasive plants are found to become established on site, action plans for their control must be developed, depending on the size of the infestations, budgets, manpower considerations and time. Separate plans of control actions must be developed for each location and/or each

species. Appropriate registered chemicals and other possible control agents must be considered in the action plans for each site/species. The key is to ensure that no invasions get out of control. Effective containment and control will ensure that the least energy and resources are required to maintain this status over the long-term. This will also be an indicator that natural systems are impacted to the smallest degree possible.

### 7.1.2.3 General Clearing & Guiding Principles

Alien control programs are long-term management projects and must include a clearing plan which includes follow up actions for rehabilitation of the cleared area. The lighter infested areas must be cleared first to prevent the build-up of seed banks. Pre-existing dense mature stands ideally must be left for last, as they probably won't increase in density or pose a greater threat than they are currently. Collective management and planning with neighbours may be required in the case of large woody invaders as seeds of aliens are easily dispersed across boundaries by wind or water courses. All clearing actions must be monitored and documented to keep records of which areas are due for follow-up clearing.

#### Clearing Methods

Different species require different clearing methods such as manual, chemical or biological methods or a combination of both. Care should however be taken that the clearing methods used do not encourage further invasion. As such, regardless of the methods used, disturbance to the soil must be kept to a minimum.

Fire must not be used for alien control or vegetation management at the site. The best-practice clearing method for each species identified must be used. The preferred clearing methods for most alien species can be obtained from the DWAF Working for Water Website.

<http://www.dwaf.gov.za/wfw/Control>

#### Mechanical Control

This entails damaging or removing the plant by physical action. Different techniques could be used, e.g. uprooting, felling, slashing, mowing, ringbarking or bark stripping. This control option is only really feasible in sparse infestations or on small scale, and for controlling species that do not coppice after cutting. Species that tend to coppice, need to have the cut stumps or coppice growth treated with herbicides following the mechanical treatment. Mechanical control is labour intensive and therefore expensive and could cause severe soil disturbance and erosion.

#### Chemical Control

Although it is usually preferable to use manual clearing methods where possible, such methods may create additional disturbance which stimulates alien invasion and may also be ineffective for many woody species which resprout. Where herbicides are to be used, the impact of the operation on the natural environment must be minimised by observing the following:

- Area contamination must be minimised by careful, accurate application with a minimum amount of herbicide to achieve good control.
- All care must be taken to prevent contamination of any water bodies. This includes due care in storage, application, cleaning equipment and disposal of containers, product and spray mixtures.
- Equipment must be washed where there is no danger of contaminating water sources and washings carefully disposed of in a suitable site.

- To avoid damage to indigenous or other desirable vegetation, products must be selected that will have the least effect on non-target vegetation.
- Coarse droplet nozzles must be fitted to avoid drift onto non-target vegetation.
- The appropriate health and safety procedures must also be followed regarding the storage, handling and disposal of herbicides.

For all herbicide applications, the following Regulations and guidelines must be followed:

- Working for Water: Policy on the Use of Herbicides for the Control of Alien Vegetation.
- Pesticide Management Policy for South Africa published in terms of the Fertilizers, Farm Feeds, Agricultural Remedies and Stock Remedies Act, 1947 (Act No. 36 of 1947) – GNR 1120 of 2010.
- South African Bureau of Standards, Standard SANS 10206 (2010).

According to Government Notice No. 13424 dated 26 July 1992, it is an offence to “acquire, dispose, sell or use an agricultural or stock remedy for a purpose or in a manner other than that specified on the label on a container thereof or on such a container”.

Contractors using herbicides need to have a valid Pest Control Operators License (limited weeds controller) according to the Fertilizer, Farm Feeds, Agricultural Remedies and Stock Remedies Act (Act No. 36 of 1947). This is regulated by the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries.

### Biological Control

Biological weed control consists in the use of natural enemies to reduce the vigour or reproductive potential of an invasive alien plant. Biological control agents include insects, mites, and micro-organisms such as fungi or bacteria. They usually attack specific parts of the plant, either the reproductive organs directly (flower buds, flowers or fruit) or the seeds after they have dropped. The stress caused by the biological control agent may kill a plant outright or it might impact on the plants reproductive capacity. In certain instances, the reproductive capacity is reduced to zero and the population is effectively sterilised. All of these outcomes will help to reduce the spread of the species.

To obtain biocontrol agents, provincial representatives of the Working for Water Programme or the Directorate: Land Use and Soil Management (LUSM), Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries (DAFF) can be contacted.

#### 7.1.2.4 General Management Practices

The following general management practices must be encouraged or strived for:

- Establish an ongoing monitoring programme for construction phase to detect and quantify any alien species that may become established and identify the problem species.
- Alien vegetation regrowth on areas disturbed by construction must be immediately controlled once recorded throughout the entire site during construction and operation.
- Care must be taken to avoid the introduction of alien invasive plant species to the site. Particular attention must be paid to imported material such as building sand or dirty earth-moving equipment. Stockpiles must be checked regularly and any weeds emerging from material stockpiles must be removed.
- Cleared areas that have become invaded by alien species can be sprayed with appropriate herbicides provided that these are such that break down on contact with the soil. Residual herbicides must not be used.

- The effectiveness of vegetation control varies seasonally and this is also likely to impact alien species. Control early in the wet season will allow species to re-grow and follow-up control is likely to be required. It is tempting to leave control until late in the wet season to avoid follow-up control. However, this may allow alien species to set seed before control and hence will not contribute towards reducing alien species abundance. Therefore, vegetation control must be aimed at the middle of the wet season, with a follow-up event towards the end of the wet season. There are no exact dates that can be specified here as each season is unique and management must therefore respond according to the state and progression of the vegetation.
- Alien management is an iterative process and it may require repeated control efforts to significantly reduce the abundance of a species. This is often due to the presence of large and persistent seed banks. However, repeated control usually results in rapid decline once seed banks become depleted.
- Regular vegetation control to reduce plant biomass within the site must be conducted. This must be timed so as to coincide with the critical growth phases of the most important alien species on site. This will significantly reduce the cost of alien management as this must contribute towards the control of the dominant alien species and additional targeted control will be required only for a limited number of species.
- No alien species must be cultivated on-site. If vegetation is required for aesthetic purposes, then non-invasive, water-wise locally-occurring species must be used.
- During operation, surveys for alien species must be conducted regularly. It is recommended that this be undertaken every 6 months for the first two years after construction and annually thereafter. All aliens identified must be cleared using appropriate means.

#### 7.1.2.5 Terrestrial Biodiversity Monitoring

In order to monitor the impact of clearing activities, follow-ups and rehabilitation efforts, monitoring must be undertaken. This section provides a description of a possible monitoring programme that will provide an assessment of the magnitude of alien invasion on site as well as an assessment of the success of the management programme.

In general, the following principles apply for monitoring:

The following section presents the proposed measures for monitoring and reporting on the implementation of the impact mitigation actions presented in the preceding section.

The content of this section is largely based on the monitoring requirements outlined in Appendix 4 of the EIA Regulations, 2014.

For each monitoring action, the following information is provided:

- Category: The category within which the potential impact and/or risk occurs
- Potential impact/risk: Identified potential impact/risk resulting from the pre-construction, construction, operation, and decommissioning of the proposed Project
- Method for monitoring: The method for monitoring the implementation of the recommended mitigation measures
- Time period: The time period over which the monitoring actions must be implemented
- Frequency of monitoring: The frequency of monitoring the implementation of the recommended mitigation measures
- Mechanism for monitoring compliance: The mechanism for monitoring compliance with the impact management actions



- Responsible persons: The persons who will be responsible for the implementation of the monitoring actions

As with the impact management actions, the proposed monitoring actions have been arranged according to the following project phases:

- Construction;
- Operational; and
- Decommissioning.

**Table 7-1** presents a summary of the proposed monitoring actions during the construction, operational and decommissioning phases.

**Table 7-1 - Recommended monitoring measures**

Ref. No.	Category	Method for monitoring	Time period	Frequency of monitoring	Mechanism for monitoring compliance	Responsible person
1. Construction and Operational phase						
1.1	Alien invasive species	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Annual on-site alien invasive species monitoring should be conducted. Monitoring should focus on all sites disturbed during the construction phase; and</li> <li>Monitoring should assess species type and density, and these data should inform the scope of ongoing alien invasive species control.</li> </ul>	Wet/growing season	Annual	Annual Monitoring Report	Project Manager
2. Decommissioning phase						
2.1	Alien invasive species	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Alien invasive species monitoring should be conducted on an annual basis during decommissioning and annually for a five-year period following decommissioning. Monitoring should focus on all sites disturbed during decommissioning; and</li> <li>Monitoring should assess species type and density, and these data should inform the scope of ongoing alien invasive species control.</li> </ul>	Wet/growing season	Annually during decommissioning for a five-year period after decommissioning	Annual Monitoring Report	Facility Manager

## 7.2 PLANT RESCUE AND PROTECTION PLAN

The purpose of the plant rescue and protection plan is to implement avoidance and mitigation measures, in addition to the mitigation measures included in the EMP to reduce the impact of the development of the project on listed and protected plant species and their habitats, and to provide guidance on search and rescue of species of conservation concern.

This management plan must be updated prior to project implementation so as to include relevant site specific information.

Mitigation and management measures include, but are not limited to the following:

- Vegetation clearing must only commence after a walk down has been conducted by a suitably qualified ecologist / botanist and the necessary permits obtained.
- Vegetation clearing to be kept to a minimum. No unnecessary vegetation to be cleared.
- Vegetation removal must be limited to the construction site and must be removed only as it becomes necessary rather than removing all the vegetation throughout the site at once
- Materials must not be delivered to the site prematurely which could result in additional areas being cleared or affected.
- No vegetation to be used for firewood.
- Gathering of firewood, fruit, medicinal plants, or any other natural material onsite or in areas adjacent to the site is prohibited unless with prior approval of the ECO.
- Construction site office and laydown areas must be clearly demarcated and no encroachment must occur beyond demarcated areas.
- All natural areas impacted during construction must be rehabilitated with locally indigenous plant species.
- A buffer zone must be established in areas where construction will not take place to ensure that construction activities do not extend into these areas.
- Soil stockpiles must not become contaminated with oil, diesel, petrol, garbage or any other material, which may inhibit the later growth of vegetation in the soil. Spillage can result in a loss of soil functionality thus limiting the re-establishment of flora.

### 7.2.1 PRINCIPLES FOR SEARCH AND RESCUE

Successful plant rescue can only be achieved if:

- Species can be removed from their original habitat with minimal damage to the plant, especially the roots.
- All plants removed are safely stored and treated according to their specific requirements prior to being transplanted again.
- They are relocated into a suitable habitat and protected from further damage and all disturbances to aid their re-establishment.
- Timing of planting activities is planned with the onset of the growing season as far as possible.
- Steps are taken where necessary to aid the initial establishment of vegetation, including occasional watering.
- The following principles apply in terms of plant rescue and protection:
- A permit is required to translocate or destroy any listed and protected species even if they do not leave the property. This permit must be obtained prior to any search and rescue operations being undertaken.

- Where suitable species are identified, a search and rescue operation of these species must be undertaken within the development footprint prior to the commencement of construction.
- As far as possible, timing of search and rescue activities must be planned with the onset of the growing season.
- Affected individuals must be translocated to a similar habitat outside of the development footprint and marked for monitoring purposes. For each individual plant that is rescued, the plant must be photographed before removal, tagged with a unique number or code and a latitude longitude position recorded using a hand-held GPS device.
- The rescued plants must be planted into a container to be housed within a temporary nursery on site or immediately planted into the target habitat.
- Rescued plants, if re-planted back in the wild, must be placed as close as possible to where they were originally removed. Re-planting into the wild must cause as little disturbance as possible to existing natural ecosystems. The position of the rescued individual/s must be recorded to aid in future monitoring of that plant.
- During construction, the EO must monitor vegetation clearing at the site. Any deviations from the plans that may be required must first be checked for listed species by the Environmental Officer and any listed species present which are able to survive translocation must be translocated to a safe site.
- Any listed species suitable for translocation observed within the development footprint that were not previously observed be translocated to a safe site.
- The collecting of plants or their parts must be strictly forbidden. Staff must be informed of the legal and conservation aspects of harvesting plants from the wild as part of the environmental induction training.
- Sensitive habitats and area outside project development must be clearly demarcated as no go areas during the construction and operational phase to avoid accidental impacts.

#### 7.2.1.1 Terrestrial Plant Species Monitoring

In order to monitor the impact of clearing activities, follow-ups and rehabilitation efforts, monitoring must be undertaken. This section provides a description of a possible monitoring programme that will provide and assessment of the magnitude of alien invasion on site as well as an assessment of the success of the management programme.

In general, the following principles apply for monitoring:

The following section presents the proposed measures for monitoring and reporting on the implementation of the impact mitigation actions presented in the preceding section.

The content of this section is largely based on the monitoring requirements outlined in Appendix 4 of the EIA Regulations, 2014.

For each monitoring action, the following information is provided:

- Category: The category within which the potential impact and/or risk occurs
- Potential impact/risk: Identified potential impact/risk resulting from the pre-construction, construction, operation, and decommissioning of the proposed Project
- Method for monitoring: The method for monitoring the implementation of the recommended mitigation measures
- Time period: The time period over which the monitoring actions must be implemented

- Frequency of monitoring: The frequency of monitoring the implementation of the recommended mitigation measures
- Mechanism for monitoring compliance: The mechanism for monitoring compliance with the impact management actions
- Responsible persons: The persons who will be responsible for the implementation of the monitoring actions

As with the impact management actions, the proposed monitoring actions have been arranged according to the following project phases:

- Construction;
- Operational; and
- Decommissioning.

**Table 7-2** presents a summary of the proposed monitoring actions during the construction, operational and decommissioning phases.

**Table 7-2 - Recommended monitoring measures**

Ref. No.	Category	Method for monitoring	Time period	Frequency of monitoring	Mechanism for monitoring compliance	Responsible person
1. Construction and Operational phase						
1.1	Alien invasive species	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Annual on-site alien invasive species monitoring should be conducted. Monitoring should focus on all sites disturbed during the construction phase; and</li> <li>Monitoring should assess species type and density, and these data should inform the scope of ongoing alien invasive species control.</li> </ul>	Wet/growing season	Annual	Annual Monitoring Report	Project Manager
2.2	Flora SCC	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Monitoring of the <i>Adromischus umbraticola</i> subsp. <i>umbraticola</i> plants should be conducted during the September – January flowering period.</li> <li>As required, the findings of monitoring should inform additional conservation actions to protect these plants.</li> </ul>	September - January	Annually during construction, and for a three period after construction.	Annual Monitoring Report	Project Manager
2. Decommissioning phase						
2.1	Alien invasive species	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Alien invasive species monitoring should be conducted on an annual basis during decommissioning and annually for a five-year period following decommissioning. Monitoring should focus on all sites disturbed during decommissioning; and</li> <li>Monitoring should assess species type and density, and these data should inform the scope of ongoing alien invasive species control.</li> </ul>	Wet/growing season	Annually during decommissioning for a five-year period after decommissioning	Annual Monitoring Report	Facility Manager

### 7.3 RE-VEGETATION AND HABITAT REHABILITATION PLAN

The purpose of the rehabilitation plan is to ensure that areas cleared or impacted during construction activities are rehabilitated with a plant cover that reduces the risk of erosion from these areas as well as restores some ecosystem function. The purpose of the rehabilitation plan for the site can be summarised as follows:

- Achieve long-term stabilisation of all disturbed areas to minimise erosion potential.
- Re-vegetate all disturbed areas with suitable local plant species.
- Minimise visual impact of disturbed areas.
- Ensure that disturbed areas are safe for future uses

The rehabilitation plan must be closely aligned with other site-specific plans for the project, including the erosion management plan, soil management plan, alien plant management plan, and plant rescue and protection plan. Prior to commencement of construction, a detailed rehabilitation plan and Method Statement for the site must be compiled by the EPC Contractor.

### 7.4 OPEN SPACE MANAGEMENT PLAN

Open space management measures include, but are not limited to the following:

- A buffer zone must be established in areas where construction will not take place to ensure that construction activities do not extend into these areas.
- Vehicle movement must be restricted to authorised access roads.
- Before construction begins, all areas to be developed must be clearly demarcated.
- All construction camps are to be fenced off in such a manner that unlawful entry is prevented, and access is controlled.
- Signage shall be erected at all access points in compliance with all applicable occupational health and safety requirements. All access points to the construction camp must be controlled by a guard or otherwise monitored, to prevent unlawful access.
- The contractor and ECO must ensure compliance with conditions described in the EA.
- Records of compliance/ non-compliance with the conditions of the authorisation must be kept and be available on request.
- Records of all environmental incidents must be maintained, and a copy of these records be made available to provincial department on request throughout the project execution.
- All construction equipment must be stored within the construction camp.
- An area for the storage of hazardous materials must be established that conforms to the relevant safety requirements and that provides for spillage prevention and containment
- The Contractor must provide sufficient ablution facilities, in the form of portable / VIP toilets, at the construction camps, and shall conform to all relevant health and safety standards and codes. A sufficient number of toilets shall be provided to accommodate the number of personnel working in the area.
- No fires will be allowed on site.
- The Contractor shall take specific measures to prevent the spread of veld fires, caused by activities at the campsites. These measures may include appropriate instruction of employees about fire risks and the construction of firebreaks around the site perimeter.
- Environmental awareness training for construction staff, concerning the prevention of accidental spillage of hazardous chemicals and oil; pollution of water resources (both surface and groundwater), air pollution and litter control and identification of archaeological artefacts.



- Staff must be educated as to the need to refrain from indiscriminate waste disposal and/or pollution of local soil and water resources and receive the necessary safety training.

## 7.5 STORM WATER MANAGEMENT AND SURFACE WATER PROTECTION PLAN

The main principles in stormwater management include:

- Confine or divert any unpolluted water to a 'clean' water system, and polluted water to a 'dirty' water system;
- 'Clean' and 'dirty' water systems must be designed and constructed to prevent cross-contamination between the 'clean' and 'dirty' water systems; and
- Appropriate maintenance and management of storm water related infrastructure.
- The proposed water systems or infrastructure are to be designed to prevent any potential contamination of natural water resources in the area.

## 7.6 FIRE MANAGEMENT PLAN

The purpose of this plan is to address firefighting requirements throughout the construction of the project and to preserve and protect human life as well as tangible goods and equipment in the event of a fire.

Mitigation and management measures include, but are not limited to the following:

- All construction camps shall be provided with portable fire extinguishing equipment, in accordance with all relevant legislation and must be readily accessible.
- The Contractor shall take specific measures to prevent the spread of veld fires, caused by activities at the campsites. These measures may include appropriate instruction of employees about fire risks and the construction of firebreaks around the site perimeter.
- Fire prevention facilities must be present at all storage facilities.
- No open fires shall be allowed on site under any circumstance. All cooking shall be done in demarcated areas that are safe and cannot cause runaway fires.
- The Contractor shall have operational fire-fighting equipment available on site at all times. The level of firefighting equipment must be assessed and evaluated through a typical risk assessment process.
- Emergency numbers for local police and fire department etc. must be placed in a prominent area.
- Firefighting equipment must be placed in prominent positions across the site where it is easily accessible. This includes fire extinguishers, a fire blanket as well as a water tank.
- All construction staff must be trained in fire hazard control and firefighting techniques. Translators are to be used where necessary.
- All flammable substances must be stored in dry areas which do not pose an ignition risk to the said substances.
- Smoking may only be conducted in demarcated areas.
- Firefighting equipment must be regularly maintained by an appropriate company.

## 7.7 EMERGENCY RESPONSE PLAN

The Project Company will provide appropriate resources to respond to process upset, accidental, and emergency situations for operations and activities during construction, operation and decommissioning phases. The procedures will include plans for addressing training, resources,

responsibilities, communication and all other aspects required to effectively respond to emergencies associated with their respective hazards.

The purpose of emergency preparedness and response plan (EPRP) / method statement is to ensure that the relevant parties are adequately prepared and able to respond effectively to potential emergency situations that may arise during project activities. These potential emergency situations include medical emergencies and fires

All operations/ activities associated with the project will require site-specific emergency response plans to mitigate impacts, which meet or exceed all applicable regulations.

The objectives of this plan are as follows:

- Protect the communities and the environment through the development of emergency response strategies and capabilities;
- Set out the framework for hazard identification in order to define procedures for response to the situations including the development of contingency measures;
- Structure a process for rapid and efficient response to and manage emergency situations during the construction, operational and decommissioning phases of the project; and
- Assign responsibilities for responding to emergency situations.
- The Emergency Response Plan must take the incident procedures referred to in Section 30 of the NEMA into account.

### 7.7.1 ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES

Roles, responsibility, and authority shall be defined, documented and communicated in order to facilitate effective emergency response through implementation of the EPRP. The table below outlines roles and responsibilities related to each position.

Emergency Response representative(s)
<p>Actively participate in the facilities planning, implementation and reviewing of the sites EPRP.</p> <p>Ensure all staff members are aware of the procedures outlined in the EPRP.</p> <p>Setting up regular practical training schedules (drills) to ensure that all staff are prepared in case of an emergency.</p> <p>Report any incidents that occur to senior management staff and/or the relevant authorities.</p> <p>Appoint an Emergency Response (ER) team which includes an appropriate first aid representative and a fire warden.</p> <p>Ensure that the appointed ER team undergo the correct training.</p> <p>Appoint an appropriate Emergency Coordinator.</p>
First Aid representative(s)
<p>Ensuring the first aid box is properly stocked to meet all foreseeable incidents which may occur.</p> <p>Ensure that the boxes are properly safeguarded, and that First Aiders name appears on the box.</p> <p>Should any activity involve hazardous chemical substances, or any other specific first aid emergencies, this must be brought to the attention of the emergency coordinator.</p> <p>Ensure the first aid certificate is current.</p> <p>Ensure that there is always a first aider available at each shift.</p>

#### Fire warden(s)

Ensure that the firefighting equipment is regularly serviced.  
Attend the relevant firefighting training.  
Report any unserviceable or damaged fire-fighting equipment to the ER.  
Ensure the firefighting certificate is current.  
Ensure that there is always a firefighter available at each shift.

#### Emergency Co-ordinator

Ensure that an update of the EPRP is kept on file and is easily accessible in case of an emergency.  
Ensure that all staff have been issued with the correct Personal Protective Equipment (PPE).  
Ensure that a list of emergency telephone numbers, including those of the Emergency Response team, are visible to all staff at a number of locations around the facility.  
In the case of an emergency, the emergency coordinator is responsible for undertaking roll call at the designated Assembly points.

### 7.7.2 EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS AND COORDINATION PLAN

In an emergency situation where there is an immediate threat to communities, personnel or the environment, the Project Manager will be notified immediately. The Project Manager will dispatch the Emergency Response Coordinator who will determine the appropriate plan of action depending on the severity of the emergency, the people affected, and the need to evacuate.

If there is a developing emergency or unusual situation, where an emergency is not imminent, but could occur if no action is taken, the Project Manager (or if the Project Manager is absent the EO / Environmental Manager) is to be informed immediately. Once the emergency or unusual situation has been managed, the correct incident/near miss must be reported to the General Manager.

If an emergency situation poses a direct threat to communities in the area, the Environmental Officer and/or Social Officer will advise persons in the vicinity of the emergency to evacuate due to the potential risk. The appropriate government authorities will immediately be notified of such an emergency evacuation. The Emergency Response Coordinator will be tasked with responding to the potential risk. Should the emergency situation be such that it can be managed by the Project Company, equipment and personnel will be deployed to the maximum extent necessary, so as to prevent/minimise potential risks.

### 7.7.3 RESPONSE TO INCIDENTS

An incident is any occurrence that has caused, or has the potential to cause, a negative impact on people, the environment or property (or a combination thereof). It also includes any significant departure from standard operating procedures. The reporting and investigation of all potential and actual incidents that could have a detrimental impact on human health, the natural environment or property is required so that remedial and preventive steps can be taken to reduce the potential or actual impacts because of all such incidents.

Any incident must immediately be reported to the relevant authorities and all the necessary documentation must be completed and submitted to the relevant authorities within the prescribed timeframes.

The actions resulting from any formal or informal investigations will be used to update the EMPr.

#### **7.7.4 VERIFICATION**

An HSE emergency response system will be developed for the execution of emergency drills that will include the following, inter alia:

- Fire Drills;
- Emergency Evacuation Drills; and
- Medical and Environmental Drills.

Reporting and monitoring requirements for the plan will include:

- Monthly inspections and audits;
- Quarterly reporting of accidents/ incidents;
- Reporting at the time of the incident and monthly spill reporting developed by the Environmental and Quality, Health and Safety departments;
- Six-monthly emergency response drills; and
- Annual reporting on training.

Emergency response drills and reporting will be maintained by the Project Manager and will provide information regarding required revisions to training or the emergency response actions. Each incident reported will be reviewed and investigated upon occurring. Actions will be identified where possible to improve the site's overall response to emergencies. Updates/revisions that are necessary to protect worker or community health and safety will be implemented immediately after approval by the General Manager. On a bi-annual basis, Key Performance Indicators (KPIs) will be compared against past-performance and analysed for trends to determine if there are areas for improvement. Changes because of the trend analysis and identified areas for improvement will be implemented following the project's change management system as required.

This plan will be amended periodically in light of operational changes, learning experienced during its implementation and other activities that can affect the risk profiles.

### **7.8 COVID-19**

This Plan serves to outline generic measures to adopt and implement to reduce the risk of Covid-19 transmission and will be reviewed and updated as necessary based on changes in terms of applicable legislation and regulations

#### **7.8.1 PREVENTION AND RESPONSE**

A dedicated team with responsibilities to identify and implement actions to mitigate the effects of COVID-19 on the company and community should be assigned.

#### **7.8.2 INFORMATION**

Information dissemination and training are an effective way to reduce the risk for both the company and the general public.

COVID-19 symptoms include: fever, tiredness, difficulty breathing, dry cough, chills, repeated shaking with chills, muscle pain, headache, sore throat, and new loss of taste or smell. Some patients may have nasal congestion, runny nose, or diarrhoea. Symptoms may appear two to 14 days after exposure to the virus.

### 7.8.3 EMPLOYEE QUESTIONNAIRE

To prevent potentially infected staff from entering the workplace and infecting co-workers, a short questionnaire could be used. Workers should only report to work if they answer “no” to all the questions.

The following is an example:

- Have you, in the last two weeks, been in close contact with a person who has COVID-19?
- Have you, in the last two weeks, been in a country/region with a high number of cases of COVID-19?
- Do you have a fever?
- Have you used medications such as paracetamol or aspirin to suppress fever in the last 24 hours?
- Are you coughing (even mildly)?
- Do you currently experience shortness of breath?

### 7.8.4 PREVENTION METHODS

#### 7.8.4.1 SICK PERSONS TO STAY HOME

Workers requested to stay away from work in cases where they exhibit any COVID-19 symptoms or have been in close contact with a confirmed COVID-19 patient during the previous 14 days.

Workers who do not feel well should seek immediate medical advice. An employee who works while evidencing mild COVID-19 symptoms can risk spreading this infectious disease to others.

#### 7.8.4.2 COUGH HYGIENE

To reduce the risk of infected persons spreading the virus by coughing and sneezing, workers are to be instructed to follow the cough etiquette outlined below:

- Cover the mouth and nose with a tissue when coughing or sneezing and dispose of the used tissue in a wastebasket.
- When no tissue is available, cough or sneeze into the upper sleeve or elbow, not into the hands.
- Clean hands after coughing or sneezing, preferably by thorough water-soap handwashing, following the recommendations of health organizations. If soap and water are not available, use a hand sanitizing gel.

#### 7.8.4.3 SOCIAL DISTANCING

To prevent person-to-person infection, it is important to minimize direct contact as much as possible. The contractor is to inform workers about the hazards of close contacts, including with direct co-workers, and promote alternative behaviours, such as maintaining safe distances and using alternatives for handshakes.

#### 7.8.4.4 HAND SANITATION

Promote frequent and thorough water-soap hand washing and provide enough places for workers to wash their hands. If soap and running water are not immediately available, provide alcohol-based hand rubs containing at least 60% alcohol. Ensure that these facilities are sufficient in number and are available close to the work area.

#### 7.8.4.5 CLEANING AND DISINFECTING

Frequently – and at least daily - clean touched surfaces, such as tables, light switches, appliances, countertops, handles, desks, phones, keyboards, toilets, taps, sinks, and so forth. Use the cleaning agents that are routinely used in these areas and follow the directions on the labels. For multiuse equipment, clean after every use.

Workers are to be instructed to clean their work areas and equipment at the end of each shift. Equipment and instructions on how to do this are to be provided.

### 7.9 EROSION MANAGEMENT

Exposed and unprotected soils are the main cause of erosion in most situations. Therefore, this erosion management plan and the revegetation and rehabilitation plan are closely linked to one another and must not operate independently but should rather be seen as complementary activities within the broader environmental management of the site and must therefore be managed together. This Erosion Management Plan addresses the management and mitigation of potential impacts relating to soil erosion.

The objective of the plan is to provide:

- Introduce measures to reduce the erosion potential;
- Reduce the susceptibility of the area;
- Develop and implement monitoring and rehabilitation measures;
- Manage runoff and reduce the impact on sensitive areas;
- Achieve long-term stabilisation of all disturbed areas and
- Promote the natural re-establishment and planting of indigenous species to reduce erosion.

#### 7.9.1 EROSION CONTROL PRINCIPLES

In the design phase, various stormwater management principles should be considered, including:

- Protect the land surface from erosion.
- Minimise the area of exposure of bare soils to minimise the erosive forces of wind, water and all forms of traffic.
- Contain soil erosion, whether induced by wind or water forces, by constructing protective works to trap sediment at appropriate locations. This applies particularly during construction.
- Avoid situations where slopes may become saturated and unstable (during and after construction process).
- All roads and other hardened surfaces should have runoff control features which redirect water flow and dissipate any energy in the water which may pose an erosion risk.
- Regular monitoring for erosion after construction to ensure that no erosion problems have developed as result of the disturbance.
- All erosion problems observed should be rectified as soon as possible, using the appropriate erosion control structures and re-vegetation techniques.
- A cover of indigenous species should be established in disturbed areas to bind the soil and prevent erosion.
- Construction activities must be restricted and carefully monitored to keep disturbance to a minimum and disturbed areas must be appropriately rehabilitated and managed.
- Planting of vegetation should commence as soon as possible after construction is completed to minimise the potential for erosion.



- Progressive rehabilitation is an important element of the rehabilitation strategy and should be implemented where feasible. Re-vegetation of disturbed surfaces must occur immediately after construction activities are completed
- Once revegetated, areas should be protected to prevent trampling and erosion.
- No construction equipment, vehicles or unauthorised personnel should be allowed onto areas that have been vegetated

Regular audits and maintenance programmes to ensure that plants are growing and serving the purpose for which they were planted. This erosion control can be achieved by:

- Integrating project design with site constraints.
- Planning and integrating erosion and sediment control with construction activities.
- Minimising the extent and duration of disturbance.
- Using erosion controls to prevent on-site damage.
- These goals can be achieved by applying the management practices outlined in the following sections.

## 7.9.2 ONSITE EROSION MANAGEMENT

General factors to consider regarding erosion risk at the site includes the following:

- Any eroded areas observed should be rehabilitated as soon as possible.
- Reinstate as much of the eroded area to its pre-disturbed geometry.
- Install protective works (gabions, reno-mattresses or similar) to stabilise and protect unstable banks.
- Earthen berms or plugs, rock packs or gabions can be used for the plugging of erosion gullies.
- The area should then be allowed to re-vegetate itself.
- Any activities within these areas should be avoided as far as possible.
- Soil loss will be greater on steeper slopes. Ensure that steep slopes are not de-vegetated unnecessarily and subsequently becomes hydrophobic, which will increase erosion potential.
- All bare areas should be revegetated with appropriate locally occurring species, to bind the soil and limit the erosion potential.
- Gabions and other stabilisation features should be used on steep slopes and other areas vulnerable to erosion minimise the erosion risk as far as possible.

### EROSION CONTROL MECHANISM

The contractor may use the following mechanisms to combat erosion when necessary:

- Reno mattresses
- Slope attenuation
- Hessian material
- Shade catch nets
- Gabion baskets
- Silt fences
- Storm water channels and catch pits
- Soil bindings
- Geofabrics
- Hydro-seeding and/or re-vegetating
- Mulching over cleared areas



- Boulders and size varied rocks
- Tilling

### 7.9.3 MICRO-SITING

The agricultural protocol requires confirmation that all reasonable measures have been taken through micro-siting to minimize fragmentation and disturbance of agricultural activities. The micro-siting of the power line within the corridor will make no material difference to agricultural impacts and disturbance. The choice of the switching station has already avoided viable cropland. Further micro-siting will make no material difference to agricultural impacts and disturbance.

### 7.9.4 MONITORING

To monitor the impact of construction activities, follow-ups and rehabilitation efforts, monitoring must be undertaken. This section provides a description of a possible monitoring programme that will provide assessment of the erosion on site as well as an assessment of the success of the management programme.

In general, the following principles apply for monitoring:

- Photographic records must be kept of areas to be cleared prior to work starting and at regular intervals during initial clearing activities. Similarly, photographic records should be kept of the area from immediately before and after follow-up clearing activities. Rehabilitation processes must also be recorded.
- The cause of soil erosion must be determined.
- Simple records must be kept of daily operations (location cleared and labour units).
- It is important that, if monitoring results in detection of invasive alien plants, that this leads to immediate action.

## 7.10 HAZARDOUS SUBSTANCES MANAGEMENT PLAN

Hazardous substances are chemicals or materials that can cause acute or chronic harm to health, be it humans or the environment. The key potential sources of impact related to the management of hazardous chemical substances (HCS) and fuel during construction relate to the risk of accidental release of hydrocarbons to the environment, accidental exposure to workers, and fire and explosion risks.

Potential impacts associated with these risks, if poorly managed, include:

- Impact to soil and/or groundwater, which may result in degradation of the resource and requirement for remedial action;
- Impacts on pastoralist livelihoods due to contamination of pasture or water resources and consequent impacts to their, health, livelihood and animals;
- Impacts on human health & safety due to either direct exposure or through fire/explosion;
- Gas emissions associated with the combustion of fuel, are mainly compounds of nitrogen, carbon including very small traces of sulphur and particulate matter; and
- Fugitive emissions from HCS & fuel storage.

The purpose of this Hazardous Substances Management Plan (HSMP) is to provide a framework for the management of hazardous substances onsite during the construction and operation of the project:

- Ensure the handling and storage of hazardous substances are in accordance with relevant standards;
- To ensure that the storage and handling of chemicals and hydrocarbons on-site does not cause pollution to the environment or harm to persons;
- To ensure that the storage and maintenance of machinery onsite does not cause pollution of the environment or harm to persons.

### **7.10.1 HAZARDOUS SUBSTANCES MANAGEMENT PROCEDURE**

A plan for managing the transportation, delivery, storage and handling of hazardous substances onsite is detailed below. A method statement detailing the specific storage and handling practices during construction must be prepared by the Contractor prior to the commencement of construction.

#### **7.10.1.1 REGISTER OF HAZARDOUS SUBSTANCES**

Contractors shall establish inventories or registers of hazardous substances on site. The inventory is to be updated when new hazardous substances are introduced to the workplace or the use of existing hazardous substances is discontinued. Both the chemicals' register and the Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDSs) must be readily available at a central location or near where the chemicals are being stored or used.

#### **7.10.1.2 MSDS**

It is standard practice that an MSDS is provided by the manufacturer or supplier of all hazardous substances. An MSDS is required for all chemicals and substances on site. These MSDSs are to be made available to all parties affected by the use or storage of the chemical. MSDSs are the key to communicating hazards and safe handling practices for chemicals. In addition, MSDS information is to be made available to all employees.

#### **7.10.1.3 DELIVERIES**

Transport of all hazardous substances must be in accordance with the relevant legislation and regulations. Contractors are responsible for identifying and securing any necessary permits for any proposed bulk fuel storage arrangements. The supplier will fill contractors fuel tanks; fuelling is the responsibility of the licensed contractor who will be supervised by the storage/work area supervisor. No 'black-market' or 'grey-import' fuels shall be used. All fuels purchased must be legitimate and subject to required duties and taxes.

Prior to fuel transfer the operator will verify that: all fuel transfer hoses have been connected properly and couplings are tight; transfer hoses are not obviously damaged; fuel transfer personnel are familiar with procedures; for fuelling stations, personnel are located at both the fuel truck and fuel transfer tank(s) and have the ability to shut off fuel flow manually; a means of communication has been established between the two people transferring fuel; and a high liquid level shutoff device can be substituted for the person at the delivery tank, in which case operation of the shutoff will be verified each time it is used;

The fuel contractor will clean up and report any accidents or spills immediately to the project ESHS team.

#### **7.10.1.4 ENVIRONMENT AND OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY**

The following requirements are additional to any applicable requirements established in other LTWP management plans such as the Occupational Health & Safety Management Plan:

- Storage facilities will have the applicable Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) available;
- Smoking will be strictly prohibited from any areas where fuel loading operations take place;
- Appropriate signage will be used to identify potential spill risks;
- Any accidental damage to containment structures will be inspected immediately and appropriate repairs undertaken. The extent of damage will be reported in writing to WP as well as remedial repairs effected together with the date of repairs and any follow up inspection. Any release of fuels or other substance will be cleaned up;
- All used fuel / oil products will be collected in tanks marked "Waste Oil"; and
- All hydrocarbon associated wastes will be managed in line with the Waste Management Plan.

#### **7.10.1.5 MATERIALS STORAGE**

- All temporary hydrocarbon storage will be situated above ground. There will be no buried storage tanks permitted.
- All chemicals, fuels and other hazardous materials are to be stored in designated and bunded areas, where the bunded area is impermeable and is impervious to the stored substance as per the requirements of SABS 089:1999 Part 1. The bunded area will contain 110% volume of the largest container stored.
- Bunds and service area platforms to be cleaned and maintained regularly.
- SABS approved Spill kits must be made available on-site for the clean-up of spills and leaks of contaminants. The relevant construction crew members must be trained in their use.
- Keep a record of all hazardous substances stored on site. Clearly label all the containers storing hazardous waste.
- The storage of flammable and combustible liquids such as oils will be in designated areas which are appropriately bunded and stored in compliance with Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) files and applicable regulations and safety instructions.
- Chemical and hydrocarbon storage facilities shall be covered to prevent rainfall ingress into secondary containment units and well-ventilated
- Any storage and disposal permits/approvals which may be required must be obtained, and the conditions attached to such permits and approvals will be complied with.
- An effective monitoring system must be put in place to detect any leakage or spillage of all hazardous substances during their transportation, handling, installation and storage.

#### **7.10.1.6 SPILL AND LEAK MANAGEMENT AND PREVENTION**

- In the event of a major spill or leak of contaminants, the relevant authorities of contaminants. (Please list with contact details) The relevant construction crew members must be trained in their use.
- Spilled cement must be cleaned up immediately and, stored as hazardous waste and disposed of at a suitably licensed hazardous waste disposal facility.
- Routine servicing and maintenance of vehicles must not be undertaken onsite (except for emergencies). If repairs of vehicles must take place, an appropriate drip tray must be used to contain any fuel or oils.
- Any water that collects in bunds must not be allowed to stand. Should the water be contaminated, it is to be removed and treated prior to discharge, or disposed of as hazardous waste. Clean stormwater contained within the bunds may be reused.
- No chemicals must be stored or vehicle maintenance undertaken within 100m of wetlands or drainage lines.

- Construction machinery must be stored in an appropriately sealed area. If machinery cannot be stored in a sealed area then a drip tray must be used to prevent spillage from any leaks.
- As far as practicable, all equipment servicing / maintenance shall be undertaken within designated workshop areas.
- All generators on site, including generators that are not in use must be located in a bunded area or on a drip tray.
- Bunded areas and drip trays must be maintained on a regular basis.
- Diesel generators and water pumps shall be located in secondary containment areas or shall be self-contained to prevent loss of fuels and oils;
- Precautions must be in place to limit the possibility of oil and other toxic liquids from entering the soil or clean stormwater system.
- Upon completion of construction, the area must be cleared of potentially polluting materials.
- Emergency response planning will be managed via the Emergency Preparedness and Response Plan.

### 7.10.2 OPERATIONAL PHASE

During the operational phase of the project limited hazardous substances and chemicals will be stored onsite. During maintenance activities, contractors will need to produce a method statement detailing the specific storage and handling practices. The following measures need to be implemented onsite during the operational phase of the project.

- Hazardous substances must be stored in sealed containers within a clearly demarcated designated area.
- Care must be taken to ensure that spillage of oils and other hazardous substances are limited during maintenance. Handling of these materials must take place within an appropriately sealed and bunded area. Should any accidental spillage take place, it must be cleaned up according to specified standards regarding bioremediation.
- The storage of flammable and combustible liquids such as oils will be in designated areas which are appropriately bunded and stored in compliance with Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) files and applicable regulations and safety instructions.
- Used oils and chemicals:
- Appropriate disposal must be arranged with a licensed facility in consultation with the administering authority;
- Waste must be stored and handled according to the relevant legislation and regulations.

### 7.10.3 INSPECTION AND MONITORING

Fuel storage areas must be inspected regularly to ensure bund stability, integrity, and function.

### 7.10.4 TRAINING

The contents of the Hazardous Substances Management Plan must be communicated to the staff through the induction training. On the job training can also be undertaken through the use of Environmental Toolbox Talks. All training must be undertaken as outlined in the Training Procedure (Document Number: EX-PR-004).

Examples of Toolbox Talks include:

- Storage of hazardous substances
- Working with hazardous substances

- Management of hazardous waste
- Spill Prevention

## 7.11 GRIEVANCE MECHANISM

This Grievance Mechanism has been developed to receive and facilitate grievances and provide a solution to these concerns and grievances. The aim of the grievance mechanism is to ensure that grievances or concerns raised by local landowners, staff and or communities are addressed in a manner that:

- Provides accessible avenues for all internal and external stakeholders to contact the Project Company;
- Provides a predictable, transparent, and credible process to all parties, resulting in outcomes that are seen as fair, effective, lasting and dealt with in a timely manner;
- Builds trust as an integral component of staff and broader community relations activities; and
- Enables more systematic identification of issues and trends affecting a project, facilitating corrective action and pre-emptive engagement.

The aim of this Grievance Mechanism is to address grievances in a manner that does not require a potentially costly and time-consuming legal process. This grievance mechanism also ensures alignment with local and international best practices in human resources development and stakeholder engagement.

### 7.11.1 RESPONSIBILITIES

**Figure 7-1** outlines the reporting structure with regards to grievances.



**Figure 7-1 - Reporting Structure with regards to Grievances**

### 7.11.2 PROCEDURES

#### 7.11.2.1 INTERNAL GRIEVANCE MECHANISM

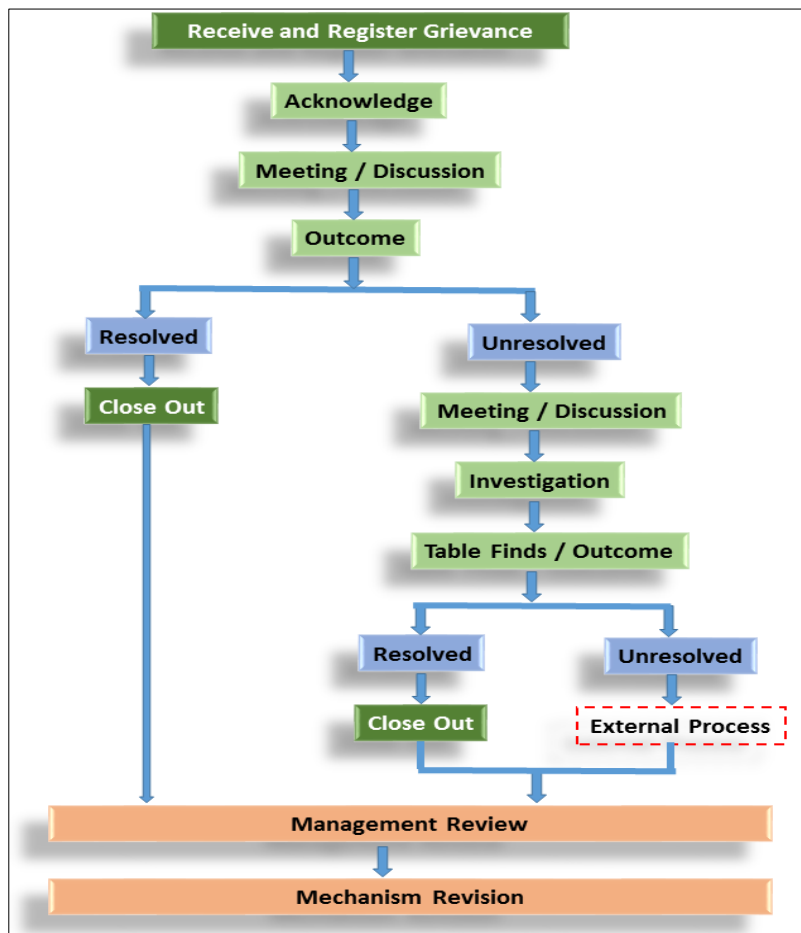
The following process relates directly to the corporate human resources policy and seeks to resolve matters that have arisen within the corporate structure. This applies directly to staff that are located

at corporate offices or on site and applies to any phase of the project, that is, during construction and operations. **Figure 7-2** illustrates the prescribed process for internal grievances.

All anonymous grievances received from the grievance box will be recorded and be dealt with according to the procedures set out in this document.

The following best practice guidelines when engaging with internal stakeholders:

- IFC Performance Standards;
- IFC Performance standard 2 – Labour and Working conditions;
- King III;
- Emerging governance trends incorporated in the report, Alternate Dispute Resolution;
- South African Legislation;
- Employment Equity Act No. 55 of 1998;
- Labour Relations Act No. 66 of 1995; and
- Occupational Health and Safety Act No. 85 1993.



**Figure 7-2 - Process for Internal Grievances**

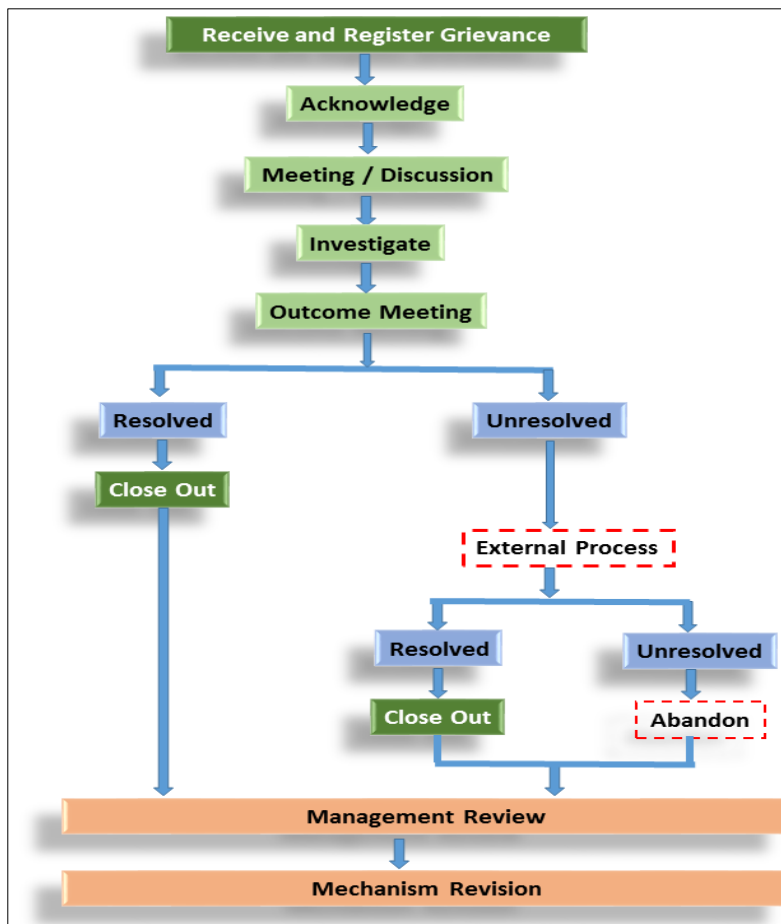
#### 7.11.2.2 EXTERNAL GRIEVANCE MECHANISM

A key element of this improvement is the implementation of the external grievance mechanism. This process is applicable through all projects and seeks to resolve issues raised by stakeholders during construction and operations. A formal systematic review of the mechanism will be undertaken every

year if and when necessary. Figure 7 3 illustrates the process that is followed for external grievances.

The following best practice guidelines when engaging with external stakeholders:

- IFC Performance Standards;
- IFC Performance standard 1, 4 and 7;
- King III;
- King III recommends the stakeholder inclusive approach to corporate governance;
- South African Legislation; and
- National Environmental Management Act (NEMA) and other relevant legislation



**Figure 7-3 - Process for External Grievances**

### 7.11.2.3 GENERAL PROCEDURE FOR RECEIVING AND RESOLVING GRIEVANCES

- Local landowners, affected community representatives and authorities must be informed of the grievance mechanism and the process by which grievances can be brought to the attention of the Project Company through its designated representative.
- A company representative must be appointed as the contact person for grievances to be addressed to. The name and contact details of the contact person must be provided to local landowners, communities and authorities.



- Project related grievances relating to the construction, operational and or decommissioning phase must be addressed in writing to the contact person. The contact person should assist local landowners and or communities who may lack resources to submit/prepare written grievances.
- The grievance must be registered with the contact person who, within 2 working days of receipt of the grievance, must contact the complainant to discuss the grievance and agree on suitable date and venue for a meeting in order to discuss the grievances raised. Unless otherwise agreed, the meeting must be held within 2 weeks of receipt of the grievance.
- The contact person must draft a letter to be sent to the complainant acknowledging receipt of the grievance, the name and contact details of complainant, the nature of the grievance, the date that the grievance was raised, and the date and venue for the meeting (once agreed).
- Prior to the meeting being held the contact person must contact the complainant to discuss and agree on the parties who should attend the meeting. The people who will be required to attend the meeting will depend on the nature of the grievance. While the complainant and or proponent are entitled to invite their legal representatives to attend the meeting/s, it should be made clear that to all the parties involved in the process that the grievance mechanism process is not a legal process. It is therefore recommended that the involvement of legal representatives be limited.
- The meeting must be chaired by the company representative appointed to address grievances. A person must be provided to take minutes of and record the meeting/s. Any costs associated with hiring venues must be covered by the Project Company.
- Draft copies of the minutes must be made available to the complainant and the proponent within 4 working days of the meeting being held. Unless otherwise agreed, comments on the draft minutes must be forwarded to the company representative appointed to manage the grievance mechanism within 4 working days of receipt of the draft minutes.
- In the event of the grievance being resolved to the satisfaction of all the parties concerned, the outcome must recorded and signed off by the relevant parties. The record must provide details of the date of the meeting/s, the names of the people that attended the meeting/s, the outcome of the meeting/s, and where relevant, the measures identified to address the grievance, the party responsible for implementing the required measures, and the agreed upon timeframes for the measures to be implemented.
- In the event of a dispute between the complainant and the proponent regarding the grievance, the option of appointing an independent mediator to assist with resolving the issue should be discussed. The record of the meeting/s must note that a dispute has arisen and that the grievance has not been resolved to the satisfaction of all the parties concerned.
- In the event that the parties agree to appoint a mediator, the Project Company will be required to identify three (3) mediators and forward the names and CVs to the complainant within 2 weeks of the dispute being declared. The complainant, in consultation with the Project Company, must identify the preferred mediator and agree on a date for the next meeting. The cost of the mediator must be borne by the Project Company. A person must be provided to take minutes of and record the meeting/s.
- In the event of the grievance, with the assistance of the mediator, being resolved to the satisfaction of all the parties concerned, the outcome must be recorded and signed off by the relevant parties, including the mediator. The record must provide details on the date of the meeting/s, the names of the people that attended the meeting/s, the outcome of the meeting/s, and where relevant, the measures identified to address the grievance, the party responsible for implementing the required measures, and the agreed upon timeframes for the measures to be implemented.

- In the event of the dispute not being resolved, the mediator must prepare a draft report that summaries the nature of the grievance and the dispute. The report must include a recommendation by the mediator on the proposed way forward with regard to the addressing the grievance.
- The draft report must be made available to the complainant and the Project Company for comment before being finalised and signed by all parties. Unless otherwise agreed, comments on the draft report must be forwarded to the company representative appointed to manage the grievance mechanism within 4 working days. The way forward will be informed by the recommendations of the mediator and the nature of the grievance.

A complaint is closed out when no further action can be or needs to be taken. Closure status will be classified in the complaints register as follows:

- Resolved: Complaints where a resolution has been agreed and implemented and the complainant has signed the confirmation form.
- Unresolved: Complaints where it has not been possible to reach an agreed resolution and the case has been authorised for close out by the appeals committee.
- Abandoned: Complaints where the complainant is not contactable after one month following receipt of a complaint and efforts to trace his or her whereabouts have been unsuccessful.

The grievance mechanism does not replace the right of an individual, community, group or organization to take legal action should they so wish. In the event of the grievance not being resolved to the satisfaction of complainant and or the proponent, either party may be of the opinion that legal action may be the most appropriate option.

### 7.11.3 INSPECTION AND MONITORING

All grievances will be recorded in the Grievance Register and Guideline and be reviewed on a weekly basis.

A key element of this improvement will be evaluating the effectiveness of this mechanism through internal auditing processes and, if necessary, amend and add to this document. This will include feedback from staff and relevant stakeholders. A formal systematic review will be undertaken every year if considered necessary.

### 7.11.4 TRAINING

The contents of the Grievance Mechanism must be communicated to the staff through the induction training. On the job training can also be undertaken through the use of Environmental Toolbox Talks. Training must also be provided to neighbouring communities to ensure that they are aware that the grievance process exists and how the process works.

## 7.12 HERITAGE MANAGEMENT PLAN

The purpose of this document is to provide a response guideline should archaeological sites, palaeontological sites or graves become exposed during ground altering activities within the project area. Heritage resources are protected in terms of the National Heritage Resources Act, Act 25 of 1999 (NHRA).

## 7.12.1 CHANCE AND FIND PROCEDURE

The following procedural guidelines must be considered in the event that previously unknown heritage resources are exposed or found during the construction of the Project.

### 7.12.1.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

The Contractor or other person discovering a potentially significant site or artefact will initiate the following actions:

- Stop work in the immediate area and take digital photographs to record the find;
- Install temporary site protection measures (e.g. delineate a 'no-go' area using warning tape, stakes and signage / deploy worker and give instructions to prevent access or further disturbance) and take all reasonable steps to avoid any further disturbance or damage from excavation, vibration, plant or machinery;
- Inform site supervisor/foreman;
- Inform all relevant staff /Contractor personnel of the chance find and whether access to work area or along the right-of-way is being restricted;
- Strictly enforce any no-go area needed to protect the site;
- Notify the Project Company who will advise on any additional measures such as deployment of security guard and consultation or a visit from archaeologist / other heritage specialist. In the event of the latter, the specialist/archaeologist will be responsible for evaluating whether the chance find needs to be classified as cultural heritage and if so, whether it is isolated or part of a larger site or feature. The Project Company will notify the relevant authorities;
- The supervisor must then inform the relevant ECO;
- The ECO shall contact the SAHRA and appoint an archaeological consultant to record the site and excavate if necessary;
- Artefacts are to be left in place for recording by the specialist/archaeologist. It is important they are not disturbed or moved as their setting is as important as the artefact/fossil; if materials are to be collected they will be placed in bags and labelled by the specialist /archaeologist and forwarded to the authorities in a manner that ensures the integrity of the 'chain of custody'. Project personnel are not permitted to take or keep artefacts as personal possessions as that is a crime;
- Any damage, accidental or otherwise, must be investigated by the site foreman, EO and the details recorded in an interim Incident Report and, if necessary, an Incident (Chance Find) Investigation Report;
- Appropriate mitigation / treatment strategies will be developed according to the specific circumstances of each find and, as appropriate, take account of the degree of cultural importance of the find –
- Stakeholder engagement may be needed with affected communities to determine the correct mitigation actions or, if applicable, suitable compensation (e.g. reburial costs). Site treatment scenarios may include:
  - Preservation in place through avoidance or re-routing or specialized construction techniques, and/or
  - Rescue excavations to remove, record and relocate in advance of further construction work if avoidance is not possible.

- If the Chance Find is an isolated artefact/site or is not classed as cultural heritage, the Project Company must approve the removal of site protection measures and activity can resume only with consultation and approval of the local authorities;
- If the heritage specialist and/or archaeologist confirms the chance find to be cultural heritage he/she will inform the Project Company and initiate discussions about the handling process;
- If a chance find is a verified cultural heritage site, prepare a final Chance Finds report once required treatment has been completed;
- While required treatment is ongoing, the Project Company will coordinate with the relevant staff / contractor, keeping them informed as to status and schedule of investigations / actions, and informing them when activities may resume;
- The Grievance Procedure and Guidance will apply to any stakeholder complaints relating to cultural heritage and chance finds;
- Chance find recording shall include the following:
  - Incident Notification;
  - Incident Report;
  - Incident (Chance Find) Investigation Report – e.g., detailing corrective actions, with digital images, maps and plans showing any locations that are no-go, limited access or present risks of further chance finds.

### 7.12.2 INSPECTION AND MONITORING FOR HERITAGE

Since it is not practical to have a regular monitoring presence over the construction period by either an archaeologist or palaeontologist, environmental awareness training must be conducted by the EO for all contractors and subcontractors. The training must include, as a minimum, the following:

- Identifying potential features of heritage significance;
- Procedures for dealing with heritage resources discovered on site;
- Applicable Legislation pertaining to the protection of heritage resources.

The recommended inspection and monitoring measures is presented in **Table 7-3** below.

**Table 7-3 – Recommended inspection and monitoring measures**

Impact	Mitigation / management objectives & outcomes	Mitigation / management actions	Monitoring		
			Methodology	Frequency	Responsibility
Impacts to archaeology and graves					
Damage or destruction of archaeological sites or graves	Avoid impacts (preferred) or locate and sample or rescue sites/burials before disturbance	<u>Planning &amp; Construction Phase</u> : Final alignment to be evaluated by an archaeologist relative to known sites, make recommendations for mitigation or further survey as may be needed.	Appoint archaeologist to evaluate alignment well before construction (noting that further survey may be required if there are doubts)	Once-off	Project developer
Damage or destruction of archaeological sites	Locate sensitive areas before damage occurs and avoid impacts	<u>Construction Phase</u> : No-Go signage will need to be placed at sites close to the final alignment. To be determined during planning phase.	Monitoring of No-Go areas (construction period only)	Ongoing basis	Construction Manager or Contractor
				Whenever on site (at least weekly)	ECO
Damage or destruction of archaeological sites or graves	Rescue information, artefacts or burials before extensive damage occurs	<u>Construction Phase</u> : Reporting chance finds as early as possible to SAHRA ( <a href="https://www.sahra.org.za/contact/">https://www.sahra.org.za/contact/</a> ) or an archaeologist, protect in situ and stop work in immediate area	Inform staff to be vigilant and carry out inspections of new excavations	Ongoing basis	Construction Manager or Contractor
				Whenever on site (at least weekly during construction period only)	ECO
Damage or destruction of any known sites	Avoid impacts	<u>Construction Phase</u> : Place No-Go signage at identified sensitive locations.	Monitoring of No-Go areas (construction period only)	Ongoing basis	Construction Manager or Contractor

Impact	Mitigation / management objectives & outcomes	Mitigation / management actions	Monitoring		
			Methodology	Frequency	Responsibility
				Whenever on site (at least weekly)	ECO
Impacts to the cultural landscape					
Visible landscape scarring	Minimise landscape scarring	<u>Construction Phase</u> : Ensure disturbance is kept to a minimum and does not exceed project requirements. Avoid construction on very steep slopes. Rehabilitate areas not needed during operation.	Monitoring of surface clearance relative to approved layout	Ongoing basis	Construction Manager or Contractor
				As required	ECO
Intrusion into cultural landscape	Minimise visual intrusion	<u>Operation Phase</u> : Ensure that all maintenance vehicles and operational activities stay within designated areas.	Undertake visual inspections and report non-compliance	As required	Environmental Manager
Intrusion into cultural landscape	Minimise contrast and light pollution	<u>Operation Phase</u> : Paint buildings in earthy colours to reduce contrast. Make use of motion detectors and downlighting to reduce night-time light pollution.	Monitor that this has been considered in the design and operation of the facility	Once off	Project Developer
Visible landscape scarring	Minimise landscape scarring	<u>Decommissioning Phase</u> : Ensure all areas are rehabilitated following specialist rehabilitation plan.	Monitor compliance and success of rehabilitation	As required	ECO

### 7.12.3 MONITORING PROGRAMME FOR PALAEONTOLOGY

#### 7.12.3.1 Chance Find protocols

The following procedure is only required if fossils are seen on the surface and when drilling/excavations commence:

- The following procedure is only required if fossils are seen on the surface and when drilling/excavations commence.
- When excavations begin the rocks and discard must be given a cursory inspection by the environmental officer or designated person. Any fossiliferous material (trace fossils, plants, insects, bone or coal) should be put aside in a suitably protected place. This way the project activities will not be interrupted.
- Photographs of similar fossils must be provided to the developer to assist in recognizing the fossil plants, vertebrates, invertebrates or trace fossils in the shales and mudstones. This information will be built into the EMP's training and awareness plan and procedures.
- Photographs of the putative fossils can be sent to the palaeontologist for a preliminary assessment.
- If there is any possible fossil material found by the developer/environmental officer then the qualified palaeontologist sub-contracted for this project, should visit the site to inspect the selected material and check the dumps where feasible.
- Fossil plants or vertebrates that are considered to be of good quality or scientific interest by the palaeontologist must be removed, catalogued and housed in a suitable institution where they can be made available for further study. Before the fossils are removed from the site a SAHRA permit must be obtained. Annual reports must be submitted to SAHRA as required by the relevant permits.
- If no good fossil material is recovered then no site inspections by the palaeontologist will be necessary. A final report by the palaeontologist must be sent to SAHRA once the project has been completed and only if there are fossils.
- If no fossils are found and the excavations have finished then no further monitoring is required.

#### 7.12.4 TRAINING

The contents of the Heritage Management Plan must be communicated to the staff through the induction training. On the job training can also be undertaken through the use of Environmental Toolbox Talks.

### 7.13 FAUNA MANAGEMENT PLAN

The purpose of this fauna management plan is to protect species, habitats and eco-system services, ensuring no net reduction to any critically endangered / endangered species and no net loss of any critical habitats (as defined by IFC Performance Standard 6) whilst minimising disturbance to other species and habitats to the extent practicable. This plan provides a strategy to control potential impacts on fauna during the construction and operation of the project.



## 7.13.1 PRINCIPLES FOR MANAGING IMPACTS ON FAUNA

### 7.13.1.1 SNAKE FIND AND HANDLING:

During construction, especially clearing of vegetation, it is likely that snakes will be encountered onsite. The following steps need to be undertaken in the event of a snake onsite:

- All work in that area is to cease;
- The site foreman/ site supervisor is to be notified;
- Snake handling will be undertaken by suitably trained and certified onsite personnel. The site supervisor or foreman needs to contact the relevant onsite personnel, who will safely remove and release the snake at a suitable habitat.

The following measures need to be communicated to all staff to ensure both human and snake safety:

- Under no circumstances may any site staff handle snakes without the proper snake handling training.
- All staff are to be provided with the correct Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) (e.g. snake gaiters and safety boots) to limit the potential for snake bites.
- Signage identifying the service provider appointed for snake handling must be erected around site. It is recommended that an individual onsite undergoes snake handling training to ensure that if an emergency arises it can be dealt with immediately.
- Intentional harming of snakes is prohibited onsite.

## 7.13.2 MAMMALS AND REPTILES

During the construction phase of the project the following mitigation measures need to be implemented and adhered to at all times to ensure that the impacts to fauna is managed and mitigated where possible.

### 7.13.2.1 WALK DOWN PRIOR TO CONSTRUCTION

Prior to the start of any construction or associated activities in areas of potential biodiversity concern, the Contractors will carry out a walk-through over the area accompanied by the EO. The objective is to identify any sensitive habitats including potential for species of conservation interest (i.e. to consider the presence of any rare species of fauna, but establish possible risk of snake bites; inspect tree cavities for bats, etc.) that may be directly or indirectly affected by the proposed works.

Any important and significant habitats must be suitably demarcated and made a no-go area. An appropriate level of mitigation needs to be implemented prior to starting construction.

### 7.13.2.2 LIMIT THE DEVELOPMENT FOOTPRINT

- The development area must be clearly defined and marked off accordingly. All No- Go areas must be demarcated and warning signs prohibiting access erected.
- Areas to be cleared must be clearly marked in the field to eliminate unnecessary clearing/ disturbance.

### 7.13.2.3 LIMIT DISTURBANCE

- The extent of clearing and disturbance to the native vegetation must be kept to a minimum so that the impact on fauna and their habitats is restricted.
- Vehicles to adhere to speed limits at all times.

- The intentional harming and killing of animals will be prohibited through on-site supervision and worksite rules.
- Any litter onsite needs to be cleaned up immediately to prevent it being blown into the environment surrounding the development site.

#### **7.13.2.4 INSPECTIONS AND MONITORING**

The following inspections and monitoring need to be undertaken during the construction phase:

- Observation of vegetation clearing activities by the Environmental Control Officer (ECO).
- Recording faunal fatalities to monitor success of relocation efforts.
- Regular monitoring of construction activities by the designated onsite personnel and the ECO.
- The ESHS team will collate details and investigate all Project-related wildlife complaints and incidents including instances of unauthorised hunting, poaching, bush trade, disturbance of breeding sites and injuries / fatalities. Corrective actions will be instigated where needed to avoid recurrence.

#### **7.13.2.5 TRAINING**

The contents of the Fauna Management Plan must be communicated to the staff through the induction training. On the job training can also be undertaken through the use of Environmental Toolbox Talks. All training must be undertaken as outlined in the Training Procedure (Document Number: EX-PR-004).

Examples of Toolbox Talks include:

- Snakes bites
- Snake handling
- No-Go areas
- Encountering fauna onsite
- Poaching

### **7.14 SOIL MANAGEMENT PLAN**

Some of the most significant impacts on soil properties occur as a result of activities associated with construction. Construction activity can have adverse impacts on soil in a number of ways by:

- Covering soil with impermeable materials, effectively sealing it and resulting in significant detrimental impacts on soils' physical, chemical and biological properties, including drainage characteristics.
- Contaminating soil as a result of accidental spillage or the use of chemicals.
- Over-compacting soil through the use of heavy machinery or the storage of construction materials.
- Reducing soil quality, for example by mixing topsoil with subsoil.
- Wasting soil by mixing it with construction waste or contaminated materials, which then have to be treated before reuse or even disposed of at landfill as a last resort.

Careful management of topsoil and subsoil is an important aspect of sustainable use of materials that are being stripped. Without a proper Soil Resource Plan there is the risk of losing, damaging or contaminating valuable soil resources. The purpose of this Soil Management Plan is to outline principles for soil management to ensure the integrity of the resource during and post-construction.

This plan must be read together with the Emergency Response Plan in order to minimise the risk of contamination of soils.

### **7.14.1 SOIL HORIZONS**

#### **7.14.1.1 TOPSOIL**

Topsoil is the top-most soil layer (0-25 cm) in undisturbed areas. If no impacts are expected in undisturbed areas then the principals that follow do not apply. The principals are also applicable to any undisturbed areas affected by the power line. This soil layer is important as it contains nutrients, organic material, seeds, communities of micro-organisms, fungi and soil fauna. All the contents of the topsoil layer are necessary for soil processes such as nutrient cycling, and support growth of new plants. The biologically active upper layer of soil is fundamental in the development of soils and the sustainability of the entire ecosystem. Fungi, algae, cyanobacteria and non-vascular plants form a 'living crust' on the soil surface that influences the retention of resources (principally nutrients and water), as well as reducing the potential for soil erosion.

In general, the greatest concentration of seeds (i.e. up to 90% of the seedbank) is found in the top 5-10 cm of topsoil. Soil nutrients and other biological elements also have a higher concentration in the top 5 – 10 cm of soil, but can occur up to 25 cm.

#### **7.14.1.2 SUBSOIL**

Subsoil is soil generally deeper than 25 cm. The subsoil contains lower levels of nutrients, but the soil texture is still suitable for plant growth.

#### **7.14.1.3 OVERBURDEN**

Overburden is all the soil below the subsoil layer, generally characterised by a fine soil texture which is sometimes high in clay and salt content which makes plant growth difficult. Such soils comprise a sterile growth medium, devoid of nutrients, and depending on the clay content, are of high salinity and often phytotoxic. Even shallow-lying overburden soils are largely depleted of nutrients. These soils constitute an unsuitable medium for the establishment of plants.

### **7.14.2 PRINCIPLES FOR SOIL MANAGEMENT**

#### **7.14.2.1 THE CORRECT HANDLING OF TOPSOIL**

- Before beginning work on site, topsoil must be stripped from all areas that will be disturbed by construction activities. Appropriate equipment must be used and appropriate work practices must be implemented for soil stripping as mishandling soil can have an adverse effect on its properties.
- Topsoil must be stripped in the driest condition possible.
- Topsoil must be retained on site in order to be used in site rehabilitation. The correct handling of the topsoil layer is in most cases the key to rehabilitation success.
- It is important that the correct depth of topsoil is excavated in order to ensure good plant growth. If excavation is too shallow, then an important growth medium for new seedlings could be lost. If excavation is too deep, this could lead to the dilution of the seed and nutrient rich topsoil with deeper sterile soil.
- Topsoil and subsoil layers must never be mixed. The mixture of topsoil with the deeper sterile soil hinders the germination of seeds which are buried too deep in the soil layer. Mixture of soil layers also leads to the dilution of nutrient levels which are at highest concentration within the topsoil, resulting in lower levels of nutrients available for new seedlings.

- To enable soil to be reused on site at a later stage, it needs to be stored in temporary stockpiles to minimise any damage or loss of function. Stockpiles must not be higher than 2m. Alternatively topsoil berms can be created on the site boundaries. There are a number of important considerations when creating stockpiles - including soil erosion, pollution to watercourses and the risk of flooding. These will be affected by the size, height and method of forming stockpiles, and how they are protected and maintained.
- Topsoil must be stored separately from other soil in heaps until construction in an area is complete.
- The duration of topsoil storage must be minimised as far as possible. Storing topsoil for long periods leads to seed bank depletion following germination during storage, and anoxic conditions develop inside large stockpile heaps.
- All stockpiles must be positioned away from drainage lines.
- Sediment fencing must be erected downslope of all stockpiles to intercept any sediment and upslope runoff must be diverted away from stockpiles.

#### **7.14.2.2 STRIPPING OF SUBSOIL**

The following protocols must be followed when stripping subsoil:

- On many sites subsoil will not need to be stripped but merely protected from damage. However, on other sites it might need to be temporarily removed. Where subsoil is required to be stripped, this must be undertaken before commencement of construction from all areas that are to be disturbed by construction activities or driven over by vehicles.
- Subsoil stripping depths depend on the correct identification of the sub-soil types on an ad-hoc basis, where no formal survey data exists.
- Subsoil must be stripped in the driest condition possible.
- To enable soil to be reused on site at a later stage, it needs to be stored in temporary stockpiles to minimise any damage or loss of function. There are a number of important considerations when creating stockpiles - including soil erosion, pollution to watercourses and the risk of flooding. These will be affected by the size, height and method of forming stockpiles, and how they are protected and maintained.
- All stockpiles must be positioned away from drainage lines.
- Sediment fencing must be erected downslope of all stockpiles to intercept any sediment and upslope runoff must be diverted away from stockpiles.

### **7.15 WASTE MANAGEMENT PLAN**

A Waste Management Plan (WMP) plays a key role in achieving sustainable waste management. The purpose of this plan is to ensure that effective procedures are implemented for the handling, storage, transportation and disposal of waste that is generated from the activities on site. The plan prescribes measures for the collection, temporary storage and safe disposal of the waste streams associated with the project and includes provisions for the recovery, re-use and recycling of waste.

This WMP has been compiled as part of the project EMP and includes waste stream information available at the time of compilation. Construction practices and operations must be measured and analysed in order to determine the efficacy of the plan and whether further revision of the plan is required. This plan should be further updated should further detail regarding waste quantities and categorisation become available, during the construction and/or operational stages.

### 7.15.1 RELEVANT ASPECTS OF THE SITE

Waste generated on site, originates from various sources including:

- Concrete waste generated from foundations.
- Contaminated water, soil and vegetation due to accidental hydrocarbon spills.
- Hydrocarbon waste from vehicle, equipment and machinery parts (oil cans, filters, rags etc), and servicing.
- Hazardous Water (used oils, chemicals, etc.)
- Recyclable waste in the form of paper, cardboard, glass, metal offcuts, wood/ wood pallets and plastic.
- Organic waste from food waste and alien vegetation removal.
- Sewage from portable toilets.
- Inert waste from excess rock and soil from site clearance and trenching works.

### 7.15.2 LEGISLATIVE REQUIREMENTS

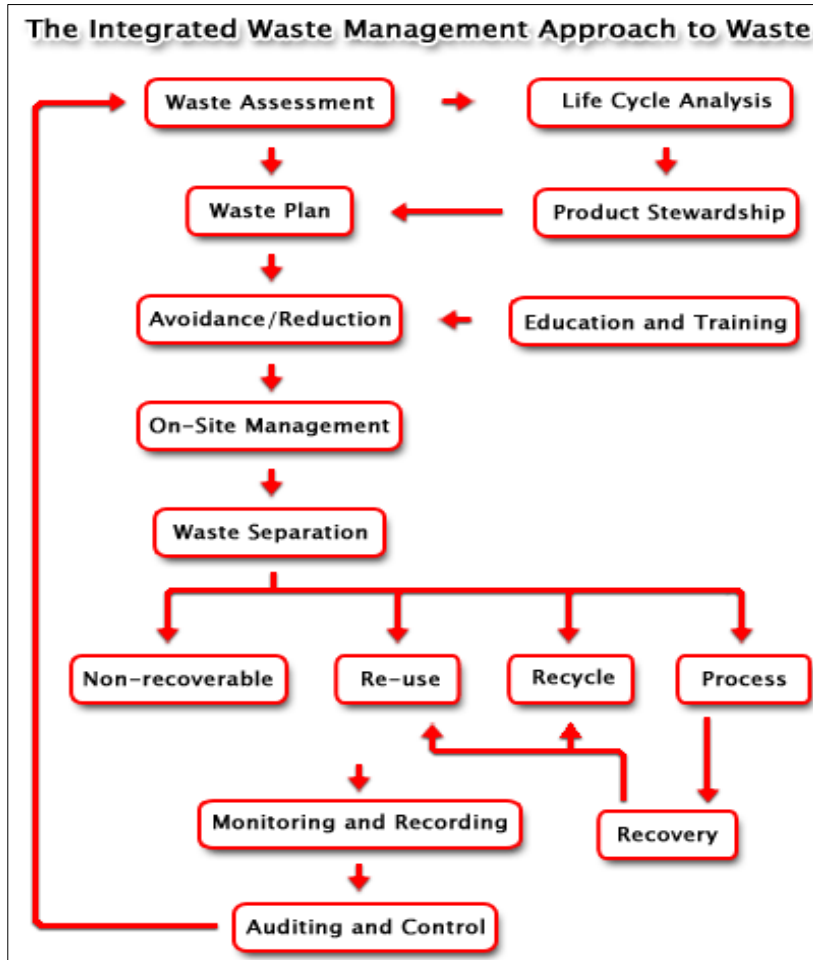
Waste in South Africa is currently governed by means of a number of pieces of legislation, including:

- National Environmental Management: Waste Act (NEM:WA), 2008 (Act 59 of 2008).
- National Environmental Management: Waste Amendment Act, 2014 (Act 26 of 2014).
- The South African Constitution (Act 108 of 1996).
- Hazardous Substances Act (Act 5 of 1973).
- Health Act (Act 63 of 1977).
- Environment Conservation Act (Act 73 of 1989).
- Occupational Health and Safety Act (Act 85 of 1993).
- National Water Act (Act 36 of 1998).
- The National Environmental Management Act (Act 107 of 1998).
- Municipal Structures Act (Act 117 of 1998).
- Municipal Systems Act (Act 32 of 2000).
- Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (Act 28 of 2002).
- Air Quality Act (Act 39 of 2004).

Storage of waste must be undertaken in accordance with the National Norms and Standards for the Storage of Waste published in GN926.

### 7.15.3 WASTE MANAGEMENT PRINCIPLES

An integrated approach to waste management on site is needed. Such an approach is illustrated in **Figure 7 4**.



**Figure 7-4 - Integrated Waste Management Approach to Waste (Source: <http://www.enviroserv.co.za/pages/content.asp?SectionId=496>)**

It is important to ensure that waste is managed with the following objectives in mind during all phases of the project:

- Reducing volumes of waste is a priority;
- If reduction is not feasible, the maximum amount of waste is to be recycled; and
- Waste that cannot be recycled is to be disposed of in the most environmentally responsible manner as possible.

#### 7.15.3.1 CONSTRUCTION PHASE

A plan for the management of waste during construction is detailed below. As previously stated, construction practices must be measured and analysed in order to determine the efficacy of the plan and whether further revision of the plan is required. A Method Statement detailing specific waste management practices during construction must be prepared by the Contractor prior to the commencement of construction.

#### 7.15.3.2 WASTE ASSESSMENT / INVENTORY

The Environmental Officer must develop, implement and maintain a waste inventory reflecting all waste generated during construction for both general and hazardous waste streams.



Construction method and materials must be carefully considered in view of waste reduction, re-use, and recycling opportunities.

Once a waste inventory has been established, targets for recovery of waste (minimisation, re-use, recycling) must be set.

#### **7.15.3.3 WASTE COLLECTION, HANDLING AND STORAGE**

- Portable toilets must be monitored and maintained daily.
- Below ground storage of septic tanks, if installed, must withstand the external forces of the surrounding environment. The area above the tank must be demarcated to prevent any vehicles or heavy machinery from driving around the area.
- Waste collection bins and hazardous waste containers must be provided by the principal contractor and placed at various areas around site for the storage of organic, recyclable and hazardous waste.
- A dedicated waste area must be established on site for the storage of all waste streams, before removal from site.
- Signage/ colour coding must be used to differentiate disposal areas for the various waste streams (i.e. paper, cardboard, metals, food waste, glass etc.).
- Hazardous waste must be stored within a bunded area constructed according to SABS requirements. The volume of waste stored in the bunds must not exceed 110% of the bund capacity.
- The location of all temporary waste storage areas must aim to minimise the potential for impact on the surrounding environment, including prevention of contaminated runoff, seepage, and vermin control.
- Waste storage shall be in accordance with all Regulations and best-practice guidelines and under no circumstances may waste be burnt on site.
- Vegetation removed from the site must be chipped, removed from the site and disposed of at an appropriate waste disposal facility or used as mulch on site.
- A dedicated waste management team must be appointed by the principal contractor's EO, whom will be responsible for ensuring the continuous sorting of waste and maintenance of the area. The waste management team must be trained in all areas of waste management and monitored by the EO.
- All waste removed from site must be done so by a registered/ licensed subcontractor, whom must supply information regarding how waste recycling/ disposal will be achieved. The registered subcontractor must provide waste manifests for all removals at least once a month.

#### **7.15.3.4 MANAGEMENT OF WASTE STORAGE AREAS**

- The position of all waste storage areas must be located away from water courses and ensure minimal degradation to the environment. The main waste storage area must have a suitable storm water system separating clean and dirty storm water.
- Waste storage areas must be under roof or the waste storage containers must be covered with tarpaulins (or similar material) to prevent the ingress of water.
- Collection bins placed around site and at subcontractors' camps must be maintained and emptied on a regular basis by the principal contractor.
- Waste must be stored in designated containers and not on the ground.
- Inspections and maintenance of bunds must be undertaken daily. Bunds must be inspected for leaks or cracks in the foundation and walls.



- If any leaks occur in the bund, these must be removed immediately.

#### **7.15.3.5 DISPOSAL**

Waste generated on site must be removed on a regular basis, as determined by the EO. This frequency may change during construction depending on waste volumes generated at different stages of the construction process.

Waste must be removed by a suitably qualified contractor and disposed at an appropriately licensed landfill site. Proof of appropriate disposal must be provided by the contractor.

#### **7.15.3.6 RECORD KEEPING**

The success of the waste management plan is determined by measuring criteria such as waste volumes, cost recovery from recycling, cost of disposal. Recorded data can indicate the effect of training and education, or the need for education. It will provide trends and benchmarks for setting goals and standards. It will provide clear evidence of the success or otherwise of the plan.

Documentation (waste manifest, certificate of issue or safe disposal) must be kept detailing the quantity, nature, and fate of any regulated waste for audit purposes.

Waste management must form part of the monthly reporting requirements in terms of volumes generated, types, storage and final disposal.

#### **7.15.3.7 TRAINING**

Training and awareness regarding waste management shall be provided to all employees and contractors as part of the toolbox talks or on-site awareness sessions.

### **7.15.4 OPERATION PHASE**

It is expected that the operation phase will result in the production of general waste consisting mostly of cardboard, paper, plastic, tins, metals and a variety of synthetic compounds. Limited hazardous wastes (grease, oils) may also be generated during maintenance activities. All waste generated will be required to be temporarily stored at the facility in appropriate sealed containers prior to disposal at a permitted landfill site.

The following waste management principles apply during the operational phase:

- The Site Manager must develop, implement and maintain a waste inventory reflecting all waste generated during operation for both general and hazardous waste streams.
- Adequate waste collection bins at site must be supplied. Separate bins must be provided for general and hazardous waste.
- Recyclable waste must be removed from the waste stream and stored separately.
- All waste must be stored in appropriate temporary storage containers (separated between different operational wastes, and contaminated or wet waste) at each operational area prior to being taken to the waste storage area for final sorting (if required). Waste storage shall be in accordance with all best-practice guidelines and under no circumstances may waste be burnt on site.
- Vegetation removed from the site must be chipped, removed from the site and disposed of at an appropriate waste disposal facility or used as mulch on site.
- Waste generated on site must be removed on a regular basis throughout the operational phase.

- Waste must be removed by a suitably qualified contractor and disposed at an appropriately licensed landfill site. Proof of appropriate disposal must be provided by the contractor.

#### **7.15.5 MONITORING OF WASTE MANAGEMENT**

Records must be kept of the volumes/ mass of the different waste streams that are collected from the site throughout the life of the project. The appointed waste contractor is to provide monthly reports to the operator containing the following information:

- Monthly volumes/ mass of the different waste streams collected;
- Monthly volumes/ mass of the waste that is disposed of at a landfill site;
- Monthly volumes/ mass of the waste that is recycled; and
- Data illustrating progress compared to previous months.

This report will aid in monitoring the progress and relevance of the waste management procedures that are in place. If it is found that the implemented procedures are not as effective as required, this WMP is to be reviewed and amended accordingly.

## 8 CONCLUSION

---

In terms of NEMA, everyone (i.e. all persons engaging in any component of this project) is required to take reasonable measures to ensure that they do not pollute the environment. 'Reasonable measures' includes informing and educating employees about the environmental risks associated with their work and training them to operate in an environmentally responsible manner.

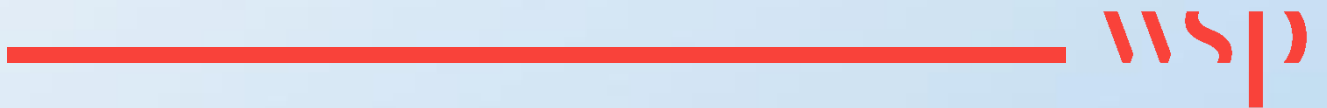
Should the above-mentioned environmental guidelines and mitigation measures be adopted, it is anticipated that the negative environmental impacts of the proposed Project will be mitigated adequately. The Project Company and the selected Contractor shall appoint relevant personnel, as well as an independent ECO, to monitor the site periodically throughout construction to ensure that the required environmental controls are in place and working effectively. During operation and maintenance, the area specific Environmental Manager and EO, with the support of the maintenance supervisor, will monitor environmental controls.

If you have any further enquiries, please feel free to contact:

WSP Group Africa (Pty) Ltd  
Attention: Jashmika Maharaj  
PO Box 98867 Sloane Park 2152  
Tel: +27 11 552-4300  
E-mail: [Jashmika.maharaj@wsp.com](mailto:Jashmika.maharaj@wsp.com)

# Appendix A

**EAP CV**



## Ashlea Strong

Environmental Planning & Advisory, Principal Associate

### CAREER SUMMARY

Ashlea is a Principal Associate with 19 years' experience in the environmental field. She currently provides technical and strategic expertise on a diverse range of projects in the environmental management field, including environmental scoping and impact assessment studies, environmental management plans, waste and water management, as well as the provision of environmental management solutions and mitigation measures. Ashlea has been involved in the management of a number of large EIAs specifically within the energy sector such as the Medupi Power Station, and Pebble-Bed Modular Reactor (PBMR) and numerous Renewable Energy Developments and Transmission Powerlines. She also has significant environmental auditing experience and expertise having undertaken over 70 compliance audits. Ashlea holds a Masters in Environmental Management; a BTech (Nature Conservation), and a National Diploma (Nature Conservation). She is also a Registered Environmental Assessment Practitioner.



Countries of experience gained include South Africa, Mozambique, Zimbabwe and Zambia.

#### 9 years with WSP

#### 19 years of experience

#### Area of expertise

Auditing  
ESIR  
Energy  
Infrastructure  
Mining  
Training  
Waste Management

#### Language

English – Fluent  
Afrikaans - Fluent

### EDUCATION

Masters in Environmental Management, University of the Free State, South Africa	2006
B Tech, Nature Conservation, Technikon SA, South Africa	2001
National Diploma in Nature Conservation, Technikon SA, South Africa	1999

### ADDITIONAL TRAINING

Conduct outcomes-based assessment (NQF Level 5), South African Qualifications Authority (SAQA)	2009
--	------

### PROFESSIONAL MEMBERSHIPS

Registered Environmental Assessment Practitioner (Registration Number: 2019/1005)	2020
---	------



## Ashlea Strong

Environmental Planning & Advisory, Principal Associate

### PROFESSIONAL HISTORY

WSP Group Africa (Pty) Ltd	May 2013 - present
Lidwala Consulting Engineers	April 2010 – April 2013
GIBB	January 2009 – March 2010
Bohlweki Environmental	August 2004 – December 2008
Vuka Environmental	August 2003 – July 2002

### PROFESSIONAL EXPERIENCE

#### Energy Sector

**G7 Renewable Energies, Karreebosch Wind Energy Facility Project, Matjiesfontein, Western Cape.  
2022-2023**

**Project Manager**

Undertaking of a Part 2 Amendment Process as well as the Amendment of the Environmental Management Programme for a 140MW Wind Energy Facility

**G7 Renewable Energies, Karreebosch to Komsberg 132kV Powerline Project, Matjiesfontein, Western Cape.  
2022-2023**

**Project Manager**

Compilation of a Basic Assessment and Environmental Management Programme for the 132kV Powerline

**Enertrag, Camden Renewable Energy Complex, Ermelo, Mpumalanga.  
2021-2023**

**Project Manager**

Compilation of four Environmental Impact Assessments, three Basic Assessments and associated Environmental Management Programmes for the Camden Renewable Energy Complex, including two wind energy facilities, a solar energy facility, one 400kV Grid Connection and three 132kV grid Connections.

**Enertrag, Dalmanutha Renewable Energy Complex, Belfast, Mpumalanga.  
2022-2023**

**Project Manager**

Compilation of one Environmental Impact Assessment, four Basic Assessments and associated Environmental Management Programmes for the Dalmanutha Renewable Energy Complex, including two wind energy facilities and associated Grid Connections

**Enertrag, Mukondeleli and Impumelelo Wind Energy Facilities, Secunda, Mpumalanga.  
2022-2023**

**Project Manager**

Compilation of two Environmental Impact Assessments, two Basic Assessments and associated Environmental Management Programmes for the Secunda Renewable Energy Complex, including two wind energy facilities and associated Grid Connections

**Red Rocket South Africa Limited, Brandvalley Wind Energy Facility Project, Matjiesfontein, Western Cape.  
2021-2022**

**Project Manager**

Undertaking of a Part 2 Amendment Process as well as the Amendment of the Environmental Management Programme for a 140MW Wind Energy Facility



## Ashlea Strong

Environmental Planning & Advisory, Principal Associate

**Red Rocket South Africa Limited, Bon Espirange to Komsberg 132kV Powerline Project, Matjiesfontein, Western Cape.**

**2021-2022**

**Project Manager**

Compilation of a Basic Assessment and Environmental Management Programme for the 132kV Powerline

**Red Rocket South Africa Limited, Rietkloof Wind Energy Facility Project, Matjiesfontein, Western Cape.**

**2021-2022**

**Project Manager**

Undertaking of a Part 2 Amendment Process as well as the Amendment of the Environmental Management Programme for a 140MW Wind Energy Facility

**Calodex (Pty) Ltd., 100MW Solar Photovoltaic (PV) Plant, Springs in Gauteng, South Africa**

**2021**

**Project Director**

This project involved the compilation of a Basic Assessment and Environmental Management Plan for a 100MW Solar PV Plant.

**Eskom Holdings SOC Limited, Erica 400kV Loop-in-Loop-out (LILO) Powerline, Cape Town, Western Cape, South Africa.**

**2020**

Compilation of an environmental screening assessment for the Erica 400kV LILO Powerline.

**BioTherm Energy, Maralla East and West Wind Energy Facilities, Sutherland in the Northern and Western Cape, South Africa.**

**2019**

**Project Manager**

Compilation of two Part 2 Amendment Process for the changes in technical scope of the Wind Energy Facilities.

**Eskom Holdings SOC Limited, Ruigtevallei 132kV Powerline, Gariep in the Free State, South Africa**

**2019**

**Project Manager**

Compilation of a Part 2 Amendment Process for the deviation of the Ruigtevallei – Dreunberg 132 kV powerline.

**Globeleq, Nakonde and Mpika Wind Energy Projects, Zambia**

**2018**

**Project Manager**

Compilation of two Environmental Project Briefs for the establishment of meteorological masts.

**G7 Renewable Energies, Rietkloof Wind Energy Facility Project, Matjiesfontein, Western Cape.**

**2018**

**Project Director**

Compilation of a Basic Assessment and Environmental Management Programme for a 140MW Wind Energy Facility.

**Southern African Power Pool (SAPP), Mozambique – Zambia Interconnector Powerline, Mozambique**

**2018**

**Project Manager**

This project involved the compilation of the Environmental and Social Impact Assessment and Environmental and Social Management Plan for a 300km 400kV powerline between Tete, in Mozambique, and Chipata, in Zambia.

**Eskom Holdings SOC Limited, Ankerlig – Koeberg 132kV powerline walkdown, South Africa**

**2017**





## Ashlea Strong

Environmental Planning & Advisory, Principal Associate

### **Project Manager**

This project involved the compilation of a Construction and Operation Environmental Management Plans for the Ankerlig – Koeberg 132kV powerline.

**WSP | Parsons Brinckerhoff, Gwanda 100MW Solar Project, Gwanda, Matebeleland South Province, Zimbabwe**

**2018**

### **Project Manager**

This project involved the high-level review of the Environmental Impact Assessment for a 100MW Photovoltaic (PV) Solar Project against relevant legislation and international standards.

**WSP | Parsons Brinckerhoff, Southern Energy Coal Fired Power Station, Hwange, Zimbabwe**

**2016**

### **Project Manager**

This project involved the high-level review of the Environmental Impact Assessment for the Southern Energy Coal Fired Power Station against relevant legislation and standards.

**BioTherm Energy (Pty) Ltd, Proposed Solar and Wind Projects, Aggenys and Sutherland Northern and Western Cape Provinces, South Africa**

**2015**

### **Project Manager**

This project involved the compilation of 15 Environmental Impact Assessments and Environmental Management Plans for 2 Solar and 2 Wind energy Projects.

**Central Energy Fund (CEF), Proposed Solar Park, Northern Cape Province, South Africa**

**2012**

### **Strategic Environmental Advisor**

This project involved the provision of process expertise for the compilation of an Environmental Impact Assessment and Environmental Management Plan for the proposed Solar Park.

**Eskom Transmission, Proposed Tabor - Nzhelele 400kV Transmission Lines and associated infrastructure, Limpopo Province, South Africa**

**2012**

### **Project Manager**

This project involved the compilation of an Environmental Impact Assessment and Environmental Management Plan for a 100km 400kV powerline between Louis Trichardt and Musina in the Limpopo Province.

**Eskom Holdings SOC Limited, Retrofitting of the existing Electrostatic Precipitators with Fabric Filter Plants at Units 2, 3 and 4 at the Grootvlei Power Station, South Africa**

**2012**

### **Project Manager**

This project involved the compilation of a Basic Assessment Report and Environmental Management Plan for the proposed retrofitting of the existing Electrostatic Precipitators with Fabric Filter Plants at the Grootvlei Power Station.

**Parsons Brinckerhoff Africa and Mulilo Power, Proposed Mulilo Coal Fired Power Station and associated infrastructure as well as associated power lines and substations, Musina, Limpopo, South Africa**

**2008**

### **Project Manager**

This project involved the compilation of an Environmental Impact Assessment and Environmental Management Plan.

**Eskom Generation, Pebble Bed Modular Reactor Demonstration Plant and Associated Infrastructure, Western Cape, South Africa**



## Ashlea Strong

Environmental Planning & Advisory, Principal Associate

**2008**

**Project Manager**

This project involved the compilation of an Environmental Impact Assessment and Environmental Management Plan.

**Eskom Transmissions, Proposed Bantamsklip – Kappa 765 kV Transmission Lines and associated infrastructure, Karoo, Western and Northern Cape, South Africa**

**2008**

**Project Manager**

This project involved the compilation of an Environmental Impact Assessment and Environmental Management Plan for four 260km 765kV powerlines between the Bantamsklip Nuclear Power Station Site and the proposed new Kappa Substation.

**Eskom Transmission Proposed Bantamsklip – Bacchus, Bacchus - Kappa and Bacchus – Muldersvlei 400 kV Transmission Lines and associated infrastructure, Western and Northern Cape, South Africa**

**2008**

**Project Manager**

This project involved the compilation of an Environmental Impact Assessment and Environmental Management Plan.

**Eskom Distribution – Central region. Westgate – Tarlton – Kromdraai 132 kV Sub-Transmission line and associated infrastructure, Gauteng, South Africa**

**2008**

**Project Manager**

This project involved the compilation of an Environmental Impact Assessment and Environmental Management Plan.

**Eskom, Environmental Scoping Study for the proposed new distribution line and substation, Dundonald, Mpumalanga, South Africa**

**2008**

**Project Manager**

This project involved the compilation of an Environmental Impact Assessment and Environmental Management Plan for a 132kV powerline as well as a new substation in the Tarlton area of Gauteng. Also involved in the Public Participation Process.

**Eskom Distribution, The proposed new 132 kV sub-transmission line between the Dinaledi and GaRankuwa substations for Eskom, GaRankuwa, Northwest, South Africa**

**2008**

**Project Manager**

This project involved the compilation of an Environmental Impact Assessment and Environmental Management Plan.

**Eskom, Transmission Expansion of the Transmission powerline network and associated infrastructure between the Perseus substation and the Beta substation, Free State, South Africa**

**2008**

**Project Manager**

This project involved the compilation of an alignment specific construction Environmental Management Plan for the 13km 765kV Perseus Beta Turn-ins.

**Eskom Distribution – Central Region, Tarlton – Kromdraai 132 kV Sub-Transmission line and associated infrastructure, Gauteng, South Africa**

**2008**

**Project Manager**

This project involved the compilation of an Environmental Impact Assessment and Environmental Management Plan.



## Ashlea Strong

Environmental Planning & Advisory, Principal Associate

**Eskom Distribution – Central Regio, Basic Assessment for the proposed Watershed – Mmabatho 88kV Power line. Northwest, South Africa**  
**2008**

**Project Manager**

This project involved the compilation of a Basic Assessment and Environmental Management Plan.

**Eskom Distribution – Central Region, Proposed Watershed – Mmabatho 88kV Power line. Northwest, South Africa**  
**2007**

**Project Manager**

This project involved the compilation of an Environmental Impact Assessment and Environmental Management Plan.

**Eskom Holdings SOC Limited, Proposed Combined Cycle Gas Turbine Plant and Associated Infrastructure near Majuba, Mpumalanga, South Africa**  
**2007**

**Project Manager**

This project involved the compilation of an Environmental Impact Assessment and Environmental Management Plan.

**Eskom Generation, Proposed Capacity Increase of the Atlantis OCGT Plant and Associated Infrastructure, Western Cape, South Africa**  
**2006**

**Project Manager**

This project involved the compilation of an Environmental Impact Assessment and Environmental Management Plan.

**Eskom Holdings SOC Limited, Proposed Concentrated Solar Thermal Plant in the Northern Cape, South Africa**  
**2006**

**Project Manager**

This project involved the compilation of an Environmental Impact Assessment and Environmental Management Plan.

**Eskom Holdings SOC Limited, Proposed Underground Coal Gasification plant, Eskom, Mpumalanga, South Africa**  
**2006**

**Project Manager**

This project involved the compilation of an Environmental Impact Assessment and Environmental Management Plan.

**Eskom Generation, Proposed new Coal-fired Power Station in the Lephalale Area for Eskom, Limpopo, South Africa**  
**2005**

**Project Manager**

This project involved the compilation of an Environmental Impact Assessment and Environmental Management Plan.

**Eskom Generation, Proposed Open Cycle. Gas Turbine Power Station at Atlantis for Eskom, Western Cape, South Africa**  
**2005**

**Environmental Consultant**

This project involved the compilation of an Environmental Impact Assessment and Environmental Management Plan.

**Infrastructure Sector**

---



## Ashlea Strong

Environmental Planning & Advisory, Principal Associate

**Sasol South Africa Limited, Boegoebaai Green Hydrogen Project, Northern Cape, South Africa  
2022-2023**

**Project Manager**

This project involved the compilation of an High level Environmental Screening for the Project, in preparation future Environmental Impact Assessment Processes

**Enertrag, Hendrina Green Hydrogen and Ammonia Facility, Mpumalanga, South Africa  
2022-2023**

**Project Director**

This project involved the undertaking of an Environmental Impact Assessment, including the compilation of an Environmental Management Programme

**Enertrag, Camden Green Hydrogen and Ammonia Facility, Mpumalanga, South Africa  
2021-2023**

**Project Director**

This project involved the undertaking of an Environmental Impact Assessment, including the compilation of an Environmental Management Programme

**Anglo American, Emalahleni Water Treatment Plant Amendment Project (EWRP), Emalahleni, Mpumalanga, South Africa.  
2020**

**Project Manager**

Compilation of a Part 1 Amendment Process for the changes to the EWRP Environmental Authorisation as well as an update of the Environmental Management Programme.

**Eskom Holdings SOC Limited, Hendrina Leachate Dam, South Africa  
2018**

**Project Manager**

This project involves the compilation of a Basic Assessment and Environmental Management Plan for a leachate Dam at the Domestic Waste Landfill Site at the Hendrina Power Station.

**SANRAL, Rehabilitation of the R34 between Vryburg and Schweizer-Reneke, Vryburg and Schweizer-Reneke, Northwest, South Africa  
2016**

**Project Manager**

This project involved the compilation of a Basic Assessment and Environmental Management Plan.

**Envirocin Incineration Systems CC, Proposed Expansion of the Cremation Facilities at the Envirocin Pet Crematorium, Kyalasands, Gauteng, South Africa  
2013**

**Project Manager**

This project involves the compilation of a basic assessment for the expansion of the cremation facilities.

**Industrial Development Corporation of SA (Pty) Ltd, Proposed Kraft Paper Mill in Frankfort, Free State, South Africa  
2013**

**Project Manager**

This project involved the undertaking of an Environmental Impact Assessment, including the compilation of an Environmental Management Programme.

**SANRAL, Rehabilitation of the N14 between Delerayville and Sannieshof, Northwest, South Africa  
2011**

**Project Manager**

This project involved the compilation of a Basic Assessment and Environmental Management Plan as well as the construction of a new bridge over the Hartsriver. This project also included the compilation of Water Use License and Mining Permit Applications.



## Ashlea Strong

Environmental Planning & Advisory, Principal Associate

**Makhado Municipality, Proposed new Waterfall Cemetery, Limpopo, South Africa**

**2011**

**Project Manager**

This project involved the compilation of a Basic Assessment and Environmental Management Plan.

**Johannesburg Roads Agency, Route determination of the proposed Metro Boulevard, Weltevreden Park Area, Gauteng, South Africa**

**2008**

**Project Manager**

This project involved the undertaking of an Environmental Impact Assessment.

**Eskom Generation, Proposed new fuel supply pipeline between Milnerton and Atlantis, Western Cape, South Africa**

**2007**

**Project Manager**

This project involved undertaking an Environmental Impact Assessment for the proposed new fuel supply pipeline between Milnerton and Atlantis to supply the Ankerlig Power Station.

### **Mining Sector**

**Rietvlei Mining Company, Establishment of the Proposed Rietvlei Opencast Coal Mine, Middelburg, Mpumalanga, South Africa**

**2013**

**Project Manager**

This project involves the undertaking of an integrated environmental authorisation process, including an Environmental Impact Assessment, Environmental Management Programme Report, Waste Management License Application and Water Use License Application.

**AngloGold Ashanti, Decommissioning of Redundant Infrastructure at the Vaal River Operations, Northwest and Free State, South Africa**

**2013**

**Project Manager**

This project involves undertaking an integrated Environmental Authorisation and Waste Management License process for the proposed decommissioning of redundant infrastructure.

**AngloGold Ashanti (Pty) Ltd, Decommissioning of Redundant Infrastructure at the West Wits Operations, Gauteng, South Africa**

**2013**

**Project Manager**

This project involves undertaking a Basic Assessment process for the proposed decommissioning of redundant infrastructure.

**Exxaro Coal (Pty) Ltd Inyanda Mine Pegasus South Expansion, Middelburg, Mpumalanga, South Africa**

**2011**

**Project Manager**

This project included the compilation of an Environmental Impact Assessment, Environmental Management Plan, the Amendment of the existing Environmental Management Programme Report and the amendment of the existing Water Use License.

**Sishen Iron Ore (Pty) Ltd, Sishen Infrastructure Program, Northern Cape, South Africa**

**2010**

**Project Manager**

This project involved the compilation of an Environmental Impact Assessment and an Environmental Management Plan for the infrastructure expansion programme.

**Sound Mining Solutions, Prospecting Permit Applications in the Kuruman area of the Northern Cape, South Africa**



## Ashlea Strong

Environmental Planning & Advisory, Principal Associate

**2011**

**Project Manager**

This project involved the compilation of Environmental Management plans as part of six applications for Prospecting Permits.

**Limpopo Department of Roads and Transport, Borrow pits required by the Limpopo Department of Roads and Transport, Limpopo, South Africa**

**2010**

**Project Manager**

This project involved the compilation of Environmental Management plans as part of the applications for Mining Permits for borrow pits required for the rehabilitation of provincial roads.

**Eskom Generation, Borrow pits required for the Medupi Coal Fired Power Station, Limpopo, South Africa**

**2008**

**Project Manager**

This project involved the compilation of Environmental Management plans as part of the applications for Mining Permits for borrow pits.

**Eskom Generation. Borrow pits required for the Ingula Pumped Storage Scheme, KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa**

**2008**

**Project Manager**

This project involved the compilation of Environmental Management plans as part of the applications for Mining Permits.

**Eskom Generation Project Manager, Mining Right Application for a 23 Hectare Borrow Pit required for the Steelpoort Pumped Storage Scheme, Mpumalanga, South Africa**

**2007**

**Project Manager**

This project entailed the compilation of the required Environmental Management Programme Report in support of a Mining Right Application.

**Minexpo, Renewed Mining and Prospecting Activities on the farm Quaggaskop 215, Vanrhynsdorp, Western Cape, South Africa**

**2004**

**Environmental Consultant**

This project involved the compilation of an Environmental Management Programme Report for the recommencement of mining and prospecting activities.

**Waste Management**

**Sasol Secunda Operations, Sasol Waste Management Environmental Management Programme, Secunda, South Africa**

**2019**

**Project Manager**

Compilation of an operational Environmental Management Programme for the Sasol Waste Ash Facility, Charlie 1 Disposal Facility and the Waste Recycling Facility.

**Eskom Holdings SOC Limited, Proposed continuous Ashing at Majuba Power Station, Mpumalanga, South Africa**

**2012**

**Project Manager**

This project entailed the compilation Environmental Impact Assessment and Waste Management License Application for the proposed continuous ashing project at the Majuba Power Station in Mpumalanga.



## Ashlea Strong

Environmental Planning & Advisory, Principal Associate

**Eskom Holdings SOC Limited, Proposed continuous Ashing at Tutuka Power Station, Mpumalanga, South Africa**  
**2012**

**Project Manager**

This project entailed the compilation Environmental Impact Assessment and Waste Management License Application for the proposed continuous ashing project at the Tutuka Power Station in Mpumalanga.

**Hendrina Power Station, Proposed extension of Ash Dams at Hendrina Power Station, Mpumalanga, South Africa**  
**2011**

**Project Manager**

This project entailed the compilation Environmental Impact Assessment and Waste Management License Application for the proposed extension of the ash dams at the Hendrina Power Station in Mpumalanga.

**Coega Development Corporation, Phase 1 of the Environmental Impact Assessment for the Proposed Regional General and Hazardous Waste Processing Facility, Eastern Cape**  
**2005**

**Project Manager**

This project entailed the compilation Environmental Impact Assessment for the Proposed Regional General and Hazardous Waste Processing Facility in the Eastern Cape.

### Auditing

**Sasol Chemical Industries, Secunda Synfuels Operations Waste Management License Audits for the Sasol Secunda, Mpumalanga, South Africa**  
**2014 – 2021**

**Lead Auditor**

These projects involve the annual and biannual environmental compliance auditing of the Waste Management licenses for various waste facilities

**South 32, Compliance Audits at South 32, Mpumalanga, South Africa**  
**2016 – 2020**

**Project Manager**

This project involved the environmental compliance audits of the Water Use Licenses for the BMK, Douglas, Klipfontein and Middelburg Mine North and South Sections at South 32 in Mpumalanga.

**South 32, Compliance Audits at Middelburg Water Reclamation Plant (MWRP), Mpumalanga, South Africa**  
**2016 – 2020**

**Project Manager**

This project involved the environmental compliance audits of the Water Use License and Waste Management License for the MWRP at South 32 in Mpumalanga.

**Nedbank, BioTherm Round 4 Lenders Technical Advisor, South Africa**  
**2018 – 2021**

**Project Manager – Environmental**

Environmental monitoring of the construction of the Konkoonsies II and Aggeneys Photovoltaic Solar Plants against the IFC Performance Standards.

**Eskom Holdings SOC Limited, Water Use Licence Audits, Delmas, Mpumalanga, South Africa**  
**2019**

**Lead Auditor**

External compliance audits of the water use licences for the Delmas and Argent Powerlines in Mpumalanga.

**Sasol Oil (Pty) Ltd, Sasol Alrode and Pretoria West Depot Audits, Pretoria, South Africa**  
**2016 – 2020**  
**Lead Auditor**





## Ashlea Strong

### Environmental Planning & Advisory, Principal Associate

Environmental compliance audits for environmental authorisations and environmental management plans for the Sasol Alrode and Pretoria West Depots.

**Sasol Oil (Pty) Ltd, Sasol Regulation 34 Audits, South Africa  
2019**

**Lead Auditor**

Environmental compliance audits for 13 authorisations for the Sasol Owned Petrol Filling Stations.

**Anglo American Platinum. Regulation 34 Audits at Mogalakwena Mine, Limpopo Province, South Africa  
2019**

**Project Manager**

Environmental compliance audits of the EMPR and various environmental authorisations at the Mogalakwena Mine.

**Sasol Secunda Operations, Sasol Environmental Authorisations and Environmental Management Plans for the Secunda Operations, Secunda, South Africa  
2019**

**Lead Auditor**

Environmental compliance audits for 49 authorisations for the Sasol Secunda.

**Palabora Company, Waste Management Licence Compliance Audit and PCB Plan Close Out Audit, Phalaborwa, Limpopo, South Africa  
2019**

**Project Manager**

Environmental compliance audit of a WML and the PCB Plan for the Palabora Mine.

**Sasol Mining, Water Use Licence Compliance, Secunda, South Africa  
2018**

**Project Manager**

Environmental compliance audit of six WULs held by mining operations.

**South 32, Legal Assessment at South 32, Klipfontein and Middelburg Mine North and South Sections at South 32 in Mpumalanga, South Africa**

**2019**

**Project Manager and Lead Auditor**

This project involved the assessment of legal compliance against the mine's legal register.

**Investchem (Pty) Ltd, InvestChem Annual Environmental Compliance Monitoring, Kempton Park, Gauteng, South Africa  
2013 – 2019**

**Lead Auditor**

This project involved the annual environmental compliance auditing for InvestChem's Sulphonation Plant. The monitoring included InvestChem's compliance to various commitments contained in their environmental management programmes and conditions within their environmental authorisations (records of decision).

**Sasol Oil (Pty) Ltd, Compliance Audits at Sasol Alrode and Pretoria West Depots, Gauteng, South Africa  
2015 – 2019**

**Project Manager and Lead Auditor**

Annual Environmental compliance auditing of the Environmental authorisations at the Alrode and Pretoria West Depots in Gauteng.

**Eskom Holdings, Water Use Licence for the Letabo Power Station, Free State, South Africa  
2018**

**Project Manager**



## Ashlea Strong

### Environmental Planning & Advisory, Principal Associate

Environmental compliance audit of the WUL held by Eskom Letabo Power Station.

**Seriti Coal, Compliance Audits at Kriel Colliery, Kriel, Mpumalanga, South Africa  
2018**

**Project Manager**

This project involved the environmental compliance audits of the Water Use Licenses.

**South 32, Legal Assessment at South 32, Mpumalanga, South Africa  
2017**

**Project Manager and Lead Auditor**

This project involved the assessment of legal compliance against the mine's legal register for the BMK, Douglas, Klipfontein and Middelburg Mine North and South Sections.

**South 32, EMPR Performance Assessment Report at South 32, Mpumalanga, South Africa  
2016**

**Project Manager**

This project involved the formal assessment and verification of the Environmental Management Programme Report for the BMK, Douglas, Klipfontein and Middelburg Mine North and South Sections.

**ACWA Power, Solafrica Bokpoort CSP Power Plant (Pty) Ltd. Compliance Audit for the Bokpoort Concentrating Solar Power (CSP) Facility, Groblershoop, Northern Cape, South Africa  
2016**

**Lead Auditor**

This project involved the environmental compliance auditing of the Waste Management License, Environmental Authorisation and Water Use License.

**Anglo Thermal Coal, EMPR Performance Assessment Report for the Landau Colliery, Mpumalanga, South Africa  
2013**

**Auditor**

This project involved the formal assessment and verification of the Landau Colliery Environmental Management Programme Report, conducted in accordance with Regulation 55 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (No. 28 of 2002).

**AfriSam Southern Africa (Pty) Ltd, Waste Management License Audit for the Slagmont Operation, Vanderbijlpark, Gauteng, South Africa  
2013**

**Lead Auditor**

This project involved the annual environmental compliance auditing for AfriSam's Slagmont Operation in Vanderbijlpark in Gauteng Province. The audit included AfriSam's compliance to the conditions of their waste management license.

**Anglo American Thermal Coal, EMPR Performance Assessment Report for the New Vaal Colliery, Free State, South Africa  
2006 – 2007**

**Auditor**

This project involved the formal assessment and verification of the New Vaal Colliery Environmental Management Programme Report, conducted in accordance with Regulation 55 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (No. 28 of 2002).

**Environmental Control**

**Wood South Africa (on behalf of Sasol South Africa Limited), Clean Fuels Projects (EHN & MFO, Large Tanks) Project, Secunda  
2022-2024  
Project Director**

## Ashlea Strong

### Environmental Planning & Advisory, Principal Associate

This project involved the monthly auditing of the contractor's compliance with the conditions of the environmental authorisation and environmental management plan for the Sasol Clean Fuels Projects in Secunda.

#### **SANRAL.N14, rehabilitation between Sannieshof and Delareyville, Northwest, South Africa 2012**

##### **Environmental Control Officer**

This project involved the monthly auditing of the contractor's compliance with the conditions of the approved Environmental Management Plan as well as ad hoc environmental advice to the Project Engineer and SANRAL.

#### **Victor Khanye Municipality. Delmas and Bontleng Wastewater Treatment Works, Mpumalanga, South Africa 2009**

##### **Environmental Control Officer**

This project involved a once off compliance audit of the above-mentioned Wastewater Treatment Works.

#### **Mkhondo Local Municipality. Nkonjaneni Water Borne Sewer Project in Piet Retief, Mpumalanga, South Africa 2009**

##### **Environmental Control Officer**

This project involved the monthly auditing of the contractor's compliance with the conditions of the approved Environmental Management Plan as well as ad hoc environmental advice to the Project Engineer.

#### **ERWAT, Upgrading of the Waterval Water Care Works, Gauteng, South Africa 2005 – 2007**

##### **Environmental Control Officer**

This project involved the monthly auditing of the contractor's compliance with the conditions of the approved Environmental Management Plan.

#### **City of Tshwane Lotus Gardens, Ext 2 Township establishment, Gauteng, South Africa 2003**

##### **Environmental Control Officer**

This project involved the monthly auditing of the contractor's compliance with the conditions of the approved Environmental Management Plan.

### **Training**

#### **SANRAL, N14 rehabilitation between Sannieshof and Delareyville, Northwest, South Africa 2012**

##### **Project Manager**

This project involved the provision of training for the staff of the N14 rehabilitation project with regards to the contents of the environmental management plan.

#### **Mintek, Training in Environmental Aspects and Rehabilitation for the Small-Scale Mining Division of Mintek, City, Province, South Africa 2004**

##### **Trainer**

This project involved the provision of environmental awareness training for delegates involved in the small-scale miner training programme run by the Mintek small scale mining division.

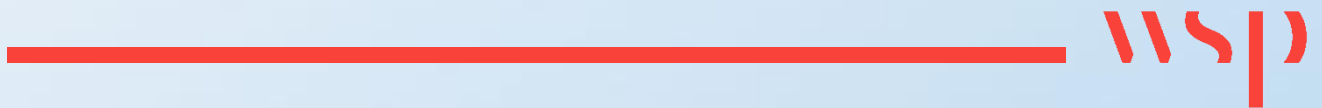
#### **Transwerk, Training in Environmental Aspects and Impacts, Germiston, Gauteng, South Africa 2004**

##### **Trainer**

This project involved the provision of environmental aspects and impacts training for the staff of Transwerk in Germiston.

# Appendix B

## **EAP DECLARATION OF INTEREST AND OATH UNDERTAKING**





**ADDENDUM 3**

**DECLARATION BY THE ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT PRACTITIONER**

**10. DECLARATION OF THE EAP**

<b>Project Title -</b>	132kV Grid Connection and Associated Infrastructure for the Igolide Wind Energy Facility, northeast of Fochville, within the Merafong City Local Municipality in the Gauteng Province.
------------------------	--

I Ashlea Strong, declare that -

- I act as the independent environmental practitioner in this application;
- I will perform the work relating to the application in an objective manner, even if this results in views and findings that are not favourable to the applicant
- I declare that there are no circumstances that may compromise my objectivity in performing such work;
- I have expertise in conducting environmental impact assessments, including knowledge of the Act, Regulations and any guidelines that have relevance to the proposed activity;
- I will comply with the Act, Regulations and all other applicable legislation, policies and guidelines;
- I undertake to disclose to the applicant and the competent authority all material information in my possession that reasonably has or may have the potential of influencing - any decision to be taken with respect to the application by the competent authority; and - the objectivity of any report, plan or document to be prepared by myself for submission to the competent authority;
- I will ensure that information containing all relevant facts in respect of the application is distributed or made available to interested and affected parties and the public at large and that participation by interested and affected parties is facilitated in such a manner that all interested and affected parties, state department and competent authority will be provided with a reasonable opportunity to participate and to provide comments on documents that are produced to support the application;
- I will ensure that the comments of all interested and affected parties are considered and recorded in reports that are submitted to the competent authority in respect of the application, provided that comments that are made by interested and affected parties in respect of a final report that will be submitted to the competent authority may be attached to the report without further amendment to the report;
- I will keep a register of all interested and affected parties that participated in a public participation process; and
- all the particulars furnished by me in this form are true and correct;
- I will perform all other obligations as expected from an environmental assessment practitioner in terms of the Regulations; and

  
Signature of the Environmental Assessment Practitioner:

WSP Group Africa (Pty) Ltd  
Name of company:

22/10/2024  
Date:

  
Signature of the Commissioner of Oaths:

22/10/2024  
Date:

Designation:

Commissioner of Oaths Official stamp (below)

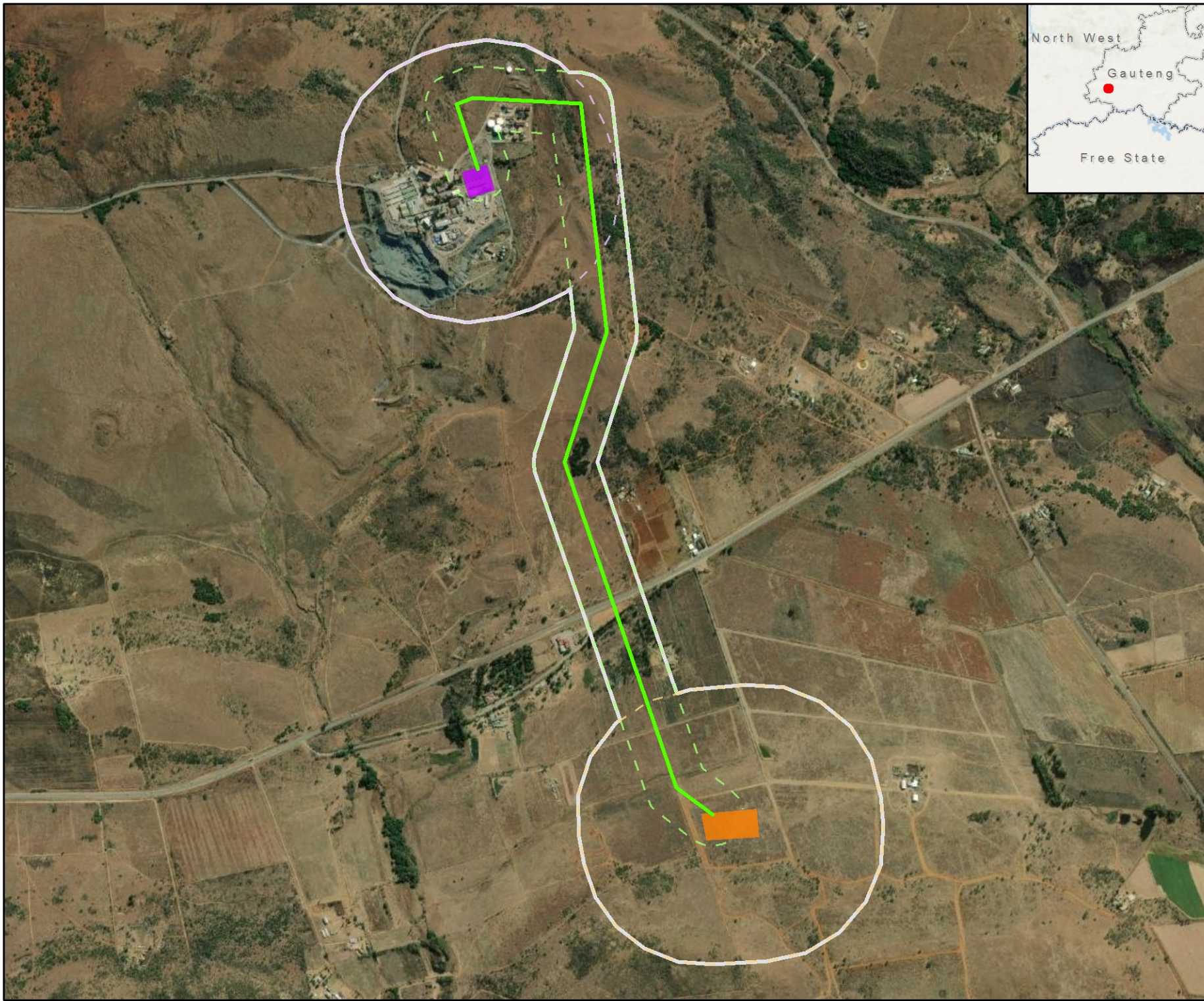
**In the event where the EAP or specialist is not independent (Regulation 13(2) and (3) of the EIA Regulations, 2014), the proponent or applicant must, prior to conducting public participation, appoint another EAP or specialist which meets all the general requirements including being independent, to externally review all work undertaken by the EAP or specialist, at the applicant's cost appointed to manage the application.**

# Appendix C

**MAPS**







## IGOLIDE GRID

### STUDY AREA

#### Legend

- Study Area
- Powerline: Switching Station to East Drie Five

#### Grid Infrastructure

- East Drie Five Substation
- Switching Station (2.5ha)
- Igolide to East Drie Five (corridor 250m)
- East Drie Substation (buffer 500m)
- Switching Station (buffer 500m)



0 180 360 540 720  
Metres

#### DISCLAIMER

The information on this figure was derived from various digital databases available to WSP Environmental (Pty) Ltd. All information is provided 'as is' and it must be acknowledged that data, information, and maps are dynamic and in a constant state of maintenance, correction and update. WSP Environmental (Pty) Ltd cannot accept any responsibility for errors, omissions, or potential inaccuracy where it has not been directly responsible for the production of the data referenced. There are no warranties, expressed or implied, as to the use of this information, including the warranty of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose. Notification of any errors will be appreciated.



**WSP ENVIRONMENTAL (PTY) LTD**  
BUILDING C, KNIGHTSBIDGE,  
33 SLOANE STREET, BRYANSTON,  
P.O. BOX 98687, SLOANE PARK 2152, RSA  
Tel +27 (0)11 361 1300, Fax +27 (0)11 361 1301, wspan@wspangroup.co.za

DATA SOURCE:  
SERVICE LAYER CREDITS: SOURCE: ESRI, MAXAR,  
EARTHSTAR GEOGRAPHICS, AND THE GIS USER  
COMMUNITY  
ESRI, GARMIN, GEBCO, NOAA NGDC, AND OTHER

PROJECTION: Hartbeeshoek94 Lo27

PROJECT TITLE:

ENERTRAG EGOLI AND IGOLIDE

SCALE: 1:20 000

DRAWN BY: TS

DATE: 2024/10/03

REVIEWED BY: LN

FIGURE NO:

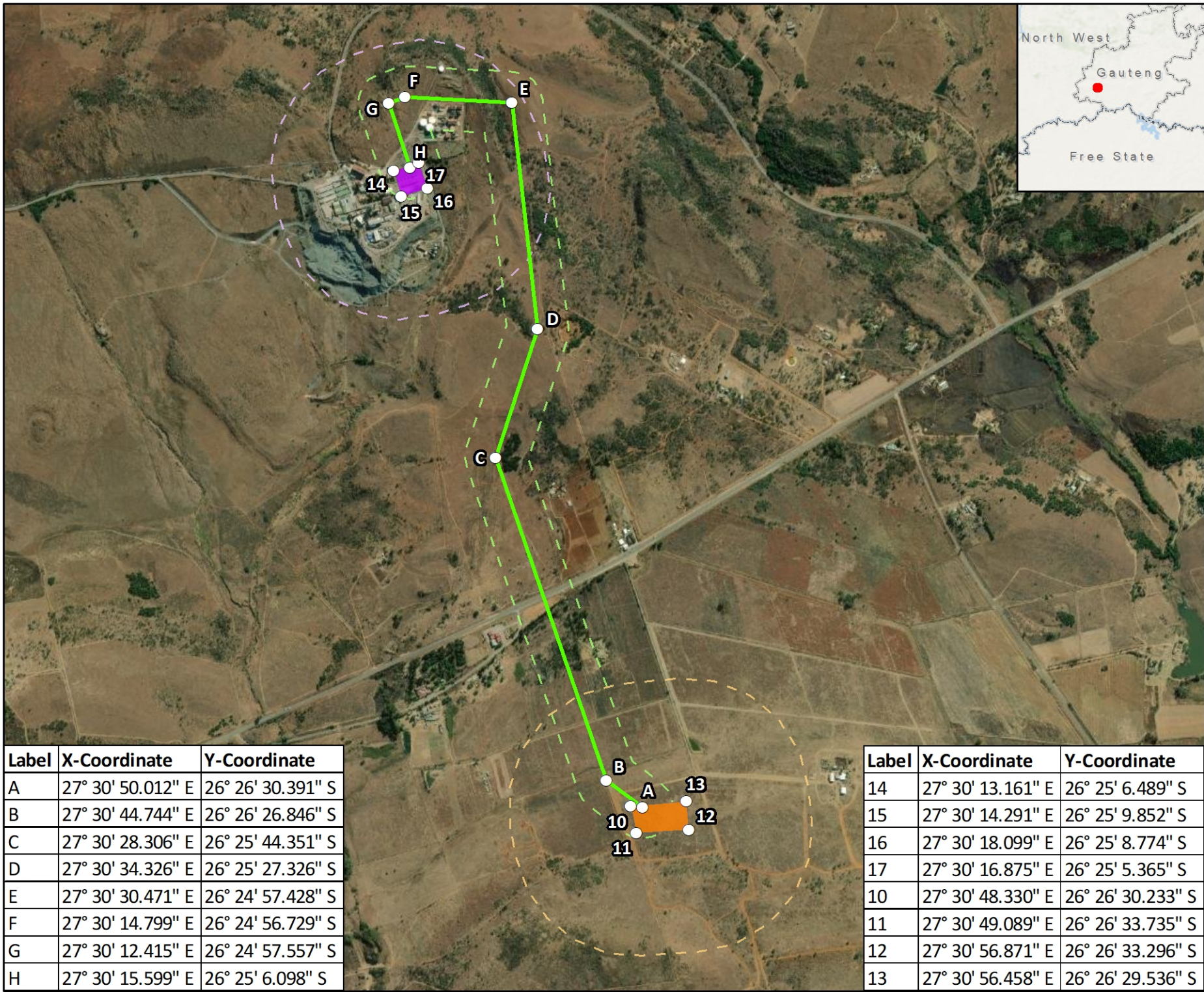
PROJECT NO: 41104282

REV:

#### © COPYRIGHT RESERVED

The content of this document is privileged and confidential and may not be disclosed or reproduced without the express authorization of the author, being "WSP Environmental (Pty) Ltd".



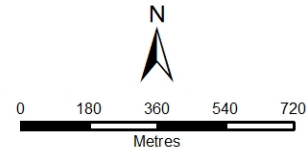


# IGOLIDE GRID

## COORDINATES

### Legend

- Coordinates
- Powerline: Switching Station to East Drie Five
- Grid Infrastructure
  - East Drie Five Substation
  - Switching Station
  - Igolide to East Drie Five (corridor 250m)
  - East Drie Substation (buffer 500m)
  - Switching Station (buffer 500m)



DISCLAIMER

The information on this figure was derived from various digital databases available to WSP Environmental (Pty) Ltd. All information is provided 'as is' and it must be acknowledged that data, information, and maps are dynamic and in a constant state of maintenance, correction and update. WSP Environmental (Pty) Ltd cannot accept any responsibility for errors, omissions, or potential inaccuracies where it has not been directly responsible for the production of the data referenced. There are no warranties, expressed or implied, as to the use of this information, including the warranty of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose. Notification of any errors will be appreciated.



WSP ENVIRONMENTAL (PTY) LTD

BUILDING C, KNIGHTSBIDGE,  
33 SLOANE STREET, BRYANSTON,  
PO BOX 98687, SLOANE PARK 2152, RSA

Tel +27 (0)11 361 1361, Fax +27 (0)11 361 1361, wsp@wspgroup.co.za

DATA SOURCE:  
SERVICE LAYER CREDITS: SOURCE: ESRI, MAXAR,  
EARTHSTAR GEOGRAPHICS, AND THE GIS USER  
COMMUNITY  
ESRI, GARMIN, GEBCO, NOAA NGDC, AND OTHER

PROJECTION: Hartreebeekhoek94 Lo27

PROJECT TITLE:

ENERTRAG E'GOLI AND IGOLIDE

SCALE: 1:20 000 DRAWN BY: TS

DATE: 2024/10/03 REVIEWED BY: LN

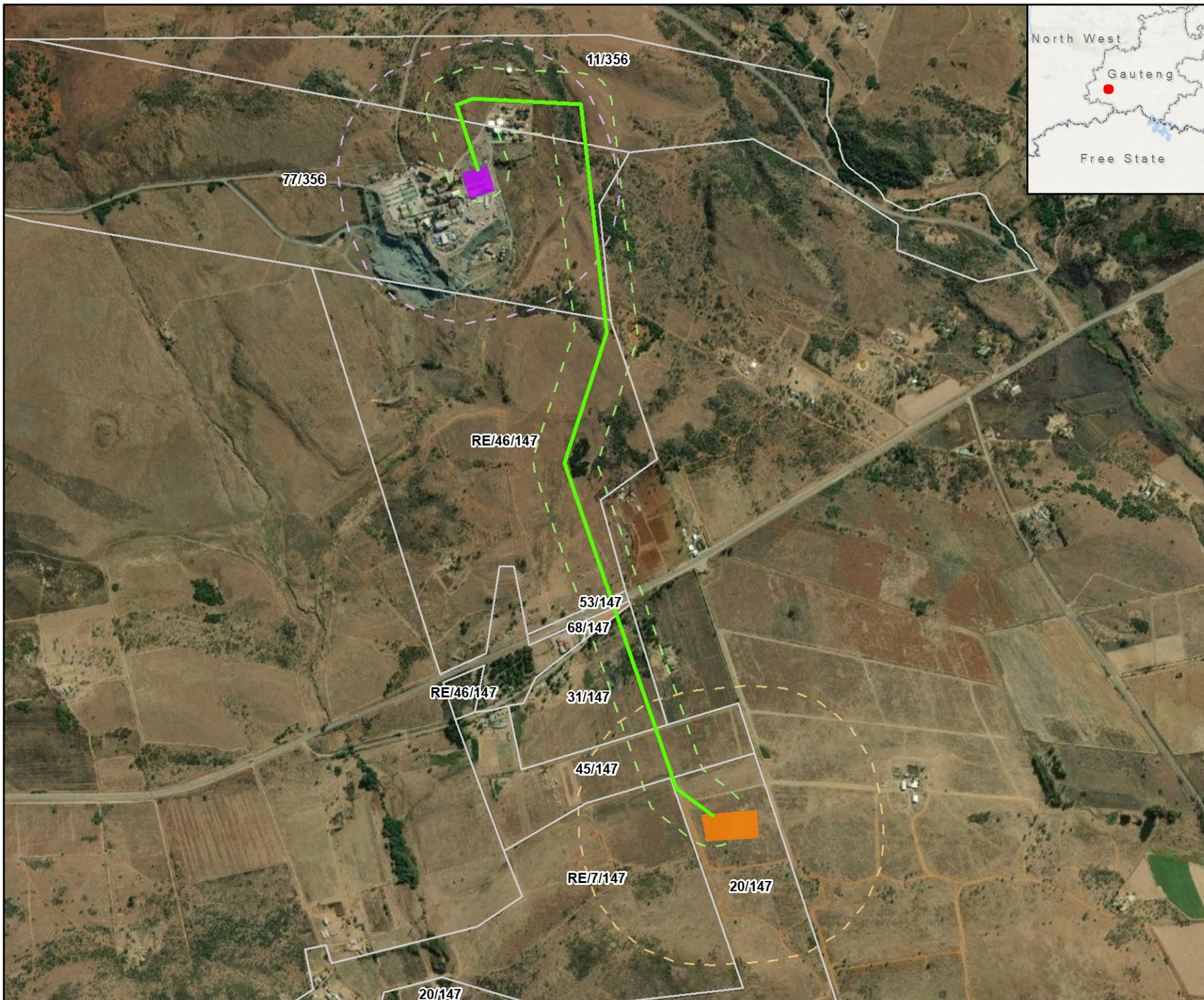
FIGURE NO: PROJECT NO: 41104282 REV:

© COPYRIGHT RESERVED  
The content of this document is privileged and confidential and may not be disclosed or reproduced without the express authorization of the author, being 'WSP Environmental (Pty) Ltd'

Label	X-Coordinate	Y-Coordinate
A	27° 30' 50.012" E	26° 26' 30.391" S
B	27° 30' 44.744" E	26° 26' 26.846" S
C	27° 30' 28.306" E	26° 25' 44.351" S
D	27° 30' 34.326" E	26° 25' 27.326" S
E	27° 30' 30.471" E	26° 24' 57.428" S
F	27° 30' 14.799" E	26° 24' 56.729" S
G	27° 30' 12.415" E	26° 24' 57.557" S
H	27° 30' 15.599" E	26° 25' 6.098" S

Label	X-Coordinate	Y-Coordinate
14	27° 30' 13.161" E	26° 25' 6.489" S
15	27° 30' 14.291" E	26° 25' 9.852" S
16	27° 30' 18.099" E	26° 25' 8.774" S
17	27° 30' 16.875" E	26° 25' 5.365" S
10	27° 30' 48.330" E	26° 26' 30.233" S
11	27° 30' 49.089" E	26° 26' 33.735" S
12	27° 30' 56.871" E	26° 26' 33.296" S
13	27° 30' 56.458" E	26° 26' 29.536" S





## IGOLIDE GRID

### FARM PORTIONS

#### Legend

Powerline: Switching Station to East Drie Five

Farm Portions (CSG, 2023)

#### Grid Infrastructure

East Drie Five Substation

Switching Station (2.5ha)

Igolide to East Drie Five (corridor 250m)

East Drie Substation (buffer 500m)

Switching Station (buffer 500m)



0 180 360 540 720  
Metres

#### DISCLAIMER

The information on this figure was derived from various digital databases available to WSP Environmental (Pty) Ltd. All information is provided 'as is' and it must be acknowledged that data, information, and maps are dynamic and in a constant state of maintenance, correction and update. WSP Environmental (Pty) Ltd cannot accept any responsibility for errors, omissions, or potential inaccuracy where it has not been directly responsible for the production of the data referenced. There are no warranties, expressed or implied, as to the use of this information, including the warranty of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose. Notification of any errors will be appreciated.



**WSP ENVIRONMENTAL (PTY) LTD**  
BUILDING C, KNIGHTSBIDGE  
33 SLOANE STREET, BRYANSTON  
P.O. BOX 99887, SLOANE PARK 2152, RSA  
Tel +27 (0)11 361 1300, Fax +27 (0)11 361 1301, wspan@wspgroup.co.za

**DATA SOURCE:**  
SERVICE LAYER CREDITS: SOURCE: ESRI, MAXAR, EARTHSTAR GEOGRAPHICS, AND THE GIS USER COMMUNITY  
ESRI, GARMIN, GEBCO, NOAA NGDC, AND OTHER

**PROJECTION:** Hartbeeshoek94 Lo27

**PROJECT TITLE:**

ENERTRAG EGOLI AND IGOLIDE

**SCALE:** 1:20 000

**DRAWN BY:** TS

**DATE:** 2024/10/03

**REVIEWED BY:** LN

**FIGURE NO:**

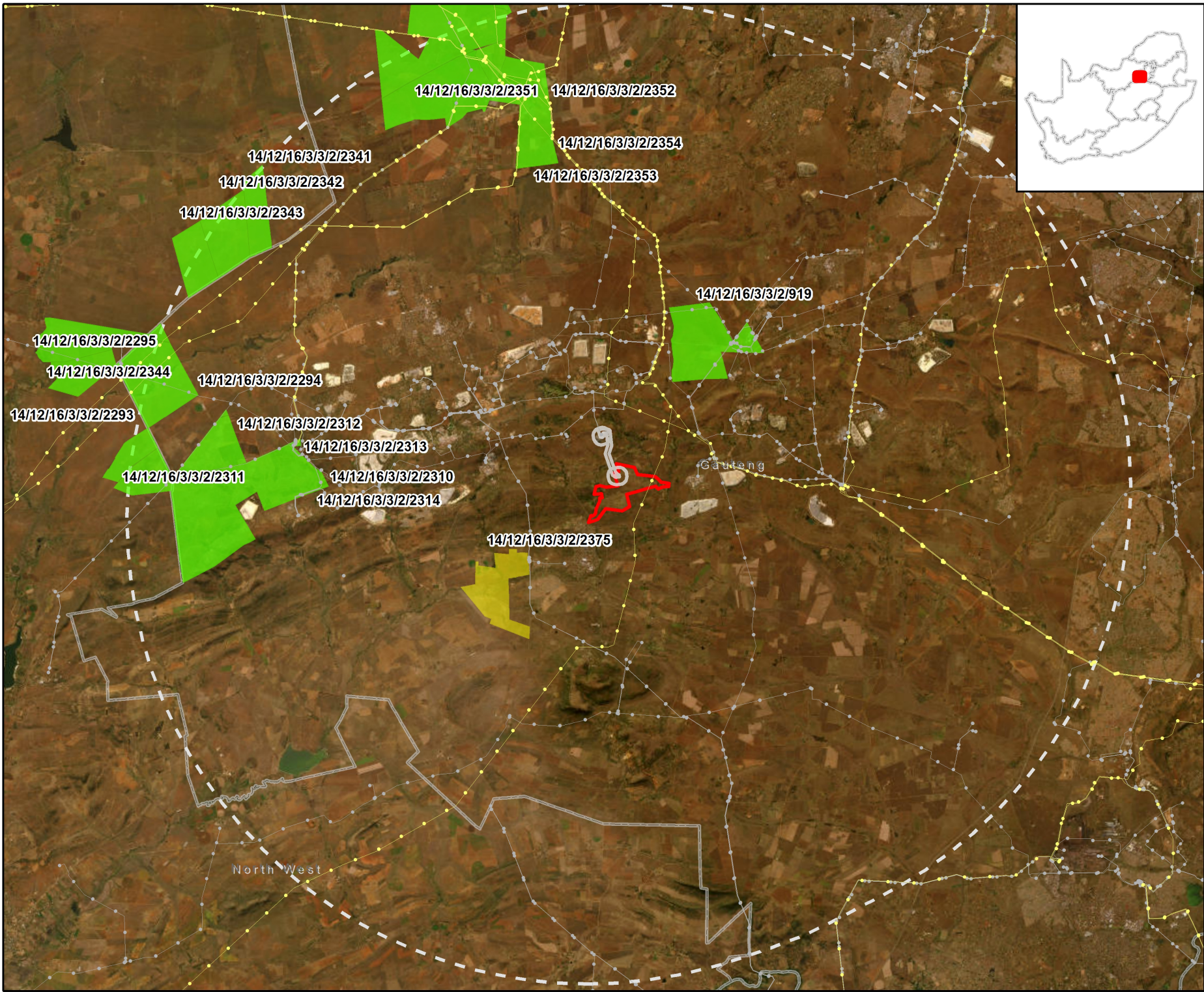
**PROJECT NO:** 41104282

**REV:**

**© COPYRIGHT RESERVED**

The content of this document is privileged and confidential and may not be disclosed or reproduced without the express authorization of the author, being "WSP Environmental (Pty) Ltd"





## IGOLIDE GRID

### RENEWABLE PROJECTS

#### Legend

- Powerlines (TX)
- Powerlines (HV)
- Grid Infrastructure
- Phadima Solar PV Facility
- WEF Project Area
- WEF Project Area (buffer 30km)
- Provinces

#### Project Status (REEA, 2024 Q1)

- Approved

0

2 800

5 600

8 400

11 200

Metres

DISCLAIMER

The information on this figure was derived from various digital databases available to WSP Environmental (Pty) Ltd. All information is provided "as is" and it must be acknowledged that data, information, and maps are dynamic and in a constant state of maintenance, correction and update. WSP Environmental (Pty) Ltd cannot accept any responsibility for errors, omissions, or positional accuracy where it has not been directly responsible for the production of the data referenced. There are no warranties, expressed or implied, as to the use of this information, including the warranty of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose. Notification of any errors will be appreciated.

### WSP

**WSP ENVIRONMENTAL (PTY) LTD**  
BUILDING C, KNIGHTSBIDGE,  
33 SLOANE STREET, BRYANSTON,  
P.O. BOX 99807, SLOANE PARK, 2152, RSA  
Tel +27 (0)11 361 1380, Fax +27 (0)11 361 1381, [wsp@wspgroup.co.za](mailto:wsp@wspgroup.co.za)

DATA SOURCE:  
SERVICE LAYER CREDITS: SOURCE: ESRI, MAXAR,  
EARTHSTAR GEOGRAPHICS, AND THE GIS USER  
COMMUNITY

PROJECTION: Hartbeesthoek94 Lo27

PROJECT TITLE:  
ENERTRAG EGOLI AND IGOLIDE

SCALE: 1:320 000	DRAWN BY: TS	
DATE: 2024/07/19	REVIEWED BY: MG	
FIGURE NO:	PROJECT NO: 41104282	REV:

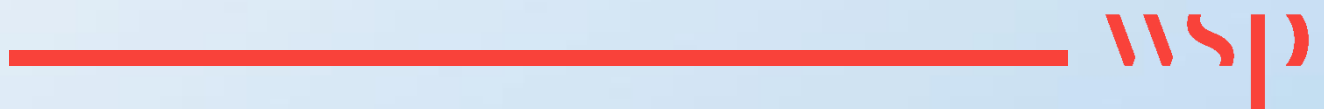
© COPYRIGHT RESERVED

The content of this document is privileged and confidential and may not be disclosed or reproduced without the express authorisation of the author, being "WSP Environmental (Pty) Ltd"



# Appendix D

## **SUBSTATION GENERIC EMPR**



## APPENDIX 1

### GENERIC ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME (EMPr) FOR THE DEVELOPMENT AND EXPANSION FOR OVERHEAD ELECTRICITY TRANSMISSION AND DISTRIBUTION INFRASTRUCTURE

---



**environmental affairs**

Department:  
Environmental Affairs  
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION .....	1
1. Background .....	1
2. Purpose .....	1
3. Objective.....	1
4. Scope .....	1
5. Structure of this document .....	1
6. Completion of part B: section 1: the pre-approved generic EMP template.....	4
4. Amendments of the impact management outcomes and impact management actions.....	4
3. Documents to be submitted as part of part B: section 2 site specific information and declaration .....	4
1. Amendments to Part B: Section 2 – site specific information and declaration....	5
PART A – GENERAL INFORMATION .....	6
1. DEFINITIONS .....	6
2. ACRONYMS and ABBREVIATIONS .....	7
National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act ,2004 (Act No. 10 of 2004) .....	7
3. ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES FOR ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME (EMPr) IMPLEMENTATION .....	8
4. ENVIRONMENTAL DOCUMENTATION REPORTING AND COMPLIANCE .....	14
1.1 Document control/Filing system .....	14
1. Documentation to be available.....	14
2. Weekly Environmental Checklist.....	14
3. Environmental site meetings .....	15
4. Required Method Statements .....	15
5. Environmental Incident Log (Diary) .....	16
6. Non-compliance.....	16
7. Corrective action records .....	17
8. Photographic record .....	17
9. Complaints register.....	18
10. Claims for damages .....	18
1. Interactions with affected parties .....	18
1. Environmental audits.....	19

2. Final environmental audits.....	19
PART B: SECTION 1: Pre-approved generic EMP template .....	20
5. IMPACT MANAGEMENT OUTCOMES AND IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS .....	20
5.1 Environmental awareness training .....	21
1. Site Establishment development .....	22
2. Access restricted areas .....	23
3. Access roads .....	24
4. Fencing and Gate installation.....	25
5. Water Supply Management .....	27
6. Storm and waste water management.....	29
7. Solid and hazardous waste management .....	30
8. Protection of watercourses and estuaries .....	31
9. Vegetation clearing .....	32
10. Protection of fauna .....	35
11. Protection of heritage resources .....	36
12. Safety of the public .....	37
13. Sanitation.....	37
14. Prevention of disease.....	38
15. Emergency procedures.....	40
16. Hazardous substances.....	40
17. Workshop, equipment maintenance and storage .....	43
18. Batching plants.....	45
19. Dust emissions.....	46
20. Blasting .....	47
21. Noise .....	48
22. Fire prevention .....	48
23. Stockpiling and stockpile areas .....	49
24. Finalising tower positions .....	51
25. Excavation and Installation of foundations.....	51
26. Assembly and erecting towers.....	52
27. Stringing.....	54
28. Socio-economic .....	56
29. Temporary closure of site .....	57



30. Landscaping and rehabilitation .....	58
6. ACCESS TO THE GENERIC EMPr .....	61
PART B: SECTION 2 .....	62
7 SITE SPECIFIC INFORMATION AND DECLARATION .....	62
1. Sub-section 1: contact details and description of the project.....	62
<i>Refer to Section 3 of the EMPr</i> .....	63
ENERTRAG South Africa (Pty) Ltd is proposing to develop a 132kV switching station, a 132kV single or double circuit powerline, and termination point upgrades (as may be necessary), including possible expansion, to allow for the proposed new 132kV powerline connection (hereafter the "Project"). The Project is intended to feed the electricity generated by the approved 100MW Igolide Wind Energy Facility ("WEF") (DFFE reference number: 14/12/16/3/3/2/2385, EA date 31 January 2024) to the national energy grid, with the point of connection being the existing East Drie Five Substation. The project includes the following components: .....	63
- Construction of 1 x 132kV powerline (either single or double circuit). A corridor of up to 250m in width (125m on either side of the centre line) has been identified for the placement of the up to 132kV single or double circuit power line to allow flexibility in the design of the final powerline route, and for the avoidance of sensitive environmental features (where possible). .....	63
-.....	63
• A high voltage substation yard to allow for multiple 132kV feeder bays. ....	63
• Standard substation electrical equipment, including but not limited to, busbars, office area, operation and control room, workshop and storage area, feeder bays, stringer strain beams, insulators, isolators, conductors, circuit breakers, lightning arrestors, relays, capacitor banks, batteries, wave trappers, switchyard, metering and indication instruments, equipment for carrier current, surge protection and outgoing feeders, as may be required. ....	63
• Control building, telecommunication infrastructure, oil dam(s), etc.....	63
• Workshop and office area within the switching station footprint. ....	63
• Fencing around the switching station.....	63
• All the access road infrastructure to and within the switching station. ....	63
• Associated infrastructure, including but not limited to, lighting, fencing, and buildings required for operation (ablutions, office, workshop and control room, security fencing and gating, parking area, concrete batching plant (if required), waste storage/disposal and storerooms).....	63
- Upgrades at the terminal points to the (existing East Drie Five Substation) to accommodate the powerline from the Igolide WEF (feeder bay and transformer upgrade), including expansion within the yard, where required, with a footprint of up to 4ha. Standard substation infrastructure will include: operation and control	

room, transformer oil dam, and standard substation electrical equipment (feeder bays, transformers, busbars, stringer strain beams, insulators, isolators, conductors, circuit breakers, lightning arrestors, relays, capacitor banks, batteries, wave/line trappers, switchyard, metering and indication instruments, equipment for carrier current, surge protection and outgoing feeders, as may be required).	64
Sub-section 2: Development footprint site map	68
Sub-section 3: Declaration	74
2. Sub-section 4: amendments to site specific information (Part B; section 2) ...	74
251. SITE SPECIFIC ENVIRONMENTAL ATTRIBUTES	75
The specific environmental sensitivities are indicated in	75

#### List of tables

Table 1: <i>Guide to roles and responsibilities for implementation of an EMPr</i>	8
Table 2: Avifaunal Input - management plan for the planning and design phase	76
Table 3: Avifaunal Input - management plan for the construction phase (Including Pre-construction and construction activities)	78
Table 4: Avifaunal Input - management plan for the operational phase	81
Table 5: Avifaunal Input - management plan for the decommissioning phase	81
Table 6: Terrestrial Biodiversity Input – Summary of the monitoring measures	84
Table 7: Plant Species Biodiversity Input – Summary of the monitoring measures	85
Table 8: Heritage Input – Summary of the mitigation and monitoring measures	86

#### List of Figures

Figure 1: Locality map for the proposed 132kV grid connection for the Igolide WEF	66
Figure 2: Locality map for for the proposed 132kV grid connection and associated infrastructure for the Igolide Wind Energy Facility	67
Figure 3: DFFE Screening Tool extract: Agricultural species theme	68
Figure 4: DFFE Screening Tool extract: Animal species theme	69
Figure 5: DFFE Screening Tool extract: Plant species theme	69
Figure 6: DFFE Screening Tool extract: Terrestrial biodiversity theme	70
Figure 7: Avifauna Sensitivity Map	70
Figure 8: DFFE Screening Tool outcome for the aquatic biodiversity theme	71
Figure 9: DFFE Screening Tool outcome for the heritage theme	71
Figure 10: DFFE Screening Tool outcome for the palaeontological theme	72
Figure 11: DFFE Screening Tool outcome for the Visual theme	72
Figure 12: DFFE Screening Tool outcome for the Civil Aviation theme	73
Figure 13: Sensitivity Map for the 132kV Grid Connection associate with the Igolide WEF	73



## INTRODUCTION

### 1. Background

The National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998) (NEMA) requires that an environmental management programme (EMPr) be submitted where an environmental impact assessment (EIA) has been identified as the environmental instrument to be utilised as the basis for a decision on an application for environmental authorisation (EA). The content of an EMPr must either contain the information set out in Appendix 4 of the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations, 2014, as amended, (EIA Regulations) or must be a generic EMPr relevant to an application as identified and gazetted by the Minister in a government notice. Once the Minister has identified, through a government notice, that a generic EMPr is relevant to an application for EA, that generic EMPr must be applied by all parties involved in the EA process, including, but not limited to, the applicant and the competent authority (CA).

### 2. Purpose

This document constitutes a generic EMPr relevant to applications for the development or expansion of overhead electricity transmission and distribution infrastructure, and all listed and specified activities necessary for the realisation of such infrastructure.

### 3. Objective

The objective of this generic EMPr is to prescribe and pre-approve generally accepted impact management outcomes and impact management actions, which can commonly and repeatedly be used for the avoidance, management and mitigation of impacts and risks associated with the development or expansion of overhead electricity transmission and distribution infrastructure. The use of a generic EMPr is intended to reduce the need to prepare and review individual EMPrs for applications of a similar nature.

### 4. Scope

The scope of this generic EMPr applies to the development or expansion of overhead electricity transmission and distribution infrastructure requiring EA in terms of NEMA, i.e. with a capacity of 33 kilovolts or more. This generic EMPr applies to activities requiring EA, mainly activity 11 and 47 of the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations Listing Notice 1 of 2014, as amended, and activity 9 of the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations Listing Notice 2 of 2014, as amended, and all associated listed or specified activities necessary for the realisation of such infrastructure.

### 5. Structure of this document

This document is structured in three parts with an Appendix as indicated in the table below:

Part	Section	Heading	Content
A		Provides general guidance and information and is not legally binding	Definitions, acronyms, roles & responsibilities and documentation and reporting.
B	1	Pre-approved generic EMPr template	<p>Contains generally accepted impact management outcomes and impact management actions required for the avoidance, management and mitigation of impacts and risks associated with the development or expansion of overhead electricity transmission and distribution infrastructure, which are presented in the form of a template that has been pre-approved.</p> <p>The template in this section is to be completed by the contractor, with each completed page signed and dated by the holder of the EA prior to commencement of the activity.</p> <p>Where an impact management outcome is not relevant, the words “not applicable” can be inserted in the template under the “responsible persons” column.</p> <p>Once completed and signed, the template represents the EMPr for the activity approved by the CA and is legally binding. The template is not required to be submitted to the CA as once the generic EMPr is gazetted for implementation, it has been approved by the CA.</p> <p>To allow interested and affected parties access to the pre-approved EMPr template for consideration through the decision-making process, the EAP on behalf of the applicant /proponent must make the hard copy of this EMPr available at a public location and where the applicant has a website, the EMPr should also be made available on such publicly accessible website.</p>
	2	Site specific information	Contains preliminary infrastructure layout and a declaration that the applicant/holder of the EA will comply with the pre-approved generic EMPr template contained in <u>Part B: Section 1</u> , and understands that the impact management outcomes and impact management actions are legally binding. The preliminary infrastructure layout must be finalized to inform the final EMPr that is to be submitted with the basic assessment

Part	Section	Heading	Content
			<p>report (BAR) or environmental impact assessment report (EIAR), ensuring that all impact management outcomes and actions have been either pre-approved or approved in terms of <u>Part C</u>.</p> <p>This section must be submitted to the CA together with the final BAR or EIAR. The information submitted to the CA will be considered to be incomplete should a signed copy of <u>Part B: section 2</u> not be submitted. Once approved, this Section forms part of the EMPr for the development and is legally binding.</p>
C		Site specific sensitivities/ attributes	<p>If any specific environmental sensitivities/ attributes are present on the site which require site specific impact management outcomes and impact management actions, not included in the pre-approved generic EMPr, to manage impacts, these specific impact management outcomes and impact management actions must be included in this section. These specific environmental attributes must be referenced spatially and impact management outcomes and impact management actions must be provided. These specific impact management outcomes and impact management actions must be presented in the format of the pre-approved EMPr template (<u>Part B: section 1</u>)</p> <p>This section will not be required should the site contain no specific environmental sensitivities or attributes. However, if <u>Part C</u> is applicable to the site, it is required to be submitted together with the BAR or EIAR, for consideration of, and decision on, the application for EA. The information in this section must be prepared by an EAP, and must contain his/her name and expertise including a curriculum vitae. Once approved, Part C forms part of the EMPr for the site and is legally binding.</p> <p>This section applies only to additional impact management outcomes and impact management actions that are necessary for the avoidance, management and mitigation of impacts and risks associated with the specific</p>



Part	Section	Heading	Content
			development or expansion and which are not already included in <u>Part B: section 1</u> .
Appendix 1			Contains the method statements to be prepared prior to commencement of the activity. The method statements are not required to be submitted to the competent authority.

6. Completion of part B: section 1: the pre-approved generic EMPr template

The template is to be completed prior to commencement of the activity, by providing the following information for each environmental impact management action:

1. For implementation
  1. a 'responsible person',
  2. a method for implementation,
  3. a timeframe for implementation
1. For monitoring
  1. a responsible person
  2. frequency
  3. evidence of compliance.

The completed template must be signed and dated by the holder of the EA prior to commencement of the activity. The method statements prepared and agreed to by the holder of the EA must be appended to the template as Appendix 1. Each method statement must be signed and dated on each page by the holder of the EA. This template, once signed and dated, is legally binding. The holder of the EA will remain responsible for its implementation.

4. Amendments of the impact management outcomes and impact management actions

Once the activity has commenced, a holder of an EA may make amendments to the impact management outcomes and impact management actions in the following manner:

1. Amendment of the impact management outcomes: in line with the process contemplated in regulation 37 of the EIA Regulations; and
2. Amendment of the impact management actions: in line with the process contemplated in regulation 36 of the EIA Regulations.
3. Documents to be submitted as part of part B: section 2 site specific information and declaration

Part B: Section 2 has three distinct sub-sections. The first and third sub-sections are in a template format. Sub-section two requires a map to be produced.

Sub-section 1 contains the project name, the applicant's name and contact details, the site information, which includes coordinates of the corridor in which the proposed overhead electricity transmission and distribution infrastructure is proposed as well as the 21-digit Surveyor General code of each cadastral land parcel and, where available, the farm name.

Sub-section 2 is to be prepared by an EAP and must contain his/her name and expertise including a curriculum vitae. This sub-section must include a map of the site sensitivity overlaid with the preliminary infrastructure layout using the national web based environmental screening tool, when available for compulsory use at: <https://screening.environment.gov.za/screeningtool>. The sensitivity map shall identify the nature of each sensitive feature e.g. raptor nest, threatened plant species, archaeological site, etc. Sensitivity maps must identify features both within the planned working area and any known sensitive features in the surrounding landscape within 50m from the development footprint. The overhead transmission and distribution profile must be illustrated at an appropriate resolution to enable fine scale interrogation. It is recommended that <20 km of overhead transmission and distribution length is illustrated per page in A3 landscape format. Where considered appropriate, photographs of sensitive features in the context of tower positions must be used.

Sub-section 3 is the declaration that the applicant/proponent or holder of the EA in the case of a change of ownership must complete, which confirms that the applicant/EA holder will comply with the pre-approved generic EMPr template in Section 1 and understands that the impact management outcomes and actions are legally binding.

1. Amendments to Part B: Section 2 – site specific information and declaration

Should the EA be transferred, Part B: Section 2 must be completed by the new applicant/proponent and submitted with the application for an amendment of the EA in terms of Regulations 29 or 31 of the EIA Regulations, whichever applies. The information submitted as part of such an application for an amendment to an EA will be considered to be incomplete should a signed copy of Part B: Section 2 not be submitted. Once approved, Part B: Section 2 forms part of the EMPr for the development and the EMPr becomes legally binding to the new EA holder.

## PART A – GENERAL INFORMATION

### 1. DEFINITIONS

In this EMPr any word or expression to which a meaning has been assigned in the NEMA or EIA Regulations has that meaning, and unless the context requires otherwise –

“clearing” means the clearing and removal of vegetation, whether partially or in whole, including trees and shrubs, as specified;

“construction camp” is the area designated for key construction infrastructure and services, including but not limited to offices, overnight vehicle parking areas, stores, the workshop, stockpile and lay down areas, hazardous storage areas (including fuels), the batching plant (if one is located at the construction camp), designated access routes, equipment cleaning areas and the placement of staff accommodation, cooking and ablution facilities, waste and wastewater management;

“contractor” - The Contractor has overall responsibility for ensuring that all work, activities, and actions linked to the delivery of the contract, are in line with the Environmental Management Programme and that Method Statements are implemented as described.

“hazardous substance” is a substance governed by the Hazardous Substances Act, 1973 (Act No. 15 of 1973) as well as the Hazardous Chemical and Substances Regulations, 1995;

“method statement” means a written submission by the Contractor to the Project Manager in response to this EMPr or a request by the Project Manager and ECO. The method statement must set out the equipment, materials, labour and method(s) the Contractor proposes using to carry out an activity identified by the Project Manager when requesting the Method Statement. This must be done in such detail that the Project Manager and ECO is able to assess whether the Contractor's proposal is in accordance with this specification and/or will produce results in accordance with this specification;

The method statement must cover applicable details with regard to:

- Construction procedures;
- Plant, materials and equipment to be used;
- Transporting the equipment to and from site;
- How the plant/ material/ equipment will be moved while on site;
- How and where the plant/ material/ equipment will be stored;
- The containment (or action to be taken if containment is not possible) of leaks or spills of any liquid or material that may occur;
- Timing and location of activities;
- Compliance/ non-compliance; and
- Any other information deemed necessary by the Project Manager.

“slope” means the inclination of a surface expressed as one unit of rise or fall for so many horizontal units;

“solid waste” means all solid waste, including construction debris, hazardous waste, excess cement/concrete, wrapping materials, timber, cans, drums, wire, nails, food and domestic waste (e.g. plastic packets and wrappers);

“spoil” means excavated material which is unsuitable for use as material in the construction works or is material which is surplus to the requirements of the construction works;

“topsoil” means a varying depth (up to 300 mm) of the soil profile irrespective of the fertility, appearance, structure, agricultural potential, fertility and composition of the soil; and

“works” means the works to be executed in terms of the Contract

## 2. ACRONYMS and ABBREVIATIONS

CA	Competent Authority
cEO	Contractors Environmental Officer
dEO	Developer Environmental Officer
DPM	Developer Project Manager
DSS	Developer Site Supervisor
EAR	Environmental Audit Report
ECA	Environmental Conservation Act No. 73 of 1989
ECO	Environmental Control Officer
EA	Environmental Authorisation
EIA	Environmental Impact Assessment
ERAP	Emergency Response Action Plan
EMPr	Environmental Management Programme Report
EAP	Environmental Assessment Practitioner
FPA	Fire Protection Agency
HCS	Hazardous chemical Substance
NEMA	National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998)
NEMBA	National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act ,2004 (Act No. 10 of 2004)
NEMWA	National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act No. 59 of 2008)
MSDS	Material Safety Data Sheet
RI&AP's	Registered interested and affected parties

### 3. ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES FOR ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME (EMPr) IMPLEMENTATION

The effective implementation of this generic EMPr is dependent on established and clear roles, responsibilities and reporting lines within an institutional framework. This section of the EMPr gives guidance to the various environmental roles and reporting lines, however, project specific requirements will ultimately determine the need for the appointment of specific person(s) to undertake specific roles and or responsibilities. As such, it must be noted that in the event that no specific person, for example, an environmental control officer (ECO) is appointed, the holder of the EA remains responsible for ensuring that the duties indicated in this document for action by the ECO are undertaken.

Table 1: *Guide to roles and responsibilities for implementation of an EMPr*

Responsible Person (s)	Role and Responsibilities
Developer's Project Manager (DPM)	<p><u>Role</u></p> <p>The Project Developer is accountable for ensuring compliance with the EMPr and any conditions of approval from the competent authority (CA). Where required, an environmental control officer (ECO) must be contracted by the Project Developer to objectively monitor the implementation of the EMPr according to relevant environmental legislation, and the conditions of the environmental authorisation (EA). The Project Developer is further responsible for providing and giving mandate to enable the ECO to perform responsibilities, and he must ensure that the ECO is integrated as part of the project team while remaining independent.</p> <p><u>Responsibilities</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Be fully conversant with the conditions of the EA;</li> <li>2. Ensure that all stipulations within the EMPr are communicated and adhered to by the Developer and its Contractor(s);</li> <li>3. Issuing of site instructions to the Contractor for corrective actions required;</li> <li>4. Monitor the implementation of the EMPr throughout the project by means of site inspections and meetings. Overall management of the project and EMPr implementation; and</li> <li>5. Ensure that periodic environmental performance audits are undertaken on the project implementation.</li> </ol>
Developer Site Supervisor (DSS)	<u>Role</u>

Responsible Person (s)	Role and Responsibilities
	<p>The DSS reports directly to the DPM, oversees site works, liaises with the contractor(s) and the ECO. The DSS is responsible for the day to day implementation of the EMPr and for ensuring the compliance of all contractors with the conditions and requirements stipulated in the EMPr.</p> <p><u>Responsibilities</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>6. Ensure that all contractors identify a contractor's Environmental Officer (cEO);</li> <li>7. Must be fully conversant with the conditions of the EA. Oversees site works, liaison with Contractor, DPM and ECO;</li> <li>8. Must ensure that all landowners have the relevant contact details of the site staff, ECO and cEO;</li> <li>9. Issuing of site instructions to the Contractor for corrective actions required;</li> <li>10. Will issue all non-compliances to contractors; and</li> <li>11. Ratify the Monthly Environmental Report.</li> </ul>
Environmental Control Officer (ECO)	<p><u>Role</u></p> <p>The ECO should have appropriate training and experience in the implementation of environmental management specifications. The primary role of the ECO is to act as an independent quality controller and monitoring agent regarding all environmental concerns and associated environmental impacts. In this respect, the ECO is to conduct periodic site inspections, attend regular site meetings, pre-empt problems and suggest mitigation and be available to advise on incidental issues that arise. The ECO is also required to conduct compliance audits, verifying the monitoring reports submitted by the cEO. The ECO provides feedback to the DSS and Project Manager regarding all environmental matters. The Contractor, cEO and dEO are answerable to the Environmental Control Officer for non-compliance with the Performance Specifications as set out in the EA and EMPr.</p> <p>The ECO provides feedback to the DSS and Project Manager, who in turn reports back to the Contractor and potential and Registered Interested &amp; Affected Parties' (RI&amp;AP's), as required. Issues of non-compliance raised by the ECO must be taken up by the Project Manager, and resolved with the Contractor as per the conditions of his contract. Decisions regarding environmental procedures, specifications and requirements which have a cost implication (i.e. those that are deemed to be a variation, not allowed for in the</p>



Responsible Person (s)	Role and Responsibilities
	<p>Performance Specification) must be endorsed by the Project Manager. The ECO must also, as specified by the EA, report to the relevant CA as and when required.</p> <p><u>Responsibilities</u></p> <p>The responsibilities of the ECO will include the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Be aware of the findings and conclusions of all EA related to the development;</li> <li>2. Be familiar with the recommendations and mitigation measures of this EMPr;</li> <li>3. Be conversant with relevant environmental legislation, policies and procedures, and ensure compliance with them;</li> <li>4. Undertake regular and comprehensive site inspections / audits of the construction site according to the generic EMPr and applicable licenses in order to monitor compliance as required;</li> <li>5. Educate the construction team about the management measures contained in the EMPr and environmental licenses;</li> <li>6. Compilation and administration of an environmental monitoring plan to ensure that the environmental management measures are implemented and are effective;</li> <li>7. Monitoring the performance of the Contractors and ensuring compliance with the EMPr and associated Method Statements;</li> <li>8. In consultation with the Developer Site Supervisor order the removal of person(s) and/or equipment which are in contravention of the specifications of the EMPr and/or environmental licenses;</li> <li>9. Liaison between the DPM, Contractors, authorities and other lead stakeholders on all environmental concerns;</li> <li>10. Compile a regular environmental audit report highlighting any non-compliance issues as well as satisfactory or exceptional compliance with the EMPr;</li> <li>11. Validating the regular site inspection reports, which are to be prepared by the contractor Environmental Officer (cEO);</li> <li>12. Checking the cEO's record of environmental incidents (spills, impacts, legal transgressions etc) as well as corrective and preventive actions taken;</li> <li>13. Checking the cEO's public complaints register in which all complaints are recorded, as well as action taken;</li> <li>14. Assisting in the resolution of conflicts;</li> <li>15. Facilitate training for all personnel on the site – this may range from carrying out the training, to reviewing the training programmes of the Contractor;</li> </ol>

Responsible Person (s)	Role and Responsibilities
	<p>16. In case of non-compliances, the ECO must first communicate this to the Senior Site Supervisor, who has the power to ensure this matter is addressed. Should no action or insufficient action be taken, the ECO may report this matter to the authorities as non-compliance;</p> <p>17. Maintenance, update and review of the EMPr;</p> <p>18. Communication of all modifications to the EMPr to the relevant stakeholders.</p>
<p>developer Environmental Officer (dEO)</p>	<p><u>Role</u></p> <p>The dEOs will report to the Project Manager and are responsible for implementation of the EMPr, environmental monitoring and reporting, providing environmental input to the Project Manager and Contractor's Manager, liaising with contractors and the landowners as well as a range of environmental coordination responsibilities.</p> <p><u>Responsibilities</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Be fully conversant with the EMPr;</li> <li>2. Be familiar with the recommendations and mitigation measures of this EMPr, and implement these measures;</li> <li>3. Ensure that all stipulations within the EMPr are communicated and adhered to by the Employees, Contractor(s) ;</li> <li>4. Confine the development site to the demarcated area;</li> <li>5. Conduct environmental internal audits with regards to EMPr and authorisation compliance (on cEO);</li> <li>6. Assist the contractors in addressing environmental challenges on site;</li> <li>7. Assist in incident management;</li> <li>8. Reporting environmental incidents to developer and ensuring that corrective action is taken, and lessons learnt shared;</li> <li>9. Assist the contractor in investigating environmental incidents and compile investigation reports;</li> <li>10. Follow-up on pre-warnings, defects, non-conformance reports;</li> <li>11. Measure and communicate environmental performance to the Contractor;</li> <li>12. Conduct environmental awareness training on site together with ECO and cEO;</li> <li>13. Ensure that the necessary legal permits and / or licenses are in place and up to date;</li> <li>14. Acting as Developer's Environmental Representative on site and work together with the ECO and contractor;</li> </ol>

Responsible Person (s)	Role and Responsibilities
Contractor	<p><u>Role</u></p> <p>The Contractor appoints the cEO and has overall responsibility for ensuring that all work, activities, and actions linked to the delivery of the contract are in line with the EMPr and that Method Statements are implemented as described. External contractors must ensure compliance with this EMPr while performing the onsite activities as per their contract with the Project Developer. The contractors are required, where specified, to provide Method Statements setting out in detail how the impact management actions contained in the EMPr will be implemented during the development or expansion for overhead electricity transmission and distribution infrastructure activities.</p> <p><u>Responsibilities</u></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. project delivery and quality control for the development services as per appointment;</li> <li>2. employ a suitably qualified person to monitor and report to the Project Developer's appointed person on the daily activities on-site during the construction period;</li> <li>3. ensure that safe, environmentally acceptable working methods and practices are implemented and that equipment is properly operated and maintained, to facilitate proper access and enable any operation to be carried out safely;</li> <li>4. attend on site meeting(s) prior to the commencement of activities to confirm the procedure and designated activity zones;</li> <li>5. ensure that contractors' staff repair, at their own cost, any environmental damage as a result of a contravention of the specifications contained in EMPr, to the satisfaction of the ECO.</li> </ol>
contractor Environmental Officer (cEO)	<p><u>Role</u></p> <p>Each Contractor affected by the EMPr should appoint a cEO, who is responsible for the on-site implementation of the EMPr (or relevant sections of the EMPr). The Contractor's representative can be the site agent; site engineer; a dedicated environmental officer; or an independent consultant. The Contractor must ensure that the Contractor's Representative is suitably qualified to perform the necessary tasks and is appointed at a level such that she/he can interact effectively with other site Contractors, labourers, the Environmental Control Officer and the public. As a minimum the cEO shall meet the following criteria:</p> <p><u>Responsibilities</u></p>

Responsible Person (s)	Role and Responsibilities
	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Be on site throughout the duration of the project and be dedicated to the project;</li> <li>2. Ensure all their staff are aware of the environmental requirements, conditions and constraints with respect to all of their activities on site;</li> <li>3. Implementing the environmental conditions, guidelines and requirements as stipulated within the EA, EMPr and Method Statements;</li> <li>4. Attend the Environmental Site Meeting;</li> <li>5. Undertaking corrective actions where non-compliances are registered within the stipulated timeframes;</li> <li>6. Report back formally on the completion of corrective actions;</li> <li>7. Assist the ECO in maintaining all the site documentation;</li> <li>8. Prepare the site inspection reports and corrective action reports for submission to the ECO;</li> <li>9. Assist the ECO with the preparing of the monthly report; and</li> <li>10. Where more than one Contractor is undertaking work on site, each company appointed as a Contractor will appoint a cEO representing that company.</li> </ol>

#### 4. ENVIRONMENTAL DOCUMENTATION REPORTING AND COMPLIANCE

To ensure accountable and demonstrated implementation of the EMPr, a number of reporting systems, documentation controls and compliance mechanisms must be in place for all overhead electricity transmission and distribution infrastructure projects as a minimum requirement.

##### Document control/Filing system

##### 1.1 Document control/Filing system

The holder of the EA is solely responsible for the upkeep and management of the EMPr file. At a minimum, all documentation detailed below will be stored in the EMPr file. A hard copy of all documentation shall be filed, while an electronic copy may be kept where relevant. A duplicate file will be maintained in the office of the DSS (where applicable). This duplicate file must remain current and up-to-date. The filing system must be updated and relevant documents added as required. The EMPr file must be made available at all times on request by the CA or other relevant authorities. The EMPr file will form part of any environmental audits undertaken as prescribed in the EIA Regulations.

##### 1. Documentation to be available

At the outset of the project the following preliminary list of documents shall be placed in the filing system and be accessible at all times:

- Full copy of the signed EA from the CA in terms of NEMA, granting approval for the development or expansion;
- Copy of the generic and site specific EMPr as well as any amendments thereof;
- Copy of declaration of implementing generic EMPr and subsequent approval of site specific EMPr and amendments thereof;
- All method statements;
- Completed environmental checklists;
- Minutes and attendance register of environmental site meetings;
- An up-to-date environmental incident log;
- A copy of all instructions or directives issued;
- A copy of all corrective actions signed off. The corrective actions must be filed in such a way that a clear reference is made to the non-compliance record;
- Complaints register.

##### 2. Weekly Environmental Checklist

The ECOs are required to complete a Weekly Environmental Checklist, the format of which is to be agreed prior to commencement of the activity. The ECOs are required to sign and date the checklist, retain a copy in the EMPr file and submit a copy of the completed checklist to the DSS on a weekly basis.

The checklists will form the basis for the Monthly Environmental Reports. Copies of all completed checklists will be attached as Annexures to the Environmental Audit Report as required in terms of the EIA Regulations.

### 3. Environmental site meetings

Minutes of the environmental site meetings shall be kept. The minutes must include an attendance register and will be attached to the Monthly Report that is distributed to attendees. Each set of minutes must clearly record "Matters for Attention" that will be reviewed at the next meeting.

### 4. Required Method Statements

The method statement will be done in such detail that the ECOs are enabled to assess whether the contractor's proposal is in accordance with the EMPr.

The method statement must cover applicable details with regard to:

1. development procedures;
2. materials and equipment to be used;
3. getting the equipment to and from site;
4. how the equipment/ material will be moved while on site;
5. how and where material will be stored;
6. the containment (or action to be taken if containment is not possible) of leaks or spills of any liquid or material that may occur;
7. timing and location of activities;
8. compliance/ non-compliance with the EMPr; and
9. any other information deemed necessary by the ECOs.

Unless indicated otherwise by the Project Manager, the Contractor shall provide the following method statements to the Project Manager no less than 14 days prior to the commencement date of the activity:

- Site establishment – Camps, Lay-down or storage areas, satellite camps, infrastructure;
- Batch plants;
- Workshop or plant servicing;
- Handling, transport and storage of Hazardous Chemical Substance's;
- Vegetation management – Protected, clearing, aliens, felling;
- Access management – Roads, gates, crossings etc.;
- Fire plan;
- Waste management – transport, storage, segregation, classification, disposal (all waste streams);
- Social interaction – complaints management, compensation claims, access to properties etc.;
- Water – use (source, abstraction and disposal), access and all related information, crossings and mitigation;
- Emergency preparedness – Spills, training, other environmental emergencies;
- Dust and noise management methodologies;
- Fauna interaction and risk management – only if the risk was identified – wildlife interaction especially on game farms; and
- Heritage and palaeontology management.



The ECOs shall monitor and ensure that the contractors perform in accordance with these method statements. Completed and agreed method statements between the holder of the EA and the contractor shall be captured in Appendix 1.

## 5. Environmental Incident Log (Diary)

The ECOs are required to maintain an up-to-date and current Environmental Incident Log (environmental diary). The Environmental Incident Log is a means to record all environmental incidents and/or all non-compliance notice would not be issued. An environmental incident is defined as:

- Any deviation from the listed impact management actions (listed in this EMPr) that may be addressed immediately by the ECOs. (For example a contractor's staff member littering or a drip tray that has not been emptied);
- Any environmental impact resulting from an action or activity by a contractor in contravention of the environmental stipulations and guidelines listed in the EMPr which as a single event would have a minor impact but which if cumulative and continuous would have a significant effect (for example no toilet paper available in the ablutions for an afternoon); and
- General environmental information such as road kills or injured wildlife.

The ECOs are to record all environmental incidents in the Environmental Incident Log. All incidents regardless of severity must be reported to the Developer. The Log is to be kept in the EMPr file and at a minimum the following will be recorded for each environmental incident:

- The date and time of the incident;
- Description of the incident;
- The name of the Contractor responsible;
- The incident must be listed as significant or minor;
- If the incident is listed as significant, a non-compliance notice must be issued, and recorded in the log;
- Remedial or corrective action taken to mitigate the incident; and
- Record of repeat minor offences by the same contractor or staff member.

The Environmental Incident Log will be captured in the EAR.

## 6. Non-compliance

A non-compliance notice will be issued to the responsible contractor by the ECOs via the DSS or Project Manager. The non-compliance notice will be issued in writing; a copy filed in the EMPr file and will at a minimum include the following:

- Time and date of the non-compliance;
- Name of the contractor responsible;
- Nature and description of the non-compliance;
- Recommended / required corrective action; and
- Date by which the corrective action to be completed.
- The contractors shall act immediately when a notice of non-compliance is received and correct whatever is the cause for the issuing of the notice. Complaints received regarding activities on the development site pertaining to the environment shall be

recorded in a dedicated register and the response noted with the date and action taken. The ECO should be made aware of any complaints. Any non-compliance with the agreed procedures of the EMPr is a transgression of the various statutes and laws that define the manner by which the environment is managed. Failure to redress the cause shall be reported to the relevant CA for them to deal with the transgression, as it deems fit. The contractor is deemed not to have complied with the EMPr if, inter alia, There is a deviation from the environmental conditions, impact management outcomes and impact management actions , as approved in generic and site specific EMPr as relevant as set out in the EMPr, which deviation has, or may cause, an environmental impact.

#### 7. Corrective action records

For each non-compliance notice issued, a documented corrective action must be recorded. On receiving a non-compliance notice from the DSS, the contractor's CEO will ensure that the corrective actions required take place within the stipulated timeframe. On completion of the corrective action the CEO is to issue a Corrective Action Report in writing to the ECOs. If satisfied that the corrective action has been completed, the ECOs are to sign-off on the Corrective Action Report, and attach the report to the non-compliance notice in the EMPr file. A corrective action is considered complete once the report has signed off by the ECOs.

#### 8. Photographic record

A digital photographic record will be kept. The photographic record will be used to show before, during and post rehabilitation evidence of the project as well used in cases of damages claims if they arise. Each image must be dated and a brief description note attached.

The Contractor shall:

- Allow the ECOs access to take photographs of all areas, activities and actions.

The ECOs shall keep an electronic database of photographic records which will include:

- Pictures of all areas designated as work areas, camp areas, development sites and storage areas taken before these areas are set up;
- All bunding and fencing;
- Road conditions and road verges;
- Condition of all farm fences;
- Topsoil storage areas;
- All areas to be cordoned off during construction;
- Waste management sites;
- Ablution facilities (inside and out);
- Any non-conformances deemed to be "significant";
- All completed corrective actions for non-compliances;
- All required signage;
- Photographic recordings of incidents;
- All areas before, during and post rehabilitation; and
- Include relevant photographs in the Final Environmental Audit Report.

9. Complaints register

The ECOs shall keep a current and up-to-date complaints register. The complaints register is to be a record of all complaints received from communities, stakeholders and individuals. The Complaints Record shall:

1. Record the name and contact details of the complainant;
2. Record the time and date of the complaint;
3. Contain a detailed description of the complaint;
4. Where relevant and appropriate, contain photographic evidence of the complaint or damage (ECOs to take relevant photographs); and
5. Contain a copy of the ECOs written response to each complaint received and keep a record of any further correspondence with the complainant. The ECO's written response will include a description of any corrective action to be taken and must be signed by the Contractor, ECO and affected party. Where a damage claim is issued by the complainant, the ECOs shall respond as described in (section 4.11) below.

10. Claims for damages

In the event that a Claim for Damages is submitted by a community, landowner or individual, the ECOs shall:

1. Record the full detail of the complaint as described in (section 4.10) above;
2. The DPM will evaluate the claim and associated damage and submit the evaluation to the Senior Site Representative for approval;
3. Following consideration by the DPM, the claim is to be resolved and settled immediately, or the reason for not accepting the claim communicated in writing to the claimant. Should the claimant not accept this, the ECO shall, in writing report the incident to the Developer's negotiator and legal department; and
4. A formal record of the response by the ECOs to the claimant as well as the rectification of the method of making payments not amount will be recorded in the EMPr file.

1. Interactions with affected parties

Open, transparent and good relations with affected landowners, communities and regional staff are an essential aspect to the successful management and mitigation of environmental impacts.

The ECOs shall:

1. Ensure that all queries, complaints and claims are dealt within an agreed timeframe;
2. Ensure that any or all agreements are documented, signed by all parties and a record of the agreement kept in the EMPr file;
3. Ensure that a complaints telephone numbers are made available to all landowners and affected parties; and
4. Ensure that contact with affected parties is courteous at all times;

## 1. Environmental audits

Internal environmental audits of the activity and implementation of the EMPr must be undertaken. The findings and outcomes must be included in the EMPr file and be submitted to the CA at intervals as indicated in the EA.

An Environmental Audit Report must be prepared monthly. The report will be tabled as the key point on the agenda of the Environmental Site Meeting. The Report is submitted for acceptance at the meeting and the final report will be circulated to the Project Manager and filed in the EMPr file. At a frequency determined by the EA, the ECOs shall submit the monthly reports to the CA. At a minimum the monthly report is to cover the following:

- Weekly Environmental Checklists;
- Deviations and non-compliances with the checklists;
- Non-compliances issued;
- Completed and reported corrective actions;
- Environmental Monitoring;
- General environmental findings and actions; and
- Minutes of the Bi-monthly Environmental Site Meetings.

## 2. Final environmental audits

On final completion of the rehabilitation and/or requirements of the EA a final EAR is to be prepared and submitted to the CA. The EAR must comply with Appendix 7 of the EIA Regulations.

PART B: SECTION 1: Pre-approved generic EMPr template

5. IMPACT MANAGEMENT OUTCOMES AND IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS

This section provides a pre-approved generic EMPr template with aspects that are common to the development of overhead electricity transmission and distribution infrastructure. There is a list of aspects identified for the development or expansion of overhead electricity transmission and distribution infrastructure, and for each aspect a set of prescribed impact management outcomes and associated impact management actions have been identified. Holders of EAs are responsible to ensure the implementation of these outcomes and actions for all projects as a minimum requirement, in order to mitigate the impact of such aspects identified for the development or expansion of overhead electricity transmission and distribution infrastructure.

The template provided below is to be completed by providing the information under each heading for each environmental impact management action.

The completed template must be signed and dated on each page by both the contractor and the holder of the EA prior to commencement of the activity. The method statements prepared and agreed to by the holder of the EA must be appended to the template as Appendix 1. Each method statement must also be duly signed and dated on each page by the contractor and the holder of the EA. This template, once signed and dated, is legally binding. The holder of the EA will remain responsible for its implementation.

### 5.1 Environmental awareness training

Impact management outcome: All onsite staff are aware and understands the individual responsibilities in terms of this EMP.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<p>6. All staff must receive environmental awareness training prior to commencement of the activities;</p> <p>7. The Contractor must allow for sufficient sessions to train all personnel with no more than 20 personnel attending each course;</p> <p>8. Refresher environmental awareness training is available as and when required;</p> <p>9. All staff are aware of the conditions and controls linked to the EA and within the EMP and made aware of their individual roles and responsibilities in achieving compliance with the EA and EMP;</p> <p>10. The Contractor must erect and maintain information posters at key locations on site, and the posters must include the following information as a minimum:</p> <p>a) Safety notifications; and</p> <p>b) No littering.</p> <p>11. Environmental awareness training must include as a minimum the following:</p> <p>a) Description of significant environmental impacts, actual or potential, related to their work activities;</p> <p>b) Mitigation measures to be implemented when carrying out specific activities;</p>						

c) Emergency preparedness and response procedures; d) Emergency procedures; e) Procedures to be followed when working near or within sensitive areas; f) Wastewater management procedures; g) Water usage and conservation; h) Solid waste management procedures; i) Sanitation procedures; j) Fire prevention; and k) Disease prevention.						
1. A record of all environmental awareness training courses undertaken as part of the EMP must be available; 2. Educate workers on the dangers of open and/or unattended fires; 3. A staff attendance register of all staff to have received environmental awareness training must be available. 4. Course material must be available and presented in appropriate languages that all staff can understand.						

1. *Site Establishment development*

Impact management outcome: Impacts on the environment are minimised during site establishment and the development footprint are kept to demarcated development area.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance



<p>5. A method statement must be provided by the contractor prior to any onsite activity that includes the layout of the construction camp in the form of a plan showing the location of key infrastructure and services (where applicable), including but not limited to offices, overnight vehicle parking areas, stores, the workshop, stockpile and lay down areas, hazardous materials storage areas (including fuels), the batching plant (if one is located at the construction camp), designated access routes, equipment cleaning areas and the placement of staff accommodation, cooking and ablution facilities, waste and wastewater management;</p> <p>6. Location of camps must be within approved area to ensure that the site does not impact on sensitive areas identified in the environmental assessment or site walk through;</p> <p>7. Sites must be located where possible on previously disturbed areas;</p> <p>8. The camp must be fenced in accordance with <i>Section 5.5: Fencing and gate installation</i>; and</p> <p>9. The use of existing accommodation for contractor staff, where possible, is encouraged.</p>						
--	--	--	--	--	--	--

## 2. Access restricted areas

Impact management outcome: Access to restricted areas prevented.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance

10.	Identification of access restricted areas is to be informed by the environmental assessment, site walk through and any additional areas identified during development;						
11.	Erect, demarcate and maintain a temporary barrier with clear signage around the perimeter of any access restricted area, colour coding could be used if appropriate; and						
12.	Unauthorised access and development related activity inside access restricted areas is prohibited.						

### 3. Access roads

Impact management outcome: Minimise impact to the environment through the planned and restricted movement of vehicles on site.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
13. Access to the servitude and tower positions must be negotiated with the relevant landowner and must fall within the assessed and authorised area;						
14. An access agreement must be formalised and signed by the DPM, Contractor and landowner before commencing with the activities;						
15. The access roads to tower positions must be signposted after access has been negotiated and before the commencement of the activities;						

16.	All private roads used for access to the servitude must be maintained and upon completion of the works, be left in at least the original condition						
17.	All contractors must be made aware of all these access routes.						
18.	Any access route deviation from that in the written agreement must be closed and re-vegetated immediately, at the contractor's expense;						
19.	Maximum use of both existing servitudes and existing roads must be made to minimize further disturbance through the development of new roads;						
20.	In circumstances where private roads must be used, the condition of the said roads must be recorded in accordance with <i>section 4.9: photographic record</i> ; prior to use and the condition thereof agreed by the landowner, the DPM, and the contractor;						
21.	Access roads in flattish areas must follow fence lines and tree belts to avoid fragmentation of vegetated areas or croplands						
22.	Access roads must only be developed on pre-planned and approved roads.						

#### 4. Fencing and Gate installation

Impact management outcome: Minimise impact to the environment and ensure safe and controlled access to the site through the erection of fencing and gates where required.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation	Monitoring
---------------------------	----------------	------------

	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
23. Use existing gates provided to gain access to all parts of the area authorised for development, where possible;						
24. Existing and new gates to be recorded and documented in accordance with section 4.9: <i>photographic record</i> ;						
25. All gates must be fitted with locks and be kept locked at all times during the development phase, unless otherwise agreed with the landowner;						
26. At points where the line crosses a fence in which there is no suitable gate within the extent of the line servitude, on the instruction of the DPM, a gate must be installed at the approval of the landowner;						
27. Care must be taken that the gates must be so erected that there is a gap of no more than 100 mm between the bottom of the gate and the ground;						
28. Where gates are installed in jackal proof fencing, a suitable reinforced concrete sill must be provided beneath the gate;						
29. Original tension must be maintained in the fence wires;						
30. All gates installed in electrified fencing must be re-electrified;						
31. All demarcation fencing and barriers must be maintained in good working order for the duration of overhead transmission and distribution electricity infrastructure development activities;						
32. Fencing must be erected around the camp, batching plants, hazardous storage areas, and all designated access restricted areas, where appropriate and would not cause harm to the sensitive flora;						

33.	Any temporary fencing to restrict the movement of life-stock must only be erected with the permission of the land owner.						
34.	All fencing must be developed of high quality material bearing the SABS mark;						
35.	The use of razor wire as fencing must be avoided;						
36.	Fenced areas with gate access must remain locked after hours, during weekends and on holidays if staff is away from site. Site security will be required at all times;						
37.	On completion of the development phase all temporary fences are to be removed;						
38.	The contractor must ensure that all fence uprights are appropriately removed, ensuring that no uprights are cut at ground level but rather removed completely.						

#### 5. Water Supply Management

Impact management outcome: Undertake responsible water usage.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
39. All abstraction points or bore holes must be registered with the DWS and suitable water meters installed to ensure that the abstracted volumes are measured on a daily basis;						
40. The Contractor must ensure the following: a. The vehicle abstracting water from a river does not enter or cross it and does not operate from within the river;						

<div>b. No damage occurs to the river bed or banks and that the abstraction of water does not entail stream diversion activities; and</div> <div>c. All reasonable measures to limit pollution or sedimentation of the downstream watercourse are implemented.</div> <div>41. Ensure water conservation is being practiced by:</div> <div>a. Minimising water use during cleaning of equipment;</div> <div>b. Undertaking regular audits of water systems; and</div> <div>c. Including a discussion on water usage and conservation during environmental awareness training.</div> <div>d. The use of grey water is encouraged.</div>						
---	--	--	--	--	--	--

6. Storm and waste water management

Impact management outcome: Impacts to the environment caused by storm water and wastewater discharges during construction are avoided.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
42. Runoff from the cement/ concrete batching areas must be strictly controlled, and contaminated water must be collected, stored and either treated or disposed of off-site, at a location approved by the project manager;						
43. All spillage of oil onto concrete surfaces must be controlled by the use of an approved absorbent material and the used absorbent material disposed of at an appropriate waste disposal facility;						
44. Natural storm water runoff not contaminated during the development and clean water can be discharged directly to watercourses and water bodies, subject to the Project Manager's approval and support by the ECO;						
45. Water that has been contaminated with suspended solids, such as soils and silt, may be released into watercourses or water bodies only once all suspended solids have been removed from the water by settling out these solids in settlement ponds. The release of settled water back into the environment must be subject to the Project Manager's approval and support by the ECO.						



7. *Solid and hazardous waste management*

Impact management outcome: Waste is appropriately stored, handled and safely disposed of at a recognised waste facility.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
46. All measures regarding waste management must be undertaken using an integrated waste management approach;						
47. Sufficient, covered waste collection bins (scavenger and weatherproof) must be provided;						
48. A suitably positioned and clearly demarcated waste collection site must be identified and provided;						
49. The waste collection site must be maintained in a clean and orderly manner;						
50. Waste must be segregated into separate bins and clearly marked for each waste type for recycling and safe disposal;						
51. Staff must be trained in waste segregation;						
52. Bins must be emptied regularly;						
53. General waste produced onsite must be disposed of at registered waste disposal sites/ recycling company;						
54. Hazardous waste must be disposed of at a registered waste disposal site;						
55. Certificates of safe disposal for general, hazardous and recycled waste must be maintained.						

8. *Protection of watercourses and estuaries*

Impact management outcome: Pollution and contamination of the watercourse environment and or estuary erosion are prevented.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
56. All watercourses must be protected from direct or indirect spills of pollutants such as solid waste, sewage, cement, oils, fuels, chemicals, aggregate tailings, wash and contaminated water or organic material resulting from the Contractor's activities;						
57. In the event of a spill, prompt action must be taken to clear the polluted or affected areas;						
58. Where possible, no development equipment must traverse any seasonal or permanent wetland						
59. No return flow into the estuaries must be allowed and no disturbance of the Estuarine Functional Zone should occur;						
60. Development of permanent watercourse or estuary crossing must only be undertaken where no alternative access to tower position is available;						
61. There must not be any impact on the long term morphological dynamics of watercourses or estuaries;						
62. Existing crossing points must be favored over the creation of new crossings (including temporary access)						
63. When working in or near any watercourse or estuary, the following environmental controls and consideration must be taken: a) Water levels during the period of construction;						

<p>No altering of the bed, banks, course or characteristics of a watercourse</p> <p>b) During the execution of the works, appropriate measures to prevent pollution and contamination of the riparian environment must be implemented e.g. including ensuring that construction equipment is well maintained;</p> <p>c) Where earthwork is being undertaken in close proximity to any watercourse, slopes must be stabilised using suitable materials, i.e. sandbags or geotextile fabric, to prevent sand and rock from entering the channel; and</p> <p>d) Appropriate rehabilitation and re-vegetation measures for the watercourse banks must be implemented timeously. In this regard, the banks should be appropriately and incrementally stabilised as soon as development allows.</p>						
---	--	--	--	--	--	--

#### 9. *Vegetation clearing*

Impact management outcome: Vegetation clearing is restricted to the authorised development footprint of the proposed infrastructure.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
General:						
64. Indigenous vegetation which does not interfere with the development must be left undisturbed;						

65.	Protected or endangered species may occur on or near the development site. Special care should be taken not to damage such species;						
66.	Search, rescue and replanting of all protected and endangered species likely to be damaged during project development must be identified by the relevant specialist and completed prior to any development or clearing;						
67.	Permits for removal must be obtained from the Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries prior to the cutting or clearing of the affected species, and they must be filed;						
68.	The Environmental Audit Report must confirm that all identified species have been rescued and replanted and that the location of replanting is compliant with conditions of approvals;						
69.	Trees felled due to construction must be documented and form part of the Environmental Audit Report;						
70.	Rivers and watercourses must be kept clear of felled trees, vegetation cuttings and debris;						
71.	Only a registered pest control operator may apply herbicides on a commercial basis and commercial application must be carried out under the supervision of a registered pest control operator, supervision of a registered pest control operator or is appropriately trained;						
72.	A daily register must be kept of all relevant details of herbicide usage;						
73.	No herbicides must be used in estuaries;						
74.	All protected species and sensitive vegetation not removed must be clearly marked and such areas fenced off in accordance to <i>Section 5.3: Access restricted areas</i> .						
Servitude:							

75.	Vegetation that does not grow high enough to cause interference with overhead transmission and distribution infrastructures, or cause a fire hazard to any plantation, must not be cut or trimmed unless it is growing in the road access area, and then only at the discretion of the Project Manager;						
76.	Where clearing for access purposes is essential, the maximum width to be cleared within the servitude must be in accordance to distance as agreed between the land owner and the EA holder						
77.	Alien invasive vegetation must be removed according to a plan (in line with relevant municipal and provincial procedures, guidelines and recommendations) and disposed of at a recognised waste disposal facility;						
78.	Vegetation must be trimmed where it is likely to intrude on the minimum vegetation clearance distance (MVCD) or will intrude on this distance before the next scheduled clearance. MVCD is determined from SANS 10280;						
79.	Debris resulting from clearing and pruning must be disposed of at a recognised waste disposal facility, unless the landowners wish to retain the cut vegetation;						
80.	In the case of the development of new overhead transmission and distribution infrastructures, a one metre "trace-line" must be cut through the vegetation for stringing purposes only and no vehicle access must be cleared along the "trace-line". Alternative methods of stringing which limit impact to the environment must always be considered.						

10. *Protection of fauna*

Impact management outcome: Minimise disturbance to fauna.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
81. No interference with livestock must occur without the landowner's written consent and with the landowner or a person representing the landowner being present;						
82. The breeding sites of raptors and other wild birds species must be taken into consideration during the planning of the development programme;						
83. Breeding sites must be kept intact and disturbance to breeding birds must be avoided. Special care must be taken where nestlings or fledglings are present;						
84. Nesting sites on existing parallel lines must be documented;						
85. Special recommendations of the avian specialist must be adhered to at all times to prevent unnecessary disturbance of birds;						
86. Bird guards and diverters must be installed on the new line as per the recommendations of the specialist;						
87. No poaching must be tolerated under any circumstances. All animal dens in close proximity to the works areas must be marked as Access restricted areas;						
88. No deliberate or intentional killing of fauna is allowed;						
89. In areas where snakes are abundant, snake deterrents to be deployed on the pylons to prevent snakes climbing up, being electrocuted and causing power outages; and						
90. No Threatened or Protected species (ToPs) and/or protected fauna as listed according NEMBA (Act No. 10 of						

2004) and relevant provincial ordinances may be removed and/or relocated without appropriate authorisations/permits.						
--	--	--	--	--	--	--

#### 11. Protection of heritage resources

Impact management outcome: Minimise impact to heritage resources.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
91. Identify, demarcate and prevent impact to all known sensitive heritage features on site in accordance with the No-Go procedure in <i>Section 5.3: Access restricted areas</i> ;						
92. Carry out general monitoring of excavations for potential fossils, artefacts and material of heritage importance;						
93. All work must cease immediately, if any human remains and/or other archaeological, palaeontological and historical material are uncovered. Such material, if exposed, must be reported to the nearest museum, archaeologist/ palaeontologist (or the South African Police Services), so that a systematic and professional investigation can be undertaken. Sufficient time must be allowed to remove/collect such material before development recommences.						



## 12. Safety of the public

Impact management outcome: All precautions are taken to minimise the risk of injury, harm or complaints.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
94. Identify fire hazards, demarcate and restrict public access to these areas as well as notify the local authority of any potential threats e.g. large brush stockpiles, fuels etc.;						
95. All unattended open excavations must be adequately fenced or demarcated;						
96. Adequate protective measures must be implemented to prevent unauthorised access to and climbing of partly constructed towers and protective scaffolding;						
97. Ensure structures vulnerable to high winds are secured;						
98. Maintain an incidents and complaints register in which all incidents or complaints involving the public are logged.						

## 13. Sanitation

Impact management outcome: Clean and well maintained toilet facilities are available to all staff in an effort to minimise the risk of disease and impact to the environment.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance

99.	Mobile chemical toilets are installed onsite if no other ablution facilities are available;						
100.	The use of ablution facilities and or mobile toilets must be used at all times and no indiscriminate use of the veld for the purposes of ablutions must be permitted under any circumstances;						
101.	Where mobile chemical toilets are required, the following must be ensured: a) Toilets are located no closer than 100 m to any watercourse or water body; b) Toilets are secured to the ground to prevent them from toppling due to wind or any other cause; c) No spillage occurs when the toilets are cleaned or emptied and the contents are managed in accordance with the EMPr; d) Toilets have an external closing mechanism and are closed and secured from the outside when not in use to prevent toilet paper from being blown out; e) Toilets are emptied before long weekends and workers holidays, and must be locked after working hours; f) Toilets are serviced regularly and the ECO must inspect toilets to ensure compliance to health standards;						
102.	A copy of the waste disposal certificates must be maintained.						

#### 14. Prevention of disease

Impact Management outcome: All necessary precautions linked to the spread of disease are taken.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
103. Undertake environmentally-friendly pest control in the camp area;						
104. Ensure that the workforce is sensitised to the effects of sexually transmitted diseases, especially HIV AIDS;						
105. The Contractor must ensure that information posters on AIDS are displayed in the Contractor Camp area;						
106. Information and education relating to sexually transmitted diseases to be made available to both construction workers and local community, where applicable;						
107. Free condoms must be made available to all staff on site at central points;						
108. Medical support must be made available;						
109. Provide access to Voluntary HIV Testing and Counselling Services.						

#### 15. Emergency procedures

Impact management outcome: Emergency procedures are in place to enable a rapid and effective response to all types of environmental emergencies.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
110. Compile an Emergency Response Action Plan (ERAP) prior to the commencement of the proposed project;						
111. The Emergency Plan must deal with accidents, potential spillages and fires in line with relevant legislation;						
112. All staff must be made aware of emergency procedures as part of environmental awareness training;						
113. The relevant local authority must be made aware of a fire as soon as it starts;						
114. In the event of emergency necessary mitigation measures to contain the spill or leak must be implemented (see <i>Hazardous Substances section 5.17</i> ).						

#### 16. Hazardous substances

Impact management outcome: Safe storage, handling, use and disposal of hazardous substances.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance

115.	The use and storage of hazardous substances to be minimised and non-hazardous and non-toxic alternatives substituted where possible;					
116.	All hazardous substances must be stored in suitable containers as defined in the Method Statement;					
117.	Containers must be clearly marked to indicate contents, quantities and safety requirements;					
118.	All storage areas must be bunded. The bunded area must be of sufficient capacity to contain a spill / leak from the stored containers;					
119.	Bunded areas to be suitably lined with a SABS approved liner;					
120.	An Alphabetical Hazardous Chemical Substance (HCS) control sheet must be drawn up and kept up to date on a continuous basis;					
121.	All hazardous chemicals that will be used on site must have Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS);					
122.	All employees working with HCS must be trained in the safe use of the substance and according to the safety data sheet;					
123.	Employees handling hazardous substances / materials must be aware of the potential impacts and follow appropriate safety measures. Appropriate personal protective equipment must be made available;					
124.	The Contractor must ensure that diesel and other liquid fuel, oil and hydraulic fluid is stored in appropriate storage tanks or in bowzers;					
125.	The tanks/ bowzers must be situated on a smooth impermeable surface (concrete) with a permanent bund. The impermeable lining must extend to the crest of the bund and the volume inside the bund must be 130% of the					

126.	total capacity of all the storage tanks/ bowsters (110% statutory requirement plus an allowance for rainfall); The floor of the bund must be sloped, draining to an oil separator;					
127.	Provision must be made for refueling at the storage area by protecting the soil with an impermeable groundcover. Where dispensing equipment is used, a drip tray must be used to ensure small spills are contained;					
128.	All empty externally dirty drums must be stored on a drip tray or within a bunded area;					
129.	No unauthorised access into the hazardous substances storage areas must be permitted;					
130.	No smoking must be allowed within the vicinity of the hazardous storage areas;					
131.	Adequate fire-fighting equipment must be made available at all hazardous storage areas;					
132.	Where refueling away from the dedicated refueling station is required, a mobile refueling unit must be used. Appropriate ground protection such as drip trays must be used;					
133.	An appropriately sized spill kit kept onsite relevant to the scale of the activity/s involving the use of hazardous substance must be available at all times;					
134.	The responsible operator must have the required training to make use of the spill kit in emergency situations;					
135.	An appropriate number of spill kits must be available and must be located in all areas where activities are being undertaken;					
136.	In the event of a spill, contaminated soil must be collected in containers and stored in a central location and disposed of according to the National Environmental Management:					

Waste Act 59 of 2008. Refer to <i>Section 5.7</i> for procedures concerning <i>storm and waste water management</i> and <i>5.8</i> for <i>solid and hazardous waste management</i> .						
--	--	--	--	--	--	--

17. *Workshop, equipment maintenance and storage*

Impact management outcome: Soil, surface water and groundwater contamination is minimised.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
137. Where possible and practical all maintenance of vehicles and equipment must take place in the workshop area;						
138. During servicing of vehicles or equipment, especially where emergency repairs are effected outside the workshop area, a suitable drip tray must be used to prevent spills onto the soil. The relevant local authority must be made aware of a fire as soon as it starts;						
139. Leaking equipment must be repaired immediately or be removed from site to facilitate repair;						
140. Workshop areas must be monitored for oil and fuel spills;						
141. Appropriately sized spill kit kept onsite relevant to the scale of the activity taking place must be available;						
142. The workshop area must have a bunded concrete slab that is sloped to facilitate runoff into a collection sump or suitable oil / water separator where maintenance work on vehicles and equipment can be performed;						



143.	Water drainage from the workshop must be contained and managed in accordance <i>Section 5.7: storm and waste water management.</i>						
------	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

18. *Batching plants*

Impact management outcome: Minimise spillages and contamination of soil, surface water and groundwater.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
144. Concrete mixing must be carried out on an impermeable surface;						
145. Batching plants areas must be fitted with a containment facility for the collection of cement laden water.						
146. Dirty water from the batching plant must be contained to prevent soil and groundwater contamination						
147. Bagged cement must be stored in an appropriate facility and at least 10 m away from any water courses, gullies and drains;						
148. A washout facility must be provided for washing of concrete associated equipment. Water used for washing must be restricted;						
149. Hardened concrete from the washout facility or concrete mixer can either be reused or disposed of at an appropriate licenced disposal facility;						
150. Empty cement bags must be secured with adequate binding material if these will be temporarily stored on site;						
151. Sand and aggregates containing cement must be kept damp to prevent the generation of dust (Refer to <i>Section 5.20: Dust emissions</i> )						
152. Any excess sand, stone and cement must be removed or reused from site on completion of construction period and disposed at a registered disposal facility;						

153. Temporary fencing must be erected around batching plants in accordance with <i>Section 5.5: Fencing and gate installation</i> .						
--	--	--	--	--	--	--

19. Dust emissions

Impact management outcome: Dust prevention measures are applied to minimise the generation of dust.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
154. Take all reasonable measures to minimise the generation of dust as a result of project development activities to the satisfaction of the ECO;						
155. Removal of vegetation must be avoided until such time as soil stripping is required and similarly exposed surfaces must be re- vegetated or stabilised as soon as is practically possible;						
156. Excavation, handling and transport of erodible materials must be avoided under high wind conditions or when a visible dust plume is present;						
157. During high wind conditions, the ECO must evaluate the situation and make recommendations as to whether dust-damping measures are adequate, or whether working will cease altogether until the wind speed drops to an acceptable level;						

158.	Where possible, soil stockpiles must be located in sheltered areas where they are not exposed to the erosive effects of the wind;					
159.	Where erosion of stockpiles becomes a problem, erosion control measures must be implemented at the discretion of the ECO;					
160.	Vehicle speeds must not exceed 40 km/h along dust roads or 20 km/h when traversing unconsolidated and non-vegetated areas;					
161.	Straw stabilisation must be applied at a rate of one bale/10 m <sup>2</sup> and harrowed into the top 100 mm of top material, for all completed earthworks;					
162.	For significant areas of excavation or exposed ground, dust suppression measures must be used to minimise the spread of dust.					

## 20. Blasting

Impact management outcome: Impact to the environment is minimised through a safe blasting practice.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
163. Any blasting activity must be conducted by a suitably licensed blasting contractor; and						
164. Notification of surrounding landowners, emergency services site personnel of blasting activity 24 hours prior to such activity taking place on Site.						

21. Noise

Impact Management outcome: Unnecessary noise is prevented by ensuring that noise from construction activities is mitigated.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
165. The Contractor must keep noise level within acceptable limits, Restrict the use of sound amplification equipment for communication and emergency only;						
166. All vehicles and machinery must be fitted with appropriate silencing technology and must be properly maintained;						
167. Any complaints received by the Contractor regarding noise must be recorded and communicated. Where possible or applicable, provide transport to and from the site on a daily basis for construction workers;						
168. Develop a Code of Conduct for the construction phase in terms of behaviour of construction staff. Operating hours as determined by the environmental authorisation are adhered to during the development phase. Where not defined, it must be ensured that development activities must still meet the impact management outcome related to noise management.						

22. Fire prevention

Impact management outcome: Prevention of uncontrollable fires.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation	Monitoring
---------------------------	----------------	------------

	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
169. Designate smoking areas where the fire hazard could be regarded as insignificant;						
170. Firefighting equipment must be available on all vehicles located on site;						
171. The local Fire Protection Agency (FPA) must be informed of construction activities;						
172. Contact numbers for the FPA and emergency services must be communicated in environmental awareness training and displayed at a central location on site;						
173. Two way swap of contact details between ECO and FPA.						

### 23. Stockpiling and stockpile areas

Impact management outcome: Erosion and sedimentation as a result of stockpiling are reduced.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
174. All material that is excavated during the project development phase (either during piling (if required) or earthworks) must be stored appropriately on site in order to minimise impacts to watercourses, watercourses and water bodies;						
175. All stockpiled material must be maintained and kept clear of weeds and alien vegetation growth by undertaking regular weeding and control methods;						

176.	Topsoil stockpiles must not exceed 2 m in height;						
177.	During periods of strong winds and heavy rain, the stockpiles must be covered with appropriate material (e.g. cloth, tarpaulin etc.);						
178.	Where possible, sandbags (or similar) must be placed at the bases of the stockpiled material in order to prevent erosion of the material.						



24. *Finalising tower positions*

Impact management outcome: No environmental degradation occurs as a result of the survey and pegging operations.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
179. No vegetation clearing must occur during survey and pegging operations;						
180. No new access roads must be developed to facilitate access for survey and pegging purposes;						
181. Project manager, botanical specialist and contractor to agree on final tower positions based on survey within assessed and approved areas;						
182. The surveyor is to demarcate (peg) access roads/tracks in consultation with ECO. No deviations will be allowed without the prior written consent from the ECO.						

25. *Excavation and Installation of foundations*

Impact management outcome: No environmental degradation occurs as a result of excavation or installation of foundations.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance

183.	All excess spoil generated during foundation excavation must be disposed of in an appropriate manner and at a recognised disposal site, if not used for backfilling purposes;					
184.	Spoil can however be used for landscaping purposes and must be covered with a layer of 150 mm topsoil for rehabilitation purposes;					
185.	Management of equipment for excavation purposes must be undertaken in accordance with <i>Section 5.18: Workshop equipment maintenance and storage</i> ; and					
186.	Hazardous substances spills from equipment must be managed in accordance with <i>Section 5.17: Hazardous substances</i> .					
187.	Batching of cement to be undertaken in accordance with <i>Section 5.19 : Batching plants</i> ;					
188.	Residual cement must be disposed of in accordance with <i>Section 5.8: Solid and hazardous waste management</i> .					

## 26. Assembly and erecting towers

Impact management outcome: No environmental degradation occurs as a result of assembly and erecting of towers.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
189. Prior to erection, assembled towers and tower sections must be stored on elevated surface (suggest wooden blocks) to minimise damage to the underlying vegetation;						
190. In sensitive areas, tower assembly must take place off-site or away from sensitive positions;						

191.	The crane used for tower assembly must be operated in a manner which minimises impact to the environment;						
192.	The number of crane trips to each site must be minimised;						
193.	Wheeled cranes must be utilised in preference to tracked cranes;						
194.	Consideration must be given to erecting towers by helicopter or by hand where it is warranted to limit the extent of environmental impact;						
195.	Access to tower positions to be undertaken in accordance with access requirements in specified in Section 8.4: Access Roads;						
196.	Vegetation clearance to be undertaken in accordance with general vegetation clearance requirements specified in Section 8.10: Vegetation clearing;						
197.	No levelling at tower sites must be permitted unless approved by the Development Project Manager or Developer Site Supervisor;						
198.	Topsoil must be removed separately from subsoil material and stored for later use during rehabilitation of such tower sites;						
199.	Topsoil must be stored in heaps not higher than 1m to prevent destruction of the seed bank within the topsoil;						
200.	Excavated slopes must be no greater than 1:3, but where this is unavoidable, appropriate measures must be undertaken to stabilise the slopes;						
201.	Fly rock from blasting activity must be minimised and any pieces greater than 150 mm falling beyond the Working Area, must be collected and removed;						
202.	Only existing disturbed areas are utilised as spoil areas;						

203.	Drainage is provided to control groundwater exit gradient with the spill areas such that migration of fines is kept to a minimum;					
204.	Surface water runoff is appropriately channeled through or around spoil areas;					
205.	During backfilling operations, care must be taken not to dump the topsoil at the bottom of the foundation and then put spoil on top of that;					
206.	The surface of the spoil is appropriately rehabilitated in accordance with the requirements specified in Section 5.29: Landscaping and rehabilitation;					
207.	The retained topsoil must be spread evenly over areas to be rehabilitated and suitably compacted to effect re-vegetation of such areas to prevent erosion as soon as construction activities on the site is complete. Spreading of topsoil must not be undertaken at the beginning of the dry season.					

## 27. Stringing

Impact management outcome: No environmental degradation occurs as a result of stringing.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
208. Where possible, previously disturbed areas must be used for the siting of winch and tensioner stations. In all other						

209.	instances, the siting of the winch and tensioner must avoid Access restricted areas and other sensitive areas; The winch and tensioner station must be equipped with drip trays in order to contain any fuel, hydraulic fuel or oil spills and leaks;						
210.	Refueling of the winch and tensioner stations must be undertaken in accordance with Section 5.17: Hazardous substances;						
211.	In the case of the development of overhead transmission and distribution infrastructure, a one metre "trace-line" may be cut through the vegetation for stringing purposes only and no vehicle access must be cleared along "trace-lines". Vegetation clearing must be undertaken by hand, using chainsaws and hand held implements, with vegetation being cut off at ground level. No tracked or wheeled mechanised equipment must be used;						
212.	Alternative methods of stringing which limit impact to the environment must always be considered e.g. by hand or by using a helicopter;						
213.	Where the stringing operation crosses a public or private road or railway line, the necessary scaffolding/ protection measures must be installed to facilitate access. If, for any reason, such access has to be closed for any period(s) during development, the persons affected must be given reasonable notice, in writing;						
214.	No services (electrical distribution lines, telephone lines, roads, railways lines, pipelines fences etc.) must be damaged because of stringing operations. Where disruption to services is unavoidable, persons affected must be given reasonable notice, in writing;						

215.	Where stringing operations cross cultivated land, damage to crops is restricted to the minimum required to conduct stringing operations, and reasonable notice (10 work days minimum), in writing, must be provided to the landowner;						
216.	Necessary scaffolding protection measures must be installed to prevent damage to the structures supporting certain high value agricultural areas such as vineyards, orchards, nurseries.						

## 28. Socio-economic

Impact management outcome: Socio-economic development is enhanced.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
217. Develop and implement communication strategies to facilitate public participation;						
218. Develop and implement a collaborative and constructive approach to conflict resolution as part of the external stakeholder engagement process;						
219. Sustain continuous communication and liaison with neighboring owners and residents						
220. Create work and training opportunities for local stakeholders; and						
221. Where feasible, no workers, with the exception of security personnel, must be permitted to stay over-night on the site. This would reduce the risk to local farmers.						

29. *Temporary closure of site*

Impact management outcome: Minimise the risk of environmental impact during periods of site closure greater than five days.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
222. Bunds must be emptied (where applicable) and need to be undertaken in accordance with the impact management actions included in sections 5.17: <i>management of hazardous substances</i> and 5.18 <i>workshop, equipment maintenance and storage</i> ;						
223. Hazardous storage areas must be well ventilated;						
224. Fire extinguishers must be serviced and accessible. Service records to be filed and audited at last service;						
225. Emergency and contact details displayed must be displayed;						
226. Security personnel must be briefed and have the facilities to contact or be contacted by relevant management and emergency personnel;						
227. Night hazards such as reflectors, lighting, traffic signage etc. must have been checked;						
228. Fire hazards identified and the local authority must have been notified of any potential threats e.g. large brush stockpiles, fuels etc.;						
229. Structures vulnerable to high winds must be secured;						
230. Wind and dust mitigation must be implemented;						
231. Cement and materials stores must have been secured;						



232.	Toilets must have been emptied and secured;					
233.	Refuse bins must have been emptied and secured;					
234.	Drip trays must have been emptied and secured.					

### 30. Landscaping and rehabilitation

Impact management outcome: Areas disturbed during the development phase are returned to a state that approximates the original condition.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
235. All areas disturbed by construction activities must be subject to landscaping and rehabilitation; All spoil and waste must be disposed to a registered waste site and certificates of disposal provided;						
236. All slopes must be assessed for contouring, and to contour only when the need is identified in accordance with the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act, No 43 of 1983						
237. All slopes must be assessed for terracing, and to terrace only when the need is identified in accordance with the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act, No 43 of 1983;						
238. Berms that have been created must have a slope of 1:4 and be replanted with indigenous species and grasses that approximates the original condition;						
239. Where new access roads have crossed cultivated farmlands, that lands must be rehabilitated by ripping						

<p>which must be agreed to by the holder of the EA and the landowners;</p> <p>240. Rehabilitation of tower sites and access roads outside of farmland;</p> <p>241. Indigenous species must be used for with species and/grasses to where it compliments or approximates the original condition;</p> <p>242. Stockpiled topsoil must be used for rehabilitation (refer to Section 5.24: <i>Stockpiling and stockpiled areas</i>);</p> <p>243. Stockpiled topsoil must be evenly spread so as to facilitate seeding and minimise loss of soil due to erosion;</p> <p>244. Before placing topsoil, all visible weeds from the placement area and from the topsoil must be removed;</p> <p>245. Subsoil must be ripped before topsoil is placed;</p> <p>246. The rehabilitation must be timed so that rehabilitation can take place at the optimal time for vegetation establishment;</p> <p>247. Where impacted through construction related activity, all sloped areas must be stabilised to ensure proper rehabilitation is effected and erosion is controlled ;</p> <p>248. Sloped areas stabilised using design structures or vegetation as specified in the design to prevent erosion of embankments. The contract design specifications must be adhered to and implemented strictly;</p> <p>249. Spoil can be used for backfilling or landscaping as long as it is covered by a minimum of 150 mm of topsoil.</p> <p>250. Where required, re-vegetation including hydro-seeding can be enhanced using a vegetation seed mixture as described below. A mixture of seed can be used provided the mixture is carefully selected to ensure the following:</p> <p>a) Annual and perennial plants are chosen;</p>						
--	--	--	--	--	--	--

b) Pioneer species are included; c) Species chosen must be indigenous to the area with the seeds used coming from the area; d) Root systems must have a binding effect on the soil; e) The final product must not cause an ecological imbalance in the area						
--	--	--	--	--	--	--

#### 6. ACCESS TO THE GENERIC EMPr

Once completed and signed, to allow the public access to the generic EMPr, the holder of the EA must make the EMPr available to the public in accordance with the requirements of regulation 26(h) of the EIA Regulations.

PART B: SECTION 2

7 SITE SPECIFIC INFORMATION AND DECLARATION

1. Sub-section 1: contact details and description of the project

7.1.1 Details of the applicant:

ENERTRAG South Africa (Pty) Ltd is the project proponent (Applicant) with regards to the application for the construction of the 132kV Grid Connection and Associated Infrastructure for the Igolide Wind Energy Facility, northeast of Fochville, within the Merafong City Local Municipality in the Gauteng Province

PROPONENT:	ENERTRAG SOUTH AFRICA (PTY) LTD
Contact Person:	Mercia Grimbeek
Postal Address	Suite 104, Albion Springs, 183 Main Road, Rondebosch, Cape Town, South Africa 7700
Telephone:	071 752 8033
Email:	Mercia.Grimbeek@enertrag.com

*Refer to Section 1.2 of the EMPr*

7.1.2 Details and expertise of the EAP:

WSP was appointed in the role of Independent EAP to undertake the BA processes for the proposed construction of the powerline. The CV of the EAP is available in Appendix A. The EAP declaration of interest and undertaking is included in Appendix B.

EAP	WSP GROUP AFRICA (PTY) LTD
Contact Person:	Ashlea Strong
Physical Address:	Building C, Knightsbridge, 33 Sloane Street, Bryanston, Johannesburg
Postal Address:	P.O. Box 98867, Sloane Park 2151, Johannesburg
Telephone:	011 361 1392
Fax:	011 361 1301
Email:	<a href="mailto:Ashlea.Strong@wsp.com">Ashlea.Strong@wsp.com</a>
EAP Qualifications	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Masters in Environmental Management, University of the Free State</li> <li>— B Tech, Nature Conservation, Technikon SA</li> <li>— National Diploma in Nature Conservation, Technikon SA</li> </ul>
EAPASA Registration Number:	EAPASA (2019/1005)

*Refer to Section 1.3 of the EMPr*

7.1.3 Project name:

132kV Grid Connection and Associated Infrastructure for the Igolide Wind Energy Facility, northeast of Fochville, within the Merafong City Local Municipality in the Gauteng Province.

7.1.4 Description of the project:

*Refer to Section 3 of the EMPr*

ENERTRAG South Africa (Pty) Ltd is proposing to develop a 132kV switching station, a 132kV single or double circuit powerline, and termination point upgrades (as may be necessary), including possible expansion, to allow for the proposed new 132kV powerline connection (hereafter the "Project"). The Project is intended to feed the electricity generated by the approved 100MW Igolide Wind Energy Facility ("WEF") (DFFE reference number: 14/12/16/3/3/2/2385, EA date 31 January 2024) to the national energy grid, with the point of connection being the existing East Drie Five Substation. The project includes the following components:

- Construction of 1 x 132kV powerline (either single or double circuit). A corridor of up to 250m in width (125m on either side of the centre line) has been identified for the placement of the up to 132kV single or double circuit power line to allow flexibility in the design of the final powerline route, and for the avoidance of sensitive environmental features (where possible).

- Construction of 1 x 132kV switching station. The switching station assessment site is ~2.5ha as the switching station will be located adjacent to the approved 132kV on-site IPP substation (DFFE reference number: 14/12/16/3/3/2/2385, EA date 31 January 2024) which was assessed as part of the Igolide WEF Environmental Authorisation process. A 500m buffer around the switching station has been identified to ensure flexibility in routing the powerline. The switching station will include, but is not limited to:

- A high voltage substation yard to allow for multiple 132kV feeder bays.
- Standard substation electrical equipment, including but not limited to, busbars, office area, operation and control room, workshop and storage area, feeder bays, stringer strain beams, insulators, isolators, conductors, circuit breakers, lightning arrestors, relays, capacitor banks, batteries, wave trappers, switchyard, metering and indication instruments, equipment for carrier current, surge protection and outgoing feeders, as may be required.
- Control building, telecommunication infrastructure, oil dam(s), etc.
- Workshop and office area within the switching station footprint.
- Fencing around the switching station.
- All the access road infrastructure to and within the switching station.
- Associated infrastructure, including but not limited to, lighting, fencing, and buildings required for operation (ablutions, office, workshop and control room, security fencing and gating, parking area, concrete batching plant (if required), waste storage/disposal and storerooms).

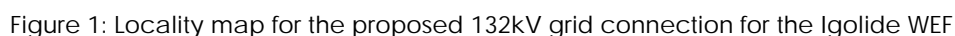
- Upgrades at the terminal points to the (existing East Drie Five Substation) to accommodate the powerline from the Igolide WEF (feeder bay and transformer upgrade), including expansion within the yard, where required, with a footprint of up to 4ha. Standard substation infrastructure will include: operation and control room, transformer oil dam, and standard substation electrical equipment (feeder bays, transformers, busbars, stringer strain beams, insulators, isolators, conductors, circuit breakers, lightning arrestors, relays, capacitor banks, batteries, wave/line trappers, switchyard, metering and indication instruments, equipment for carrier current, surge protection and outgoing feeders, as may be required).

Overhead Powerline	Description
Powerline capacity	132kV
Powerline corridors width	A grid connection corridor has been identified for the assessment and placement of the grid connection infrastructure, comprising 250m (i.e., 125m on either side of centre line). The entire corridor is proposed for development provided the infrastructure remains within the assessed corridor.
Powerline servitude width	32m
Powerline pylons:	Monopole or Lattice pylons, or a combination of both where required and as informed by detailed design
Construction clearance required (per pylon)	Permanent footprint sizes may vary depending on design type, however up to 140m <sup>2</sup> may be required for each pylon foundations, depending on the number and design of the foundation.
Powerline pylon height:	40m
Minimum conductor clearance	8.1m
Pylon spacing	Up to 250m apart, depending on complexity and slope of terrain
Pylon designs	<p>Various pylon design types are considered (and will be determined during the detailed design engineering phase), and may include any of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>132kV (single or double circuit)</li> <li>Intermediate self-supporting monopole</li> <li>Inline or angle-strain self-supporting monopole</li> <li>Suspension self-supporting monopole</li> <li>Triple pole structure</li> <li>Cross rope suspension;</li> <li>Guyed "V" Structure</li> <li>Steel lattice structure; or</li> <li>Similar pylon design at 132kV specification</li> </ul> <p>The above designs may require anchors with guy-wires or be anchorless. For 132kV structures, concrete foundation sizes may vary depending on design type up to 140m<sup>2</sup> (12m by 12m), with depths reaching up to 4m typically in a rectangular 'pad' shape.</p>
Substation (Switching Station connection components)	
Switching station	<p>The total footprint for the onsite switching substation will be approximately 2.5ha in extent.</p> <p>The on-site Eskom switching substation will consist of a high voltage substation yard to allow for multiple 132kV feeder bays and</p>

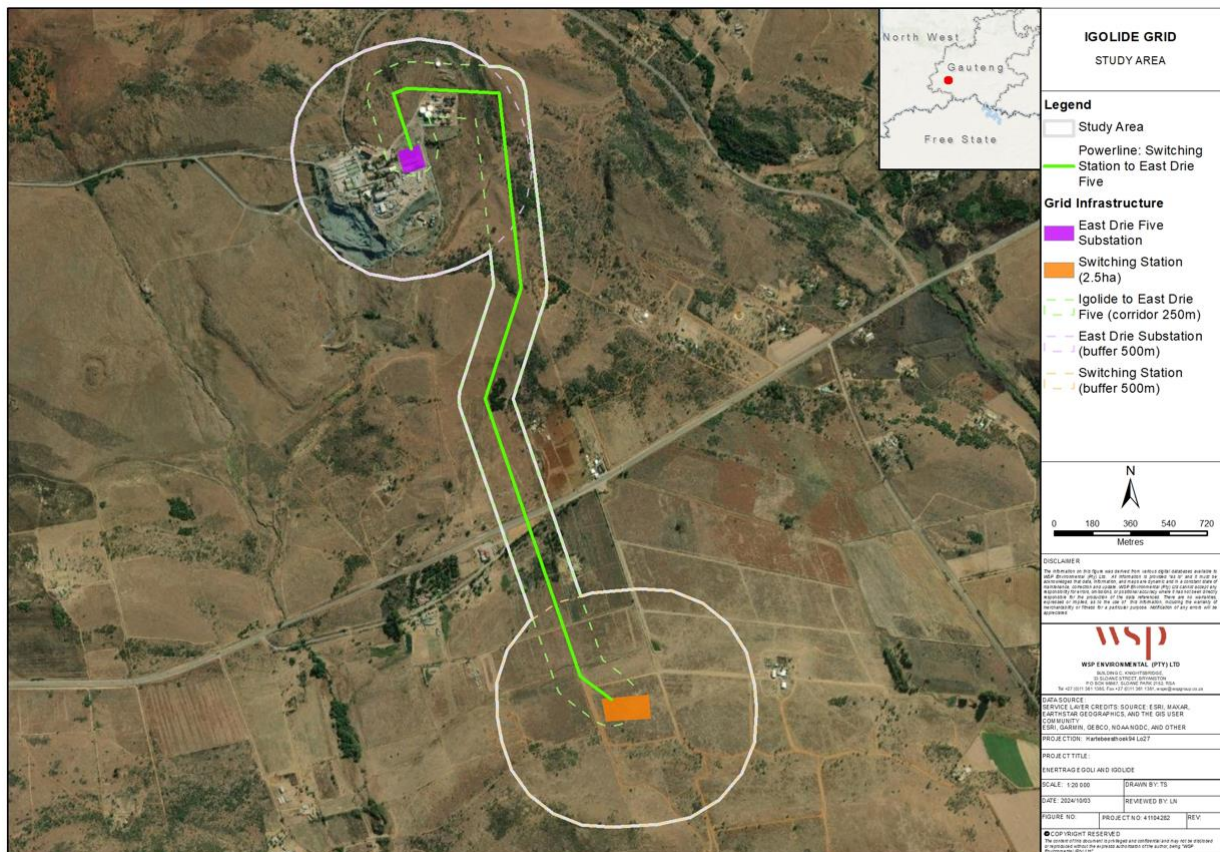


	<p>transformers, control building, telecommunication infrastructure, and other substation components, as required.</p> <p>Standard substation electrical equipment, including but not limited to transformers, busbars, office area, operation and control room, workshop, and storage area, feeder bays, transformers, stringer strain beams, insulators, isolators, conductors, circuit breakers, lightning arrestors, relays, capacitor banks, batteries, wave trappers, switchyard, metering and indication instruments, equipment for carrier current, surge protection and outgoing feeders, as may be needed.</p> <p>A 500m buffer around the switching substation will be assessed to ensure flexibility in routing the powerline.</p>
Substation Capacity	132kV
Corridor width	A grid connection corridor has been identified for the assessment and placement of the grid connection infrastructure, comprising 250m (125m on either side of the centre line) around the entire perimeter of the proposed substation sites. The entire corridor is proposed for development provided the infrastructure remains within the assessed corridor.
Associated infrastructure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Telecommunication infrastructure (including along the length of the powerline and with the substations)</li> <li>• Oil dam(s)</li> <li>• Workshop and controlling building and office area within the substation footprint</li> <li>• Fencing around the substation</li> <li>• Lighting and security infrastructure</li> <li>• All the access road infrastructure to and within the substation</li> <li>• Maintenance road/access track along the length of the powerline for maintenance purposes</li> <li>• Further ancillary infrastructure including but not limited to lighting, lightning protection, fencing, buildings required for operation (ablutions, office, workshop and control room, security fencing and gating, parking area, concrete batching plant (if required), waste storage/disposal and storerooms).</li> </ul>
Termination works	Upgrades at the terminal points to the (existing East Drie Five Substation) will also be required, including possible expansion within the yard, where required, with a footprint of up to 4ha. This includes the installation of additional feeders bays to accommodate the power being evacuated from the proposed Igolide WEF and transformer upgrades.
Roads Infrastructure	
Road servitude and access roads	<p>During construction, a permanent access road along the length of the powerline corridor, between 4 – 6m wide will be established to allow for large crane movement. This track will then be utilised for maintenance during operation.</p> <p>Permanent access roads to and within the substation, up to 8m wide, will be established.</p>

The proposed 132kV OHPL, 132kV Switching Station and associated infrastructure will be developed in an area approximately 6km northeast of Fochville, within the Merafong City Local Municipality (MCLM) in the Gauteng Province.



A	27° 30' 50.012" E	26° 26' 30.391" S
B	27° 30' 44.744" E	26° 26' 26.846" S
C	27° 30' 28.306" E	26° 25' 44.351" S
D	27° 30' 34.326" E	26° 25' 27.326" S
E	27° 30' 30.471" E	26° 24' 57.428" S
F	27° 30' 14.799" E	26° 24' 56.729" S
G	27° 30' 12.415" E	26° 24' 57.557" S
H	27° 30' 15.599" E	26° 25' 6.098" S





## Sub-section 2: Development footprint site map

This sub-section must include a map of the site sensitivity overlaid with the preliminary infrastructure layout. The sensitivity map must be prepared from the national web based environmental screening tool, when available for compulsory use at: <https://screening.environment.gov.za/screeningtool>. The sensitivity map shall identify the nature of each sensitive feature e.g. raptor nest, threatened plant species, archaeological site, etc. Sensitivity maps shall identify features both within the planned working area and any known sensitive features in the surrounding landscape. The overhead transmission and distribution profile shall be illustrated at an appropriate resolution to enable fine scale interrogation. It is recommended that <20 km of overhead transmission and distribution length is illustrated per page in A3 landscape format. Where considered appropriate, photographs of sensitive features in the context of tower positions shall be used.

Refer to Section 3.4 of the EMPr

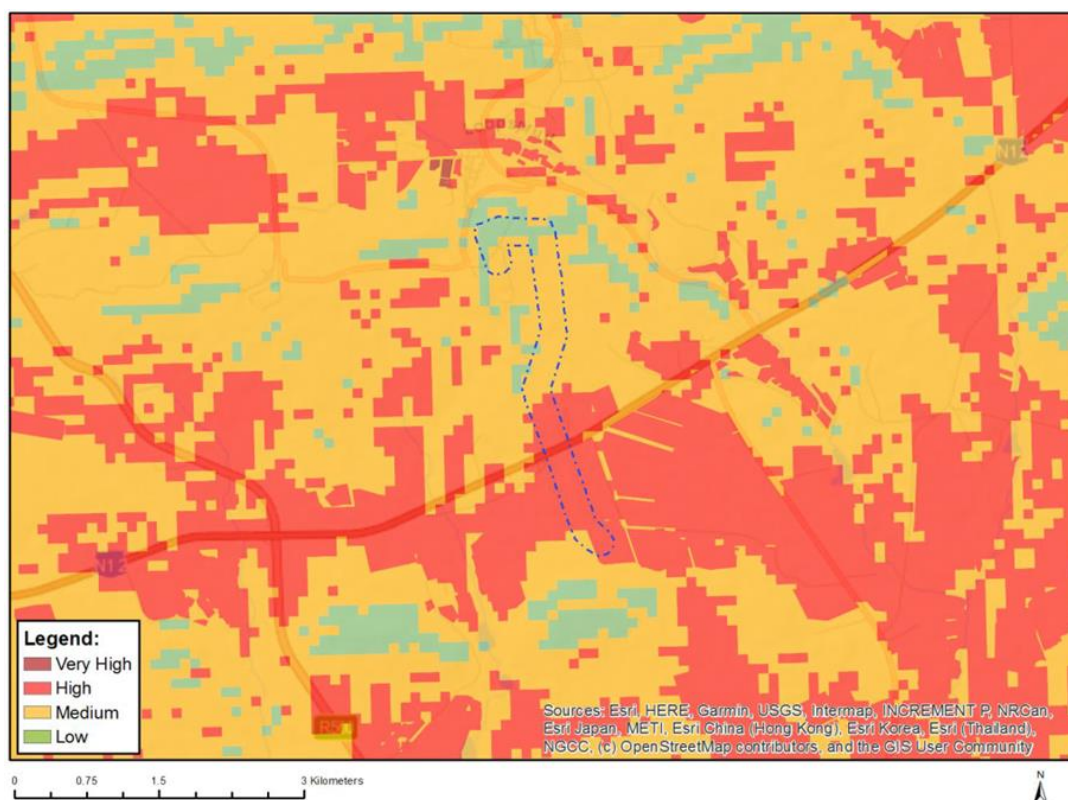


Figure 3: DFFE Screening Tool extract: Agricultural species theme

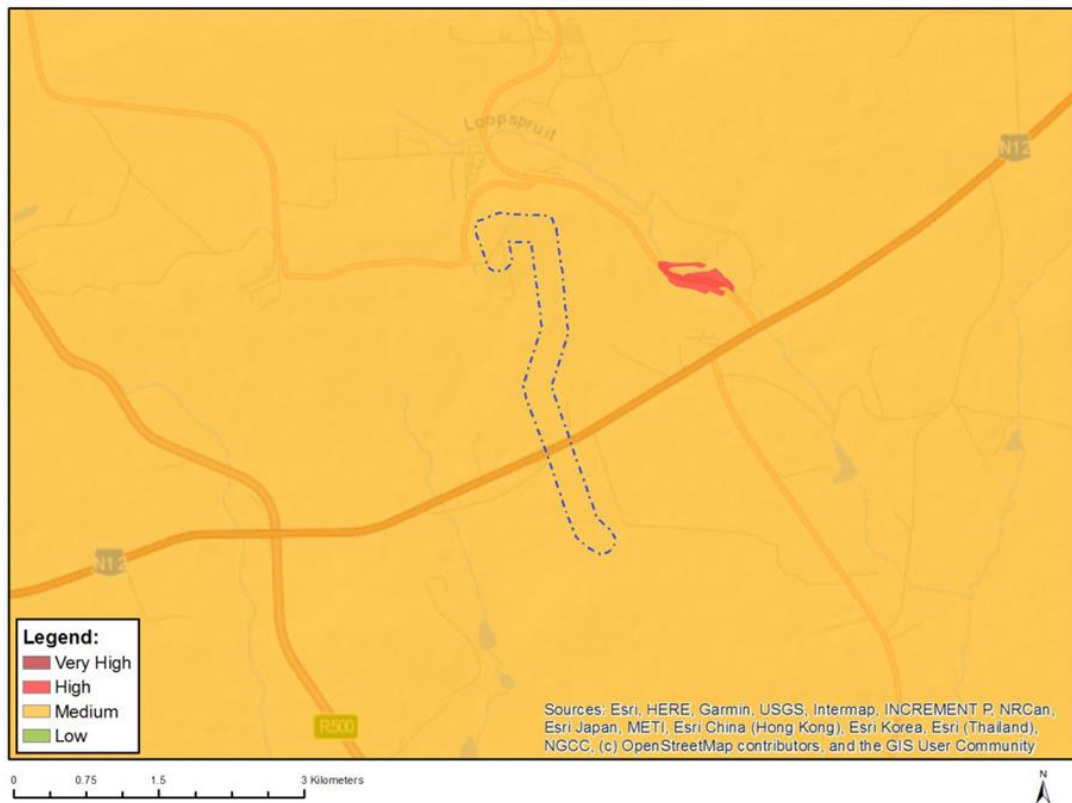


Figure 4: DFFE Screening Tool extract: Animal species theme

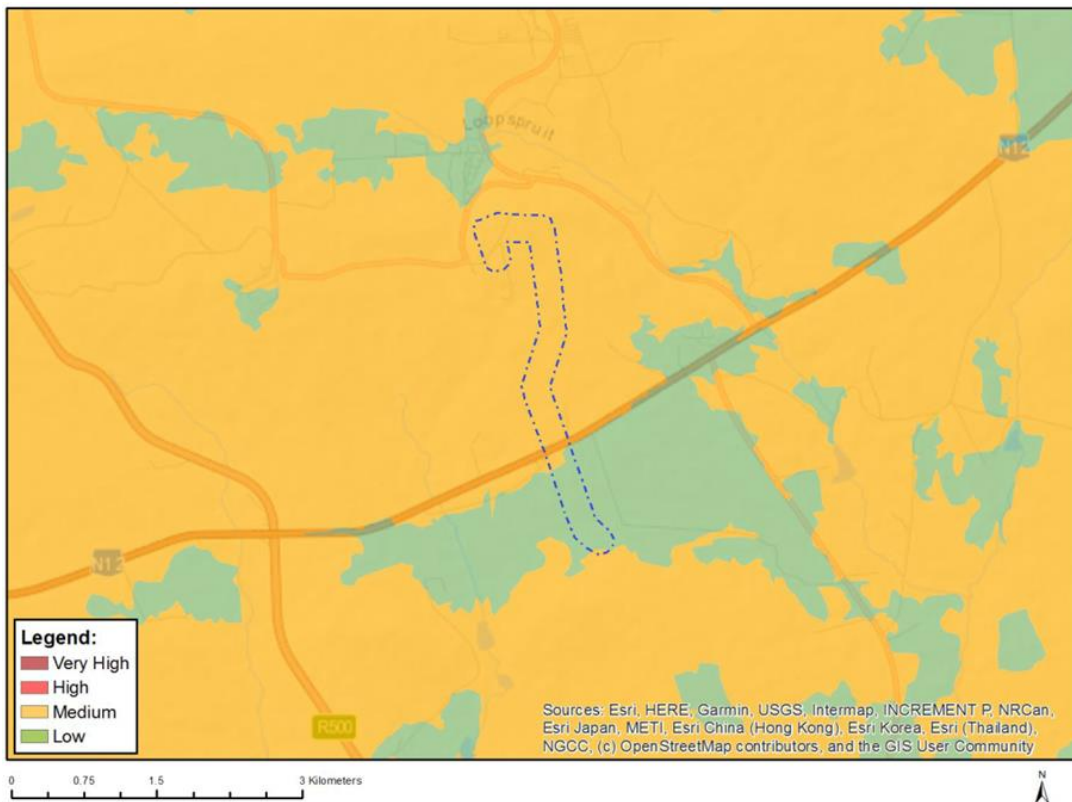


Figure 5: DFFE Screening Tool extract: Plant species theme



Figure 6: DFFE Screening Tool extract: Terrestrial biodiversity theme

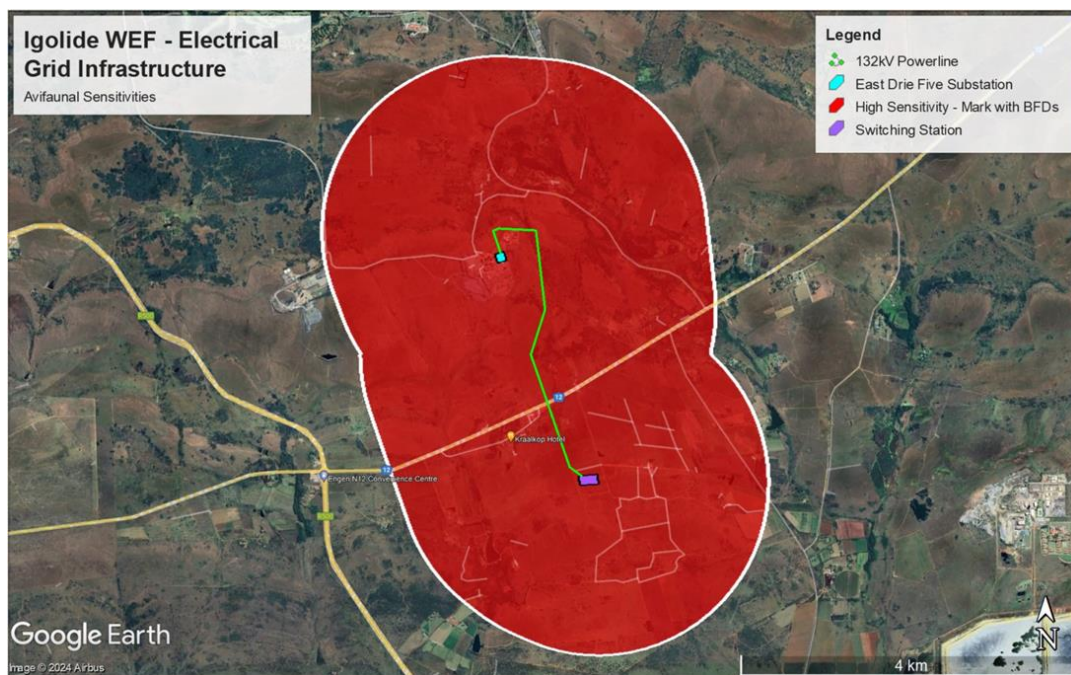


Figure 7: Avifauna Sensitivity Map



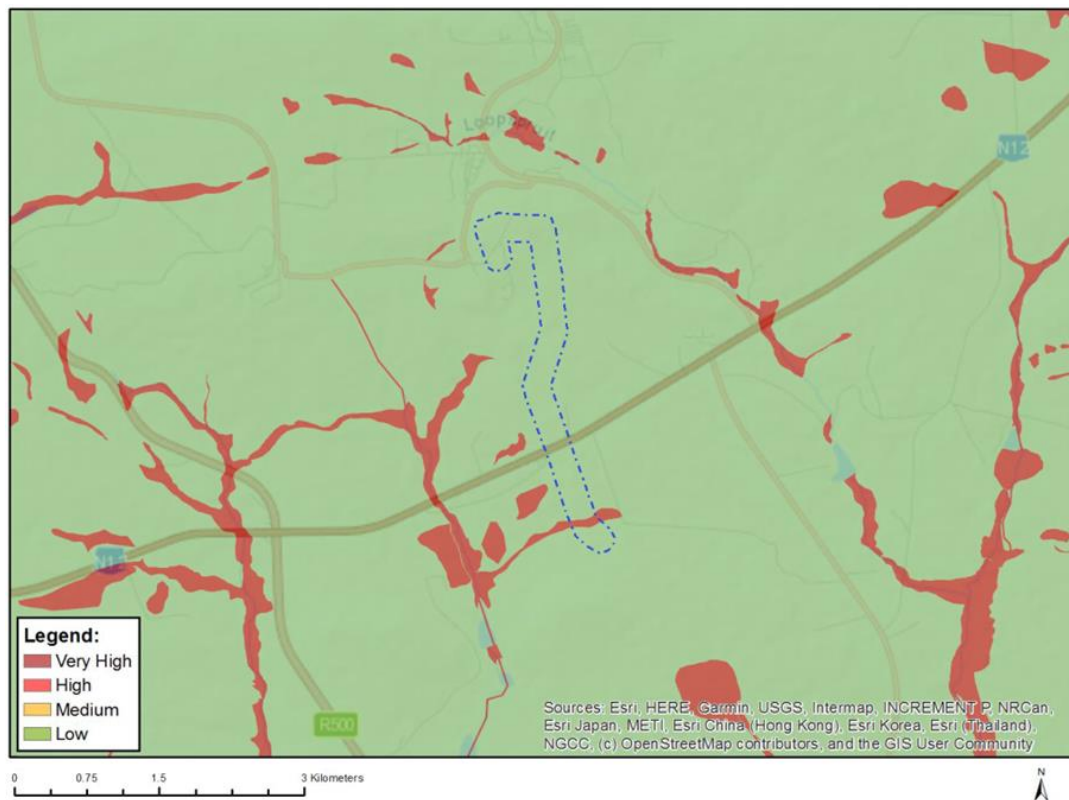


Figure 8: DFFE Screening Tool outcome for the aquatic biodiversity theme

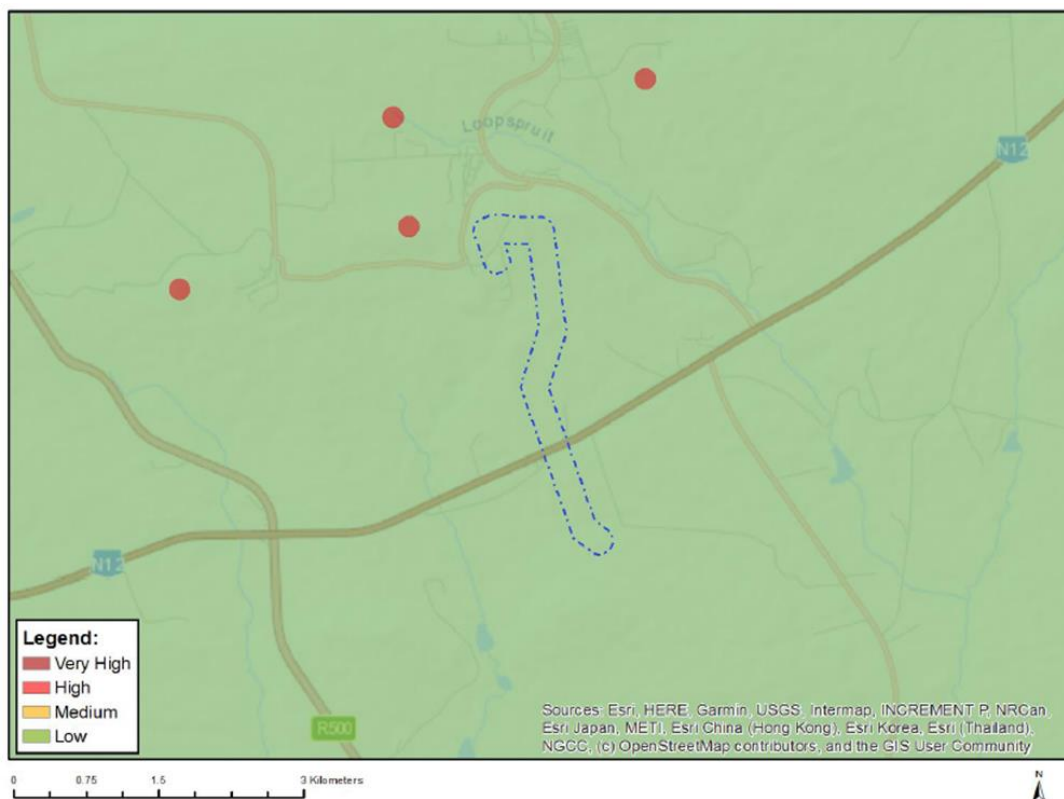


Figure 9: DFFE Screening Tool outcome for the heritage theme



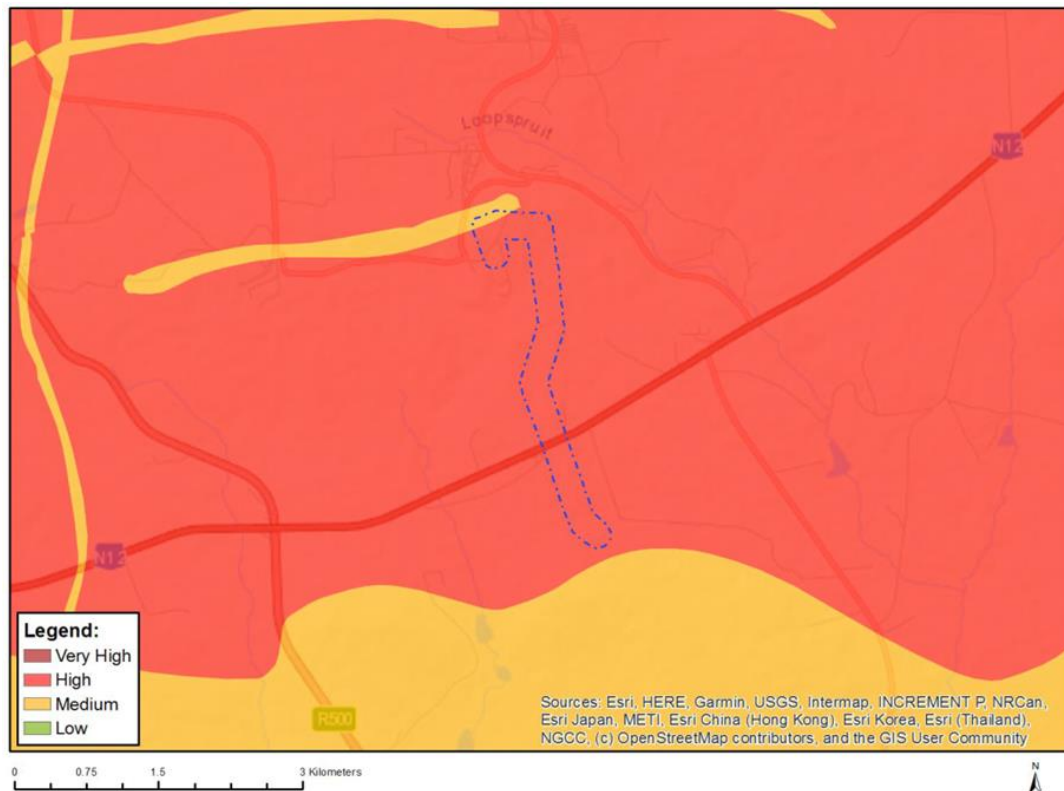


Figure 10: DFFE Screening Tool outcome for the palaeontological theme

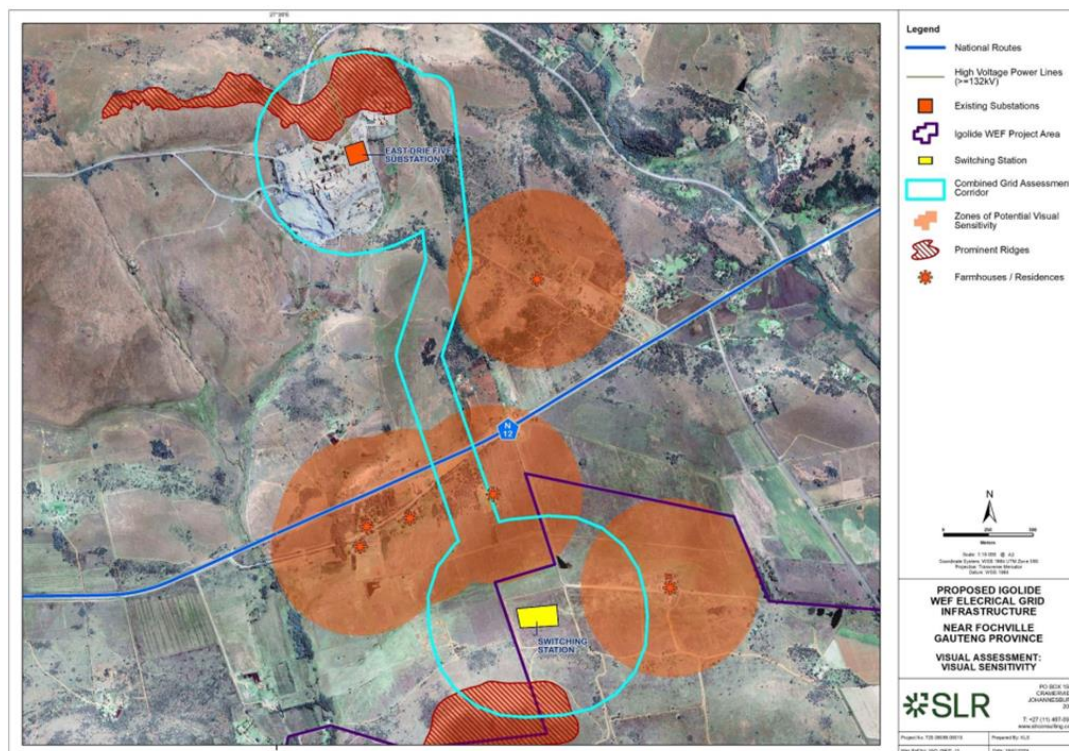
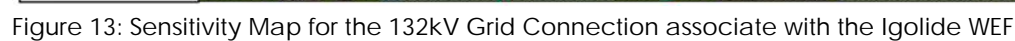


Figure 11: DFFE Screening Tool outcome for the Visual theme




### Sub-section 3: Declaration

The proponent/applicant or holder of the EA affirms that he/she will abide and comply with the prescribed impact management outcomes and impact management actions as stipulated in part B: section 1 of the generic EMPr and have the understanding that the impact management outcomes and impact management actions are legally binding. The proponent/applicant or holder of the EA affirms that he/she will provide written notice to the CA 14 days prior to the date on which the activity will commence of commencement of construction to facilitate compliance inspections.

Signature Proponent/applicant/ holder of EA

Date:

DocuSigned by:  
  
Mercia Grimbeek  
Director: Project Development  
AAB2346FG01041E...

23/10/2024

### 2. Sub-section 4: amendments to site specific information (Part B; section 2)

Should the EA be transferred to a new holder, Part B: Section 2 must be completed by the new holder and submitted with the application for an amendment of the EA in terms of Regulations 29 or 31 of the EIA Regulations, whichever applies. The information submitted for an amendment to an environmental authorisation will be considered to be incomplete should a signed copy of Part B: Section 2 not be submitted. Once approved, Part B: Section 2 forms part of the EMPr for the development and the EMPr becomes legally binding to the new EA holder.



## PART C

### 251. SITE SPECIFIC ENVIRONMENTAL ATTRIBUTES

If any specific environmental sensitivities/attributes are present on the site which require more specific impact management outcomes and impact management actions, not included in the pre-approved generic EMPr template, to manage impacts, those impact management outcomes and actions must be included in this section. These specific management controls must be referenced spatially and must include impact management outcomes and impact management actions. The management controls including impact management outcomes and impact management actions must be presented in the format of the pre-approved generic EMPr template. This applies only to additional impact management outcomes and impact management actions that are necessary.

If Part C is applicable to the development as authorised in the EA, it is required to be submitted to the CA together with the BAR or EIAR, for consideration of, and decision on, the application for EA. The information in this section must be prepared by an EAP and the name and expertise of the EAP, including the curriculum vitae are to be included. Once approved, Part C forms part of the EMPr for the site and is legally binding.

This section will not be required should the site contain no specific environmental sensitivities or attributes.

The overall site contain environmental sensitivities. The site specific mitigation measures for these attributes are included in Section \* of the Site Specific EMPr.

The sensitivities that are applicable to the underground cabling are aquatic and terrestrial biodiversity and are detailed below.

The relevant specialists are as follows:

Avifauna biodiversity:

Terrestrial biodiversity:

Heritage:

The specific environmental sensitivities are indicated in Figure 13.

Table 2: Avifaunal Input - management plan for the planning and design phase

Impact	Mitigation/Management Objectives and Outcomes	Mitigation/Management Actions	Monitoring		
			Methodology	Frequency	Responsibility
AVIFAUNA: DISPLACEMENT DUE TO DISTIURBANCE AND HABITAT TRANSFORMATION					
Displacement of EGI sensitive avifauna due to disturbance and habitat transformation	Prevent mortality of EGI sensitive avifauna	<div>1. Restrict construction to the immediate infrastructural footprint. Access to remaining areas should be strictly controlled to minimise disturbance of EGI sensitive species.</div> <div>2. Minimise removal of natural vegetation and rehabilitate natural vegetation post-construction where possible.</div> <div>3. Measures to control noise and dust should be applied according to current standard best practice in the industry.</div> <div>4. Prioritise upgrading existing roads (where the requisite roads authority permission has been issued) over constructing new roads.</div> <div>5. Strictly implement the recommendations of ecological and botanical specialists to reduce the level of habitat loss.</div>	Design lay-out around the proposed buffer zones	Once-off during the planning phase.	Project Developer
AVIFAUNA: MORTALITY DUE TO ELECTROCUTION					

Impact	Mitigation/Management Objectives and Outcomes	Mitigation/Management Actions	Monitoring		
			Methodology	Frequency	Responsibility
Electrocution of avifauna on the 132kV power line	Prevent mortality of EGI sensitive avifauna	<p>1. A vulture-friendly pole design must be used, and the pole design must be approved by the avifaunal specialist.</p> <p>Single Circuit Configuration: Construct the power line using an Eskom approved vulture friendly pole/tower design in accordance with the Distribution Technical Bulletin or with a minimum clearance of 1.8m between the jumpers and/or insulators and the horizontal earthed component on the lattice structure.</p> <p>Double Circuit Configuration: Construct the power line with a minimum clearance of 1.8m between the jumpers and/or insulators and the horizontal earthed component on the lattice structure.</p> <p>Additional mitigation in the form of insulating sleeves on jumpers present on strain towers and terminal towers is also recommended (if suitable insulation material is readily available), alternatively all jumpers must be suspended below the crossarms.</p>	Design engineers to consult with avifaunal specialist on the final design of the poles.	Once-off during the planning phase.	Project Developer

Table 3: Avifaunal Input - management plan for the construction phase (Including Pre-construction and construction activities)

Impact	Mitigation/Management Objectives and Outcomes	Mitigation/Management Actions	Monitoring		
			Methodology	Frequency	Responsibility
AVIFAUNA: DISPLACEMENT DUE TO DISTURBANCE					
The noise and movement associated with the construction activities at the development footprint will be a source of disturbance which would lead to the displacement of avifauna from the area	Prevent unnecessary displacement of EGI sensitive avifauna by ensuring that contractors are aware of the requirements of the Construction Environmental Management Programme (CEMPr.)	<p>A site-specific CEMPr must be implemented, which gives an appropriate and detailed description of how construction activities must be conducted. All contractors are to adhere to the CEMPr and should apply good environmental practices during construction. The CEMPr must specifically include the following:</p> <p>1. No off-road driving.</p> <p>2. Maximum use of existing roads as far as practically possible.</p> <p>3. Measures to control noise and dust according to latest best practice.</p> <p>4. Restricted access to the rest of the property.</p>	<p>1. Implementation of the CEMPr. Oversee activities to ensure that the CEMPr is implemented and enforced via site audits and inspections. Report and record any non-compliance.</p> <p>2. Ensure that construction personnel are made aware of the impacts relating to off-road driving.</p> <p>3. Construction access roads must be demarcated clearly. Undertake site inspections to verify.</p>	<p>1. On a daily basis</p> <p>2. Monthly</p> <p>3. Monthly</p> <p>4. Monthly</p> <p>5. Monthly</p>	<p>1. Contractor and ECO</p> <p>2. Contractor and ECO</p> <p>3. Contractor and ECO</p> <p>4. Contractor and ECO</p> <p>5. Contractor and ECO</p>



Impact	Mitigation/Management Objectives and Outcomes	Mitigation/Management Actions	Monitoring		
			Methodology	Frequency	Responsibility
		5. Strict application of all recommendations in the botanical and biodiversity specialist reports pertaining to the limitation and rehabilitation of the footprint.	4. Monitor the implementation of noise control mechanisms via site inspections and record and report non-compliance.  5. Ensure that the construction area is demarcated clearly and that construction personnel are made aware of these demarcations. Monitor via site inspections and report non-compliance.		
AVIFAUNA : DISPLACEMENT DUE TO HABITAT TRANSFORMATION					
Total or partial displacement of avifauna due to habitat transformation	Prevent unnecessary displacement of avifauna by ensuring that the rehabilitation of transformed areas is	1. Ensure that all the recommendations for mitigation from the	1. Appointment of specialist to coordinate and	1. Once-off	1. Facility Operator

Impact	Mitigation/Management Objectives and Outcomes	Mitigation/Management Actions	Monitoring		
			<i>Methodology</i>	<i>Frequency</i>	<i>Responsibility</i>
associated with the vegetation clearance and the presence of the EGI.	implemented according to the recommendations of the biodiversity/vegetation specialist.	biodiversity/vegetation specialists, including rehabilitation of disturbed areas, are strictly implemented.	monitor the rehabilitation of the vegetation.		
AVIFAUNA: MORTALITY DUE TO COLLISIONS WITH THE 132KV POWER LINE					
Bird collisions with the 132kV power line.	Prevent mortality of EGI sensitive avifauna.	1. Bird flight diverters should be installed on the 132kV overhead line on the full span length of the earth wire (according to Eskom guidelines - five metres apart). Light and dark colour devices must be alternated to provide contrast against both dark and light backgrounds, respectively. These devices must be installed	Fit Eskom approved Bird Flight Diverters on the entire overhead section of the 132kV power line.	1. Once-off	1. Contractor

Impact	Mitigation/Management Objectives and Outcomes	Mitigation/Management Actions	Monitoring		
			<i>Methodology</i>	<i>Frequency</i>	<i>Responsibility</i>
		as soon as the conductors are strung.			

Table 4: Avifaunal Input - management plan for the operational phase

Impact	Mitigation/Management Objectives and Outcomes	Mitigation/Management Actions	Monitoring		
			Methodology	Frequency	Responsibility
AVIFAUNA: MORTALITY DUE TO ELECTROCUTIONS IN THE SUBSTATION YARD					
Mortality of avifauna due to electrocutions in the substation yard	Reduction of avian electrocution mortality	1. Monitor the electrocution mortality in the substations.  2. Apply mitigation when and if required.	1. Regular inspections of the substation yard	1. Monthly	1. Facility Operator

Table 5: Avifaunal Input - management plan for the decommissioning phase

Impact	Mitigation/Management Objectives and Outcomes	Mitigation/Management Actions	Monitoring		
			Methodology	Frequency	Responsibility
AVIFAUNA: DISPLACEMENT DUE TO DISTURBANCE ASSOCIATED WITH THE DISMANTLING ACTIVITIES					

Impact	Mitigation/Management Objectives and Outcomes	Mitigation/Management Actions	Monitoring		
			Methodology	Frequency	Responsibility
The noise and movement associated with the decommissioning activities of the EGI will be a source of disturbance which would lead to the displacement of avifauna from the area.	Prevent unnecessary displacement of avifauna by ensuring that contractors are aware of the requirements of the EMPr.	<p>A site-specific EMPr must be implemented, which gives an appropriate and detailed description of how construction activities must be conducted. All contractors are to adhere to the EMPr and should apply good environmental practice during construction. The EMPr must specifically include the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. No off-road driving.</li> <li>2. Maximum use of existing roads as far as practically possible.</li> <li>3. Measures to control noise and dust according to latest best practice.</li> <li>4. Restricted access to the rest of the property.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Implementation of the EMPr. Oversee activities to ensure that the EMPr is implemented and enforced via site audits and inspections. Report and record any non-compliance.</li> <li>2. Ensure that construction personnel are made aware of the impacts relating to off-road driving.</li> <li>3. Access roads must be demarcated clearly. Undertake site inspections to verify.</li> <li>4. Monitor the implementation of noise control mechanisms via site inspections and record and report non-compliance.</li> <li>5. Ensure that the footprint area is demarcated and that construction personnel are</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. On a daily basis</li> <li>2. Monthly</li> <li>3. Monthly</li> <li>4. Monthly</li> <li>5. Monthly</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Contractor and ECO</li> <li>2. Contractor and ECO</li> <li>3. Contractor and ECO</li> <li>4. Contractor and ECO</li> <li>5. Contractor and ECO</li> <li>6. Contractor and ECO</li> </ol>

Impact	Mitigation/Management Objectives and Outcomes	Mitigation/Management Actions	Monitoring		
			Methodology	Frequency	Responsibility
		5. Strict application of all recommendations in the biodiversity/vegetation specialist report pertaining to the limitation of the footprint.	made aware of these demarcations. 6. Monitor via site inspections and report non-compliance.		

Table 6: Terrestrial Biodiversity Input – Summary of the monitoring measures

Ref. No.	Category	Method for monitoring	Time period	Frequency of monitoring	Mechanism for monitoring compliance	Responsible person
1. Construction and Operational phase						
1.1	Alien invasive species	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Annual on-site alien invasive species monitoring should be conducted. Monitoring should focus on all sites disturbed during the construction phase; and</li> <li>Monitoring should assess species type and density, and these data should inform the scope of ongoing alien invasive species control.</li> </ul>	Wet/growing season	Annual	Annual Monitoring Report	Project Manager
2. Decommissioning phase						
2.1	Alien invasive species	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Alien invasive species monitoring should be conducted on an annual basis during decommissioning and annually for a five-year period following decommissioning. Monitoring should focus on all sites disturbed during decommissioning; and</li> <li>Monitoring should assess species type and density, and these data should inform the scope of ongoing alien invasive species control.</li> </ul>	Wet/growing season	Annually during decommissioning for a five-year period after decommissioning	Annual Monitoring Report	Facility Manager

Table 7: Plant Species Biodiversity Input – Summary of the monitoring measures

Ref. No.	Category	Method for monitoring	Time period	Frequency of monitoring	Mechanism for monitoring compliance	Responsible person
1. Construction and Operational phase						
1.1	Alien invasive species	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Annual on-site alien invasive species monitoring should be conducted. Monitoring should focus on all sites disturbed during the construction phase; and</li> <li>Monitoring should assess species type and density, and these data should inform the scope of ongoing alien invasive species control.</li> </ul>	Wet/growing season	Annual	Annual Monitoring Report	Project Manager
2.2	Flora SCC	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Monitoring of the <i>Adromischus umbraticola</i> subsp. <i>umbraticola</i> plants should be conducted during the September – January flowering period.</li> <li>As required, the findings of monitoring should inform additional conservation actions to protect these plants.</li> </ul>	September - January	Annually during construction, and for a three period after construction.	Annual Monitoring Report	Project Manager
2. Decommissioning phase						
2.1	Alien invasive species	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Alien invasive species monitoring should be conducted on an annual basis during decommissioning and annually for a five-year period following decommissioning. Monitoring should focus on all sites disturbed during decommissioning; and</li> <li>Monitoring should assess species type and density, and these data should inform the scope of ongoing alien invasive species control.</li> </ul>	Wet/growing season	Annually during decommissioning for a five-year period after decommissioning	Annual Monitoring Report	Facility Manager



Table 8: Heritage Input – Summary of the mitigation and monitoring measures

Impact	Mitigation / management objectives & outcomes	Mitigation / management actions	Monitoring		
			Methodology	Frequency	Responsibility
Impacts to archaeology and graves					
Damage or destruction of archaeological sites or graves	Avoid impacts (preferred) or locate and sample or rescue sites/burials before disturbance	<u>Planning &amp; Construction Phase</u> : Final alignment to be evaluated by an archaeologist relative to known sites, make recommendations for mitigation or further survey as may be needed.	Appoint archaeologist to evaluate alignment well before construction (noting that further survey may be required if there are doubts)	Once-off	Project developer
Damage or destruction of archaeological sites	Locate sensitive areas before damage occurs and avoid impacts	<u>Construction Phase</u> : No-Go signage will need to be placed at sites close to the final alignment. To be determined during planning phase.	Monitoring of No-Go areas (construction period only)	Ongoing basis	Construction Manager or Contractor
				Whenever on site (at least weekly)	ECO
Damage or destruction of archaeological sites or graves	Rescue information, artefacts or burials before extensive damage occurs	<u>Construction Phase</u> : Reporting chance finds as early as possible to SAHRA ( <a href="https://www.sahra.org.za/contact/">https://www.sahra.org.za/contact/</a> ) or an archaeologist, protect in situ and stop work in immediate area	Inform staff to be vigilant and carry out inspections of new excavations	Ongoing basis	Construction Manager or Contractor
				Whenever on site (at least weekly during construction period only)	ECO
Damage or destruction of any known sites	Avoid impacts	<u>Construction Phase</u> : Place No-Go signage at identified sensitive locations.	Monitoring of No-Go areas	Ongoing basis	Construction Manager or Contractor

Impact	Mitigation / management objectives & outcomes	Mitigation / management actions	Monitoring		
			Methodology	Frequency	Responsibility
			(construction period only)	Whenever on site (at least weekly)	ECO
Impacts to the cultural landscape					
Visible landscape scarring	Minimise landscape scarring	<u>Construction Phase</u> : Ensure disturbance is kept to a minimum and does not exceed project requirements. Avoid construction on very steep slopes. Rehabilitate areas not needed during operation.	Monitoring of surface clearance relative to approved layout	Ongoing basis	Construction Manager or Contractor
				As required	ECO
Intrusion into cultural landscape	Minimise visual intrusion	<u>Operation Phase</u> : Ensure that all maintenance vehicles and operational activities stay within designated areas.	Undertake visual inspections and report non-compliance	As required	Environmental Manager
Intrusion into cultural landscape	Minimise contrast and light pollution	<u>Operation Phase</u> : Paint buildings in earthy colours to reduce contrast. Make use of motion detectors and downlighting to reduce night-time light pollution.	Monitor that this has been considered in the design and operation of the facility	Once off	Project Developer
Visible landscape scarring	Minimise landscape scarring	<u>Decommissioning Phase</u> : Ensure all areas are rehabilitated following specialist rehabilitation plan.	Monitor compliance and success of rehabilitation	As required	ECO

## APPENDIX 1: METHOD STATEMENTS

To be prepared by the contractor prior to commencement of the activity. The method statements are not required to be submitted to the CA.

# Appendix E

**OHPL GENERIC EMPR**



## GENERIC ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME (EMPr) FOR THE DEVELOPMENT AND EXPANSION OF SUBSTATION INFRASTRUCTURE FOR THE TRANSMISSION AND DISTRIBUTION OF ELECTRICITY

---



**environmental affairs**

Department:  
Environmental Affairs  
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION .....	1
1. Background .....	1
2. Purpose .....	1
3. Objective.....	1
4. Scope .....	1
5. Structure of this document .....	1
6. Completion of part B: section 1: the pre-approved generic EMPr template.....	4
7. Amendments of the impact management outcomes and impact management actions.....	4
8. Documents to be submitted as part of part B: section 2 site specific information and declaration .....	4
(a) Amendments to Part B: Section 2 – site specific information and declaration	5
PART A – GENERAL INFORMATION .....	6
1. DEFINITIONS .....	6
2. ACRONYMS and ABBREVIATIONS .....	7
3. ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES FOR ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME (EMPr) IMPLEMENTATION .....	8
4. ENVIRONMENTAL DOCUMENTATION REPORTING AND COMPLIANCE .....	14
4.1 Document control/Filing system .....	14
4.2 Documentation to be available.....	14
4.3 Weekly Environmental Checklist .....	14
4.4 Environmental site meetings .....	15
4.5 Required Method Statements .....	15
4.6 Environmental Incident Log (Diary) .....	16
4.7 Non-compliance .....	16
4.8 Corrective action records .....	17
4.9 Photographic record .....	17
4.10 Complaints register .....	18
4.11 Claims for damages .....	18
4.12 Interactions with affected parties .....	18
4.13 Environmental audits.....	19
4.14 Final environmental audits.....	19
PART B: SECTION 1: Pre-approved generic EMPr template .....	20

5.	IMPACT MANAGEMENT OUTCOMES AND IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS .....	20
5.1	Environmental awareness training .....	21
5.2	Site Establishment development .....	22
5.3	Access restricted areas .....	23
5.4	Access roads .....	24
5.5	Fencing and Gate installation.....	25
5.6	Water Supply Management .....	27
5.7	Storm and waste water management .....	28
5.8	Solid and hazardous waste management .....	29
5.9	Protection of watercourses and estuaries .....	30
5.10	Vegetation clearing .....	31
5.11	Protection of fauna .....	33
5.12	Protection of heritage resources .....	34
5.13	Safety of the public .....	35
5.14	Sanitation.....	35
5.15	Prevention of disease.....	36
5.16	Emergency procedures.....	37
5.17	Hazardous substances .....	38
5.18	Workshop, equipment maintenance and storage .....	40
5.19	Batching plants .....	41
5.20	Dust emissions.....	42
5.21	Blasting .....	44
5.22	Noise .....	44
5.23	Fire prevention .....	45
5.24	Stockpiling and stockpile areas .....	46
5.25	Civil works .....	46
5.26	Excavation of foundation, cable trenching and drainage systems .....	47
5.27	Installation of foundations, cable trenching and drainage systems.....	48
5.28	Installation of equipment (circuit breakers, current Transformers, Isolators, Insulators, surge arresters, voltage transformers, earth switches) .....	49
5.30	Cabling and Stringing .....	50
5.31	Testing and Commissioning (all equipment testing, earthing system, system integration) .....	51
5.32	Socio-economic .....	51



5.33	Temporary closure of site .....	52
5.34	Dismantling of old equipment .....	53
5.35	Landscaping and rehabilitation .....	54
6	ACCESS TO THE GENERIC EMPr.....	56
PART B: SECTION 2 .....		56
7	SITE SPECIFIC INFORMATION AND DECLARATION .....	56
7.1	Sub-section 1: contact details and description of the project.....	56
	<i>Refer to Section 3 of the EMPr.....</i>	57
	<p>ENERTRAG South Africa (Pty) Ltd is proposing to develop a 132kV switching station, a 132kV single or double circuit powerline, and termination point upgrades (as may be necessary), including possible expansion, to allow for the proposed new 132kV powerline connection (hereafter the "Project"). The Project is intended to feed the electricity generated by the approved 100MW Igolide Wind Energy Facility ("WEF") (DFFE reference number: 14/12/16/3/3/2/2385, EA date 31 January 2024) to the national energy grid, with the point of connection being the existing East Drie Five Substation. The project includes the following components: .....</p> <p>57</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Construction of 1 x 132kV powerline (either single or double circuit). A corridor of up to 250m in width (125m on either side of the centre line) has been identified for the placement of the up to 132kV single or double circuit power line to allow flexibility in the design of the final powerline route, and for the avoidance of sensitive environmental features (where possible). ....</li> <li>- Construction of 1 x 132kV switching station . The switching station assessment site is ~2.5ha as the switching station will be located adjacent to the 33/132kV on-site IPP substation which is being assessed as part of the Igolide WEF Environmental Authorisation process. A 500m buffer around the switching station has been identified to ensure flexibility in routing the powerline. The switching station will include, but is not limited to:.....</li> <li>• A high voltage substation yard to allow for multiple 132kV feeder bays. ....</li> <li>• Standard substation electrical equipment, including but not limited to, busbars, office area, operation and control room, workshop and storage area, feeder bays, stringer strain beams, insulators, isolators, conductors, circuit breakers, lightning arrestors, relays, capacitor banks, batteries, wave trappers, switchyard, metering and indication instruments, equipment for carrier current, surge protection and outgoing feeders, as may be required. ....</li> <li>• Control building, telecommunication infrastructure, oil dam(s), etc.....</li> <li>• Workshop and office area within the switching station footprint. ....</li> <li>• Fencing around the switching station.....</li> <li>• All the access road infrastructure to and within the switching station.....</li> </ul>	

• Associated infrastructure, including but not limited to, lighting, fencing, and buildings required for operation (ablutions, office, workshop and control room, security fencing and gating, parking area, concrete batching plant (if required), waste storage/disposal and storerooms).....	58
- Upgrading of the East Drie Five Substation to accommodate the powerline from the Igolide WEF (feeder bay and transformer upgrade), including expansion within the yard, where required, with a footprint of up to 4ha. Standard substation infrastructure will include: operation and control room, transformer oil dam, and standard substation electrical equipment (feeder bays, transformers, busbars, stringer strain beams, insulators, isolators, conductors, circuit breakers, lightning arrestors, relays, capacitor banks, batteries, wave/line trappers, switchyard, metering and indication instruments, equipment for carrier current, surge protection and outgoing feeders, as may be required).....	58
7.2 Sub-section 2: Development footprint site map .....	62
7.3 Sub-section 3: Declaration .....	69
7.4 Sub-section 4: amendments to site specific information (Part B; section 2).....	69
8 SITE SPECIFIC ENVIRONMENTAL ATTRIBUTES.....	70
The specific environmental sensitivities are indicated in.....	70

#### List of tables

Table 1: <i>Guide to roles and responsibilities for implementation of an EMPr</i> .....	8
Table 2: Avifaunal Input - management plan for the planning and design phase.....	71
Table 3: Avifaunal Input - management plan for the construction phase (Including Pre-construction and construction activities) .....	73
Table 4: Avifaunal Input - management plan for the operational phase.....	76
Table 5: Avifaunal Input - management plan for the decommissioning phase .....	76
Table 6: Terrestrial Biodiversity Input – Summary of the monitoring measures .....	79
Table 7: Plant Species Biodiversity Input – Summary of the monitoring measures.....	80
Table 8: Heritage Input – Summary of the mitigation and monitoring measures .....	81

#### List of Figures

Figure 1: Locality map for the proposed 132kV grid connection and associated infrastructure for the Igolide WEF .....	60
Figure 2: Locality map for the proposed 132kV grid connection and associated infrastructure for the Igolide Wind Energy Facility.....	62
Figure 3: DFFE Screening Tool extract: Agricultural species theme .....	63
Figure 4: DFFE Screening Tool extract: Animal species theme.....	63
Figure 5: DFFE Screening Tool extract: Plant species theme.....	64
Figure 6: DFFE Screening Tool extract: Terrestrial biodiversity theme .....	64
Figure 7: Avifauna Sensitivity Map.....	65
Figure 8: DFFE Screening Tool outcome for the aquatic biodiversity theme .....	65

Figure 9: DFFE Screening Tool outcome for the heritage theme..... 66

Figure 10: DFFE Screening Tool outcome for the palaeontological theme ..... 66

Figure 11: DFFE Screening Tool outcome for the Visual theme..... 67

Figure 12: DFFE Screening Tool outcome for the Civil Aviation theme ..... 67

Figure 13: Sensitivity Map for the 132kV Grid Connection associate with the Igolide WEF ..... 68

## INTRODUCTION

### 1. Background

The National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998) (NEMA) requires that an environmental management programme (EMPr) be submitted where an environmental impact assessment (EIA) has been identified as the environmental instrument to be utilised as the basis for a decision on an application for environmental authorisation (EA). The content of an EMPr must either contain the information set out in Appendix 4 of the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations, 2014, as amended (EIA Regulations) or must be a generic EMPr relevant to an application as identified and gazetted by the Minister in a government notice. Once the Minister has identified, through a government notice that a generic EMPr is relevant to an application for EA, that generic EMPr must be applied by all parties involved in the EA process, including but not limited to the applicant and the competent authority (CA).

### 2. Purpose

This document constitutes a generic EMPr relevant to applications for the development or expansion of substation infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of electricity, and all listed and specified activities necessary for the realisation of such infrastructure.

### 3. Objective

The objective of this generic EMPr is to prescribe and pre-approve generally accepted impact management outcomes and impact management actions, which can commonly and repeatedly be used for the avoidance, management and mitigation of impacts and risks associated with the development or expansion of substation infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of electricity. The use of a generic EMPr is intended to reduce the need to prepare and review individual EMPrs for applications of a similar nature.

### 4. Scope

The scope of this generic EMPr applies to the development or expansion of substation infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of electricity requiring EA in terms of NEMA. This generic EMPr applies to activities requiring EA, mainly activity 11 and 47 of the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations Listing Notice 1 of 2014, as amended, and activity 9 of the Environmental Impact Assessment Regulations Listing Notice 2 of 2014, as amended, and all associated listed or specified activities necessary for the realization of such infrastructure.

### 5. Structure of this document

This document is structured in three parts with an Appendix as indicated in the table below:

Part	Section	Heading	Content
A		Provides general guidance and information and is not legally binding	Definitions, acronyms, roles & responsibilities and documentation and reporting.
B	1	Pre-approved generic EMPr template	<p>Contains generally accepted impact management outcomes and impact management actions required for the avoidance, management and mitigation of impacts and risks associated with the development or expansion of substation infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of electricity, which are presented in the form of a template that has been pre-approved.</p> <p>The template in this section is to be completed by the contractor, with each completed page signed and dated by the holder of the EA prior to commencement of the activity.</p> <p>Where an impact management outcome is not relevant, the words “not applicable” can be inserted in the template under the “responsible persons” column.</p> <p>Once completed and signed, the template represents the EMPr for the activity approved by the CA and is legally binding. The template is not required to be submitted to the CA as once the generic EMPr is gazetted for implementation, it has been approved by the CA.</p> <p>To allow interested and affected parties access to the pre-approved EMPr template for consideration through the decision-making process, the EAP on behalf of the applicant /proponent must make the hard copy of this EMPr available at a public location and where the applicant has a website, the EMPr should also be made available on such publicly accessible website.</p>
	2	Site specific information	Contains preliminary infrastructure layout and a declaration that the applicant/holder of the EA will comply with the pre-approved generic EMPr template contained in <u>Part B: Section 1</u> , and understands that the impact management outcomes and impact management actions

Part	Section	Heading	Content
			<p>are legally binding. The preliminary infrastructure layout must be finalized to inform the final EMPr that is to be submitted with the basic assessment report (BAR) or environmental impact assessment report (EIAR), ensuring that all impact management outcomes and impact management actions have been either pre-approved or approved in terms of <u>Part C</u>.</p> <p>This section must be submitted to the CA together with the final BAR or EIAR. The information submitted to the CA will be considered to be incomplete should a signed copy of <u>Part B: section 2</u> not be submitted. Once approved, this Section forms part of the EMPr for the development and is legally binding.</p>
C		Site specific sensitivities/attributes	<p>If any specific environmental sensitivities/attributes are present on the site which require site specific impact management outcomes and impact management actions, not included in the pre-approved generic EMPr, to manage impacts, these specific impact management outcomes and impact management actions must be included in this section. These specific environmental attributes must be referenced spatially and impact management outcomes and impact management actions must be provided. These specific impact management outcomes and impact management actions must be presented in the format of the pre-approved EMPr template (<u>Part B: section 1</u>)</p> <p>This section will not be required should the site contain no specific environmental sensitivities or attributes. However, if <u>Part C</u> is applicable to the site, it is required to be submitted together with the BAR or EIAR, for consideration of, and decision on, the application for EA. The information in this section must be prepared by an EAP and must contain his/her name and expertise including a curriculum vitae. Once approved, Part C forms part of the EMPr for the site and is legally binding.</p> <p>This section applies only to additional impact management outcomes and impact management actions that are necessary for the</p>

Part	Section	Heading	Content
			avoidance, management and mitigation of impacts and risks associated with the specific development or expansion and which are not already included in <u>Part B: section 1</u> .
Appendix 1			Contains the method statements to be prepared prior to commencement of the activity. The method statements are not required to be submitted to the competent authority.

6. Completion of part B: section 1: the pre-approved generic EMP template

The template is to be completed prior to commencement of the activity, by providing the following information for each environmental impact management action:

- For implementation
  - a 'responsible person',
  - a method for implementation,
  - a timeframe for implementation
- For monitoring
  - a responsible person
  - frequency
  - evidence of compliance.

The completed template must be signed and dated by the holder of the EA prior to commencement of the activity. The method statements prepared and agreed to by the holder of the EA must be appended to the template as Appendix 1. Each method statement must be signed and dated on each page by the holder of the EA. This template once signed and dated is legally binding. The holder of the EA will remain responsible for its implementation.

7. Amendments of the impact management outcomes and impact management actions

Once the activity has commenced, a holder of an EA may make amendments to the impact management outcomes and impact management actions in the following manner:

- Amendment of the impact management outcomes: in line with the process contemplated in Regulation 37 of the EIA Regulations; and
- Amendment of the impact management actions: in line with the process contemplated in Regulation 36 of the EIA Regulations.

8. Documents to be submitted as part of part B: section 2 site specific information and declaration

Part B: Section 2 has three distinct sub-sections. The first and third sub-sections are in a template format. Sub-section two requires a map to be produced.

Sub-section 1 contains the project name, the applicant's name and contact details, the site information, which includes coordinates of the property or farm in which the proposed



substation infrastructure is proposed as well as the 21-digit Surveyor General code of each cadastral land parcel and, where available, the farm name.

Sub-section 2 is to be prepared by an EAP and must contain his/her name and expertise including a curriculum vitae. This sub-section must include a map of the site sensitivity overlaid with the preliminary infrastructure layout using the national web based environmental screening tool, when available for compulsory use at: <https://screening.environment.gov.za/screeningtool>. The sensitivity map shall identify the nature of each sensitive feature e.g. threatened plant species, archaeological site, etc. Sensitivity maps shall identify features both within the planned working area and any known sensitive features and within 50 m from the development footprint.

Sub-section 3 is the declaration that the applicant (s)/proponent (s) or holder of the EA in the case of a change of ownership must complete which confirms that the applicant/EA holder will comply with the pre-approved 'generic EMP' template in Section 1 and understands that the impact management outcomes and impact management actions are legally binding.

(a) Amendments to Part B: Section 2 – site specific information and declaration

Should the EA be transferred, Part B: Section 2 must be completed by the new applicant/proponent and submitted with the application for an amendment of the EA in terms of regulations 29 or 31 of the EIA Regulations, whichever applies. The information submitted as part of such an application for an amendment to an EA will be considered to be incomplete should a signed copy of Part B: Section 2 not be submitted. Once approved, Part B: Section 2 forms part of the EMP for the development and the EMP becomes legally binding to the new EA holder.

## PART A – GENERAL INFORMATION

### 1. DEFINITIONS

In this EMPr any word or expression to which a meaning has been assigned in the NEMA or EIA Regulations has that meaning, and unless the context requires otherwise –

“clearing” means the clearing and removal of vegetation, whether partially or in whole, including trees and shrubs, as specified;

“construction camp” is the area designated for key construction infrastructure and services, including but not limited to offices, overnight vehicle parking areas, stores, the workshop, stockpile and lay down areas, hazardous storage areas (including fuels), the batching plant (if one is located at the construction camp), designated access routes, equipment cleaning areas and the placement of staff accommodation, cooking and ablution facilities, waste and wastewater management;

“contractor” - The Contractor has overall responsibility for ensuring that all work, activities, and actions linked to the delivery of the contract, are in line with the Environmental Management Programme and that Method Statements are implemented as described.

“hazardous substance” is a substance governed by the Hazardous Substances Act, 1973 (Act No. 15 of 1973) as well as the Hazardous Chemical and Substances Regulations, 1995;

“method statement” means a written submission by the Contractor to the Project Manager in response to this EMPr or a request by the Project Manager and ECO. The method statement must set out the equipment, materials, labour and method(s) the Contractor proposes using to carry out an activity identified by the Project Manager when requesting the Method Statement. This must be done in such detail that the Project Manager and ECO is able to assess whether the Contractor's proposal is in accordance with this specification and/or will produce results in accordance with this specification;

The method statement must cover as a minimum applicable details with regard to:

- (i) Construction procedures;
- (ii) Plant, materials and equipment to be used;
- (iii) Transporting the equipment to and from site;
- (iv) How the plant/ material/ equipment will be moved while on site;
- (v) How and where the plant/ material/ equipment will be stored;
- (vi) The containment (or action to be taken if containment is not possible) of leaks or spills of any liquid or material that may occur;
- (vii) Timing and location of activities;
- (viii) Compliance/ non-compliance; and
- (ix) Any other information deemed necessary by the Project Manager.

“slope” means the inclination of a surface expressed as one unit of rise or fall for so many horizontal units;

“solid waste” means all solid waste, including construction debris, hazardous waste, excess cement/concrete, wrapping materials, timber, cans, drums, wire, nails, food and domestic waste (e.g. plastic packets and wrappers);

“spoil” means excavated material which is unsuitable for use as material in the construction works or is material which is surplus to the requirements of the construction works;

“topsoil” means a varying depth (up to 300 mm) of the soil profile irrespective of the fertility, appearance, structure, agricultural potential, fertility and composition of the soil;

“works” means the works to be executed in terms of the Contract

## 2. ACRONYMS and ABBREVIATIONS

CA	Competent Authority
cEO	Contractors Environmental Officer
dEO	Developer Environmental Officer
DPM	Developer Project Manager
DSS	Developer Site Supervisor
EAR	Environmental Audit Report
ECA	Environmental Conservation Act No. 73 of 1989
ECO	Environmental Control Officer
EA	Environmental Authorisation
EIA	Environmental Impact Assessment
ERAP	Emergency Response Action Plan
EMPr	Environmental Management Programme Report
EAP	Environmental Assessment Practitioner
FPA	Fire Protection Agency
HCS	Hazardous chemical Substance
NEMA	National Environmental Management Act, 1998 (Act No. 107 of 1998)
NEMBA	National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act ,2004 (Act No. 10 of 2004)
NEMWA	National Environmental Management: Waste Act, 2008 (Act No. 59 of 2008)
MSDS	Material Safety Data Sheet
RI&AP's	Registered Interested and affected parties

### 3. ROLES AND RESPONSIBILITIES FOR ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PROGRAMME (EMPr) IMPLEMENTATION

The effective implementation of this generic EMPr is dependent on established and clear roles, responsibilities and reporting lines within an institutional framework. This section of the EMPr gives guidance to the various environmental roles and reporting lines, however, project specific requirements will ultimately determine the need for the appointment of specific person(s) to undertake specific roles and or responsibilities. As such, it must be noted that in the event that no specific person, for example, an environmental control officer (ECO) is appointed, the holder of the EA remains responsible for ensuring that the duties indicated in this document for action by the ECO are undertaken.

Table 1: *Guide to roles and responsibilities for implementation of an EMPr*

Responsible Person(s)	Role and Responsibilities
Developer's Project Manager (DPM)	<p><u>Role</u></p> <p>The Project Developer is accountable for ensuring compliance with the EMPr and any conditions of approval from the competent authority (CA). Where required, an environmental control officer (ECO) must be contracted by the Project Developer to objectively monitor the implementation of the EMPr according to relevant environmental legislation, and the conditions of the environmental authorisation (EA). The Project Developer is further responsible for providing and giving mandate to enable the ECO to perform responsibilities, and he must ensure that the ECO is integrated as part of the project team while remaining independent.</p> <p><u>Responsibilities</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Be fully conversant with the conditions of the EA;</li> <li>- Ensure that all stipulations within the EMPr are communicated and adhered to by the Developer and its Contractor(s);</li> <li>- Issuing of site instructions to the Contractor for corrective actions required;</li> <li>- Monitor the implementation of the EMPr throughout the project by means of site inspections and meetings. Overall management of the project and EMPr implementation; and</li> <li>- Ensure that periodic environmental performance audits are undertaken on the project implementation.</li> </ul>
Developer Site Supervisor (DSS)	<u>Role</u>

Responsible Person(s)	Role and Responsibilities
	<p>The DSS reports directly to the DPM, oversees site works, liaises with the contractor(s) and the ECO. The DSS is responsible for the day to day implementation of the EMPr and for ensuring the compliance of all contractors with the conditions and requirements stipulated in the EMPr.</p> <p><u>Responsibilities</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Ensure that all contractors identify a contractor's Environmental Officer (cEO);</li> <li>- Must be fully conversant with the conditions of the EA. Oversees site works, liaison with Contractor, DPM and ECO;</li> <li>- Must ensure that all landowners have the relevant contact details of the site staff, ECO and cEO;</li> <li>- Issuing of site instructions to the Contractor for corrective actions required;</li> <li>- Will issue all non-compliances to contractors; and</li> <li>- Ratify the Monthly Environmental Report.</li> </ul>
Environmental Control Officer (ECO)	<p><u>Role</u></p> <p>The ECO should have appropriate training and experience in the implementation of environmental management specifications. The primary role of the ECO is to act as an independent quality controller and monitoring agent regarding all environmental concerns and associated environmental impacts. In this respect, the ECO is to conduct periodic site inspections, attend regular site meetings, pre-empt problems and suggest mitigation and be available to advise on incidental issues that arise. The ECO is also required to conduct compliance audits, verifying the monitoring reports submitted by the cEO. The ECO provides feedback to the DSS and Project Manager regarding all environmental matters. The Contractor, cEO and dEO are answerable to the Environmental Control Officer for non-compliance with the Performance Specifications as set out in the EA and EMPr.</p> <p>The ECO provides feedback to the DSS and Project Manager, who in turn reports back to the Contractor and potential and Registered Interested &amp; Affected Parties' (RI&amp;AP's), as required. Issues of non-compliance raised by the ECO must be taken up by the Project Manager, and resolved with the Contractor as per the conditions of his contract. Decisions regarding environmental procedures, specifications and requirements which have a cost implication (i.e. those that are deemed to be a variation, not allowed for in the</p>

Responsible Person(s)	Role and Responsibilities
	<p>Performance Specification) must be endorsed by the Project Manager. The ECO must also, as specified by the EA, report to the relevant CA as and when required.</p> <p><u>Responsibilities</u></p> <p>The responsibilities of the ECO will include the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Be aware of the findings and conclusions of all EA related to the development;</li> <li>- Be familiar with the recommendations and mitigation measures of this EMPr;</li> <li>- Be conversant with relevant environmental legislation, policies and procedures, and ensure compliance with them;</li> <li>- Undertake regular and comprehensive site inspections / audits of the construction site according to the generic EMPr and applicable licenses in order to monitor compliance as required;</li> <li>- Educate the construction team about the management measures contained in the EMPr and environmental licenses;</li> <li>- Compilation and administration of an environmental monitoring plan to ensure that the environmental management measures are implemented and are effective;</li> <li>- Monitoring the performance of the Contractors and ensuring compliance with the EMPr and associated Method Statements;</li> <li>- In consultation with the Developer Site Supervisor order the removal of person(s) and/or equipment which are in contravention of the specifications of the EMPr and/or environmental licenses;</li> <li>- Liaison between the DPM, Contractors, authorities and other lead stakeholders on all environmental concerns;</li> <li>- Compile a regular environmental audit report highlighting any non-compliance issues as well as satisfactory or exceptional compliance with the EMPr;</li> <li>- Validating the regular site inspection reports, which are to be prepared by the contractor Environmental Officer (cEO);</li> <li>- Checking the cEO's record of environmental incidents (spills, impacts, legal transgressions etc.) as well as corrective and preventive actions taken;</li> <li>- Checking the cEO's public complaints register in which all complaints are recorded, as well as action taken;</li> </ul>

Responsible Person(s)	Role and Responsibilities
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Assisting in the resolution of conflicts;</li> <li>- Facilitate training for all personnel on the site – this may range from carrying out the training, to reviewing the training programmes of the Contractor;</li> <li>- In case of non-compliances, the ECO must first communicate this to the Senior Site Supervisor, who has the power to ensure this matter is addressed. Should no action or insufficient action be taken, the ECO may report this matter to the authorities as non-compliance;</li> <li>- Maintenance, update and review of the EMPr;</li> <li>- Communication of all modifications to the EMPr to the relevant stakeholders.</li> </ul>
<p>developer Environmental Officer (dEO)</p>	<p><u>Role</u></p> <p>The dEOs will report to the Project Manager and are responsible for implementation of the EMPr, environmental monitoring and reporting, providing environmental input to the Project Manager and Contractor’s Manager, liaising with contractors and the landowners as well as a range of environmental coordination responsibilities.</p> <p><u>Responsibilities</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Be fully conversant with the EMPr;</li> <li>- Be familiar with the recommendations and mitigation measures of this EMPr, and implement these measures;</li> <li>- Ensure that all stipulations within the EMPr are communicated and adhered to by the Employees, Contractor(s) ;</li> <li>- Confine the development site to the demarcated area;</li> <li>- Conduct environmental internal audits with regards to EMPr and authorisation compliance (on cEO);</li> <li>- Assist the contractors in addressing environmental challenges on site;</li> <li>- Assist in incident management:</li> <li>- Reporting environmental incidents to developer and ensuring that corrective action is taken, and lessons learnt shared;</li> <li>- Assist the contractor in investigating environmental incidents and compile investigation reports;</li> <li>- Follow-up on pre-warnings, defects, non-conformance reports;</li> </ul>



Responsible Person(s)	Role and Responsibilities
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Measure and communicate environmental performance to the Contractor;</li> <li>- Conduct environmental awareness training on site together with ECO and cEO;</li> <li>- Ensure that the necessary legal permits and / or licenses are in place and up to date;</li> <li>- Acting as Developer's Environmental Representative on site and work together with the ECO and contractor;</li> </ul>
Contractor	<p><u>Role</u></p> <p>The Contractor appoints the CEO and has overall responsibility for ensuring that all work, activities, and actions linked to the delivery of the contract are in line with the EMPr and that Method Statements are implemented as described. External contractors must ensure compliance with this EMPr while performing the onsite activities as per their contract with the Project Developer. The contractors are required, where specified, to provide Method Statements setting out in detail how the impact management actions contained in the EMPr will be implemented during the development or expansion of substation infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of electricity activities.</p> <p><u>Responsibilities</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- project delivery and quality control for the development services as per appointment;</li> <li>- employ a suitably qualified person to monitor and report to the Project Developer's appointed person on the daily activities on-site during the construction period;</li> <li>- ensure that safe, environmentally acceptable working methods and practices are implemented, and that equipment is properly operated and maintained, to facilitate proper access and enable any operation to be carried out safely;</li> <li>- attend on site meeting(s) prior to the commencement of activities to confirm the procedure and designated activity zones;</li> <li>- ensure that contractors' staff repair, at their own cost, any environmental damage as a result of a contravention of the specifications contained in EMPr, to the satisfaction of the ECO.</li> </ul>
contractor Environmental Officer (cEO)	<p><u>Role</u></p> <p>Each Contractor affected by the EMPr should appoint a cEO, who is responsible for the on-site implementation of the EMPr (or relevant sections of the EMPr). The Contractor's representative can be the site agent; site engineer; a dedicated environmental officer; or an independent consultant. The Contractor</p>

Responsible Person(s)	Role and Responsibilities
	<p>must ensure that the Contractor's Representative is suitably qualified to perform the necessary tasks and is appointed at a level such that she/he can interact effectively with other site Contractors, labourers, the Environmental Control Officer and the public. As a minimum the cEO shall meet the following criteria:</p> <p><u>Responsibilities</u></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Be on site throughout the duration of the project and be dedicated to the project;</li> <li>- Ensure all their staff are aware of the environmental requirements, conditions and constraints with respect to all of their activities on site;</li> <li>- Implementing the environmental conditions, guidelines and requirements as stipulated within the EA, EMPr and Method Statements;</li> <li>- Attend the Environmental Site Meeting;</li> <li>- Undertaking corrective actions where non-compliances are registered within the stipulated timeframes;</li> <li>- Report back formally on the completion of corrective actions;</li> <li>- Assist the ECO in maintaining all the site documentation;</li> <li>- Prepare the site inspection reports and corrective action reports for submission to the ECO;</li> <li>- Assist the ECO with the preparing of the monthly report; and</li> <li>- Where more than one Contractor is undertaking work on site, each company appointed as a Contractor will appoint a cEO representing that company.</li> </ul>

#### 4. ENVIRONMENTAL DOCUMENTATION REPORTING AND COMPLIANCE

To ensure accountable and demonstrated implementation of the EMPr, a number of reporting systems, documentation controls and compliance mechanisms must be in place for all substation infrastructure projects as a minimum requirement.

##### 4.1 Document control/Filing system

The holder of the EA is solely responsible for the upkeep and management of the EMPr file. As a minimum, all documentation detailed below will be stored in the EMPr file. A hard copy of all documentation shall be filed, while an electronic copy may be kept where relevant. A duplicate file will be maintained in the office of the DSS (where applicable). This duplicate file must remain current and up-to-date. The filing system must be updated and relevant documents added as required. The EMPr file must be made available at all times on request by the CA or other relevant authorities. The EMPr file will form part of any environmental audits undertaken as prescribed in the EIA Regulations.

##### 4.2 Documentation to be available

At the outset of the project the following preliminary list of documents shall be placed in the filing system and be accessible at all times:

- Full copy of the signed EA from the CA in terms of NEMA, granting approval for the development or expansion;
- Copy of the generic and site specific EMPr as well as any amendments thereof;
- Copy of declaration of implementing generic EMPr and subsequent approval of site specific EMPr and amendments thereof;
- All method statements;
- Completed environmental checklists;
- Minutes and attendance register of environmental site meetings;
- An up-to-date environmental incident log;
- A copy of all instructions or directives issued;
- A copy of all corrective actions signed off. The corrective actions must be filed in such a way that a clear reference is made to the non-compliance record;
- Complaints register.

##### 4.3 Weekly Environmental Checklist

The ECOs are required to complete a Weekly Environmental Checklist, the format of which is to be agreed prior to commencement of the activity. The ECOs are required to sign and date the checklist, retain a copy in the EMPr file and submit a copy of the completed checklist to the DSS on a weekly basis.

The checklists will form the basis for the Monthly Environmental Reports. Copies of all completed checklists will be attached as Annexures to the Environmental Audit Report as required in terms of the EIA Regulations.

#### 4.4 Environmental site meetings

Minutes of the environmental site meetings shall be kept. The minutes must include an attendance register and will be attached to the Monthly Report that is distributed to attendees. Each set of minutes must clearly record "Matters for Attention" that will be reviewed at the next meeting.

#### 4.5 Required Method Statements

The method statement will be done in such detail that the ECOs are enabled to assess whether the contractor's proposal is in accordance with the EMPr.

The method statement must cover applicable details with regard to:

- development procedures;
- materials and equipment to be used;
- getting the equipment to and from site;
- how the equipment/ material will be moved while on site;
- how and where material will be stored;
- the containment (or action to be taken if containment is not possible) of leaks or spills of any liquid or material that may occur;
- timing and location of activities;
- compliance/ non-compliance with the EMPr; and
- any other information deemed necessary by the ECOs.

Unless indicated otherwise by the Project Manager, the Contractor shall provide the following method statements to the Project Manager no less than 14 days prior to the commencement date of the activity:

- Site establishment – Camps, Lay-down or storage areas, satellite camps, infrastructure;
- Batch plants;
- Workshop or plant servicing;
- Handling, transport and storage of Hazardous Chemical Substance's;
- Vegetation management – Protected, clearing, aliens, felling;
- Access management – Roads, gates, crossings etc.;
- Fire plan;
- Waste management – transport, storage, segregation, classification, disposal (all waste streams);
- Social interaction – complaints management, compensation claims, access to properties etc.;
- Water – use (source, abstraction and disposal), access and all related information, crossings and mitigation;
- Emergency preparedness – Spills, training, other environmental emergencies;
- Dust and noise management methodologies;
- Fauna interaction and risk management – only if the risk was identified – wildlife interaction especially on game farms; and
- Heritage and palaeontology management.

The ECOs shall monitor and ensure that the contractors perform in accordance with these method statements. Completed and agreed method statements between the holder of the EA and the contractor shall be captured in Appendix 1.

#### 4.6 Environmental Incident Log (Diary)

The ECOs are required to maintain an up-to-date and current Environmental Incident Log (environmental diary). The Environmental Incident Log is a means to record all environmental incidents and/or all non-compliance notice would not be issued. An environmental incident is defined as:

- Any deviation from the listed impact management actions (listed in this EMPr) that may be addressed immediately by the ECOs. (For example a contractor's staff member littering or a drip tray that has not been emptied);
- Any environmental impact resulting from an action or activity by a contractor in contravention of the environmental stipulations and guidelines listed in the EMPr which as a single event would have a minor impact but which if cumulative and continuous would have a significant effect (for example no toilet paper available in the ablutions for an afternoon); and
- General environmental information such as road kills or injured wildlife.

The ECOs are to record all environmental incidents in the Environmental Incident Log. All incidents regardless of severity must be reported to the Developer. The Log is to be kept in the EMPr file and at a minimum the following will be recorded for each environmental incident:

- The date and time of the incident;
- Description of the incident;
- The name of the Contractor responsible;
- The incident must be listed as significant or minor;
- If the incident is listed as significant, a non-compliance notice must be issued, and recorded in the log;
- Remedial or corrective action taken to mitigate the incident; and
- Record of repeat minor offences by the same contractor or staff member.

The Environmental Incident Log will be captured in the EAR.

#### 4.7 Non-compliance

A non-compliance notice will be issued to the responsible contractor by the ECOs via the DSS or Project Manager. The non-compliance notice will be issued in writing; a copy filed in the EMPr file and will at a minimum include the following:

- Time and date of the non-compliance;
- Name of the contractor responsible;
- Nature and description of the non-compliance;
- Recommended / required corrective action; and
- Date by which the corrective action to be completed.
- The contractors shall act immediately when a notice of non-compliance is received and correct whatever is the cause for the issuing of the notice. Complaints received regarding activities on the development site pertaining to the environment shall be recorded in a dedicated register and the response noted with the date and action taken. The ECO should be made aware of any complaints. Any non-compliance with the agreed procedures of the EMPr is a transgression of the various statutes and laws that define the manner by which the environment is managed. Failure to redress

the cause shall be reported to the relevant CA for them to deal with the transgression, as it deems fit. The contractor is deemed not to have complied with the EMPr if, inter alia, There is a deviation from the environmental conditions, impact management outcomes and impact management actions activities, as approved in generic and site specific EMPr as relevant as set out in the EMPr, which deviation has, or may cause, an environmental impact.

#### 4.8 Corrective action records

For each non-compliance notice issued, a documented corrective action must be recorded. On receiving a non-compliance notice from the DSS, the contractor's CEO will ensure that the corrective actions required take place within the stipulated timeframe. On completion of the corrective action the CEO is to issue a Corrective Action Report in writing to the ECOs. If satisfied that the corrective action has been completed, the ECOs are to sign-off on the Corrective Action Report, and attach the report to the non-compliance notice in the EMPr file. A corrective action is considered complete once the report has signed off by the ECOs.

#### 4.9 Photographic record

A digital photographic record will be kept. The photographic record will be used to show before, during and post rehabilitation evidence of the project as well used in cases of damages claims if they arise. Each image must be dated and a brief description note attached.

The Contractor shall:

1. Allow the ECOs access to take photographs of all areas, activities and actions.

The ECOs shall keep an electronic database of photographic records which will include:

1. Pictures of all areas designated as work areas, camp areas, development sites and storage areas taken before these areas are set up;
2. All bunding and fencing;
3. Road conditions and road verges;
4. Condition of all farm fences;
5. Topsoil storage areas;
6. All areas to be cordoned off during construction;
7. Waste management sites;
8. Ablution facilities (inside and out);
9. Any non-conformances deemed to be "significant";
10. All completed corrective actions for non-compliances;
11. All required signage;
12. Photographic recordings of incidents;
13. All areas before, during and post rehabilitation; and
14. Include relevant photographs in the Final Environmental Audit Report.

#### 4.10 Complaints register

The ECOs shall keep a current and up-to-date complaints register. The complaints register is to be a record of all complaints received from communities, stakeholders and individuals. The Complaints Record shall:

1. Record the name and contact details of the complainant;
2. Record the time and date of the complaint;
3. Contain a detailed description of the complaint;
4. Where relevant and appropriate, contain photographic evidence of the complaint or damage (ECOs to take relevant photographs); and
5. Contain a copy of the ECOs written response to each complaint received and keep a record of any further correspondence with the complainant. The ECO's written response will include a description of any corrective action to be taken and must be signed by the Contractor, ECO and affected party. Where a damage claim is issued by the complainant, the ECOs shall respond as described in (section 4.11) below.

#### 4.11 Claims for damages

In the event that a Claim for Damages is submitted by a community, landowner or individual, the ECOs shall:

1. Record the full detail of the complaint as described in (section 4.10) above;
2. The DPM will evaluate the claim and associated damage and submit the evaluation to the Senior Site Representative for approval;
3. Following consideration by the DPM, the claim is to be resolved and settled immediately, or the reason for not accepting the claim communicated in writing to the claimant. Should the claimant not accept this, the ECO shall, in writing report the incident to the Developer's negotiator and legal department; and
4. A formal record of the response by the ECOs to the claimant as well as the rectification of the method of making payments not amount will be recorded in the EMPr file.

#### 4.12 Interactions with affected parties

Open, transparent and good relations with affected landowners, communities and regional staff are an essential aspect to the successful management and mitigation of environmental impacts.

The ECOs shall:

1. Ensure that all queries, complaints and claims are dealt within an agreed timeframe;
2. Ensure that any or all agreements are documented, signed by all parties and a record of the agreement kept in the EMPr file;
3. Ensure that a complaints telephone numbers are made available to all landowners and affected parties; and
4. Ensure that contact with affected parties is courteous at all times;



#### 4.13 Environmental audits

Internal environmental audits of the activity and implementation of the EMPr must be undertaken. The findings and outcomes included in the EMPr file and submitted to the CA at intervals as indicated in the EA.

The ECOs must prepare a monthly EAR. The report will be tabled as the key point on the agenda of the Environmental Site Meeting. The Report is submitted for acceptance at the meeting and the final report will be circulated to the Project Manager and filed in the EMPr file. At a frequency determined by the EA, the ECOs shall submit the monthly reports to the CA. At a minimum the monthly report is to cover the following:

- Weekly Environmental Checklists;
- Deviations and non-compliances with the checklists;
- Non-compliances issued;
- Completed and reported corrective actions;
- Environmental Monitoring;
- General environmental findings and actions; and
- Minutes of the Bi-monthly Environmental Site Meetings.

#### 4.14 Final environmental audits

On final completion of the rehabilitation and/or requirements of the EA a final EAR is to be prepared and submitted to the CA. The EAR must comply with Appendix 7 of the EIA Regulations.

PART B: SECTION 1: Pre-approved generic EMPr template

5. IMPACT MANAGEMENT OUTCOMES AND IMPACT MANAGEMENT ACTIONS

This section provides a pre-approved generic EMPr template with aspects that are common to the development of substation infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of electricity. There is a list of aspects identified for the development or expansion of substation infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of electricity, and for each aspect a set of prescribed impact management outcomes and associated impact management actions have been identified. Holders of EAs are responsible to ensure the implementation of these outcomes and actions for all projects as a minimum requirement, in order to mitigate the impact of such aspects identified for the development or expansion of substation infrastructure for the transmission and distribution of electricity.

The template provided below is to be completed by providing the information under each heading for each environmental impact management action.

The completed template must be signed and dated on each page by both the contractor and the holder of the EA prior to commencement of the activity. The method statements prepared and agreed to by the holder of the EA must be appended to the template as Appendix 1. Each method statement must also be duly signed and dated on each page by the contractor and the holder of the EA. This template, once signed and dated, is legally binding. The holder of the EA will remain responsible for its implementation.

### 5.1 Environmental awareness training

Impact management outcome: All onsite staff are aware and understands the individual responsibilities in terms of this EMPr.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– All staff must receive environmental awareness training prior to commencement of the activities;</li> <li>– The Contractor must allow for sufficient sessions to train all personnel with no more than 20 personnel attending each course;</li> <li>– Refresher environmental awareness training is available as and when required;</li> <li>– All staff are aware of the conditions and controls linked to the EA and within the EMPr and made aware of their individual roles and responsibilities in achieving compliance with the EA and EMPr;</li> <li>– The Contractor must erect and maintain information posters at key locations on site, and the posters must include the following information as a minimum: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Safety notifications; and</li> <li>b) No littering.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Environmental awareness training must include as a minimum the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Description of significant environmental impacts, actual or potential, related to their work activities;</li> <li>b) Mitigation measures to be implemented when carrying out specific activities;</li> </ul> </li> </ul>						

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>c) Emergency preparedness and response procedures;</li> <li>d) Emergency procedures;</li> <li>e) Procedures to be followed when working near or within sensitive areas;</li> <li>f) Wastewater management procedures;</li> <li>g) Water usage and conservation;</li> <li>h) Solid waste management procedures;</li> <li>i) Sanitation procedures;</li> <li>j) Fire prevention; and</li> <li>k) Disease prevention.</li> </ul> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– A record of all environmental awareness training courses undertaken as part of the EMPr must be available;</li> <li>– Educate workers on the dangers of open and/or unattended fires;</li> <li>– A staff attendance register of all staff to have received environmental awareness training must be available.</li> <li>– Course material must be available and presented in appropriate languages that all staff can understand.</li> </ul>						
--	--	--	--	--	--	--

## 5.2 Site Establishment development

Impact management outcome: Impacts on the environment are minimised during site establishment and the development footprint are kept to demarcated development area.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– A method statement must be provided by the contractor prior to any onsite activity that includes the layout of the construction camp in the form of a plan showing the location of key infrastructure and services (where applicable), including but not limited to offices, overnight vehicle parking areas, stores, the workshop, stockpile and lay down areas, hazardous materials storage areas (including fuels), the batching plant (if one is located at the construction camp), designated access routes, equipment cleaning areas and the placement of staff accommodation, cooking and ablution facilities, waste and wastewater management;</li> <li>– Location of camps must be within approved area to ensure that the site does not impact on sensitive areas identified in the environmental assessment or site walk through;</li> <li>– Sites must be located where possible on previously disturbed areas;</li> <li>– The camp must be fenced in accordance with <i>Section 5.5: Fencing and gate installation</i>; and</li> <li>– The use of existing accommodation for contractor staff, where possible, is encouraged.</li> </ul>						
--	--	--	--	--	--	--

### 5.3 Access restricted areas

Impact management outcome: Access to restricted areas prevented.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation	Monitoring
---------------------------	----------------	------------

	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Identification of access restricted areas is to be informed by the environmental assessment, site walk through and any additional areas identified during development;</li> <li>– Erect, demarcate and maintain a temporary barrier with clear signage around the perimeter of any access restricted area, colour coding could be used if appropriate; and</li> <li>– Unauthorised access and development related activity inside access restricted areas is prohibited.</li> </ul>						

#### 5.4 Access roads

Impact management outcome: Minimise impact to the environment through the planned and restricted movement of vehicles on site.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– An access agreement must be formalised and signed by the DPM, Contractor and landowner before commencing with the activities;</li> <li>– All private roads used for access to the servitude must be maintained and upon completion of the works, be left in at least the original condition</li> <li>– All contractors must be made aware of all these access routes.</li> </ul>						

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Any access route deviation from that in the written agreement must be closed and re-vegetated immediately, at the contractor's expense;</li> <li>– Maximum use of both existing servitudes and existing roads must be made to minimize further disturbance through the development of new roads;</li> <li>– In circumstances where private roads must be used, the condition of the said roads must be recorded in accordance with <i>section 4.9: photographic record</i>; prior to use and the condition thereof agreed by the landowner, the DPM, and the contractor;</li> <li>– Access roads in flattish areas must follow fence lines and tree belts to avoid fragmentation of vegetated areas or croplands</li> <li>– Access roads must only be developed on a pre-planned and approved roads.</li> </ul>						
--	--	--	--	--	--	--

### 5.5 Fencing and Gate installation

Impact management outcome: Minimise impact to the environment and ensure safe and controlled access to the site through the erection of fencing and gates where required.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Use existing gates provided to gain access to all parts of the area authorised for development, where possible;</li> <li>– Existing and new gates to be recorded and documented in accordance with <i>section 4.9: photographic record</i>;</li> </ul>						



<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– All gates must be fitted with locks and be kept locked at all times during the development phase, unless otherwise agreed with the landowner;</li> <li>– At points where the line crosses a fence in which there is no suitable gate within the extent of the line servitude, on the instruction of the DPM, a gate must be installed at the approval of the landowner;</li> <li>– Care must be taken that the gates must be so erected that there is a gap of no more than 100 mm between the bottom of the gate and the ground;</li> <li>– Where gates are installed in jackal proof fencing, a suitable reinforced concrete sill must be provided beneath the gate;</li> <li>– Original tension must be maintained in the fence wires;</li> <li>– All gates installed in electrified fencing must be re-electrified;</li> <li>– All demarcation fencing and barriers must be maintained in good working order for the duration of the development activities;</li> <li>– Fencing must be erected around the camp, batching plants, hazardous storage areas, and all designated access restricted areas, where applicable;</li> <li>– Any temporary fencing to restrict the movement of life-stock must only be erected with the permission of the land owner.</li> <li>– All fencing must be developed of high quality material bearing the SABS mark;</li> <li>– The use of razor wire as fencing must be avoided;</li> <li>– Fenced areas with gate access must remain locked after hours, during weekends and on holidays if staff is away from site. Site security will be required at all times;</li> <li>– On completion of the development phase all temporary fences are to be removed;</li> </ul>						
--	--	--	--	--	--	--

– The contractor must ensure that all fence uprights are appropriately removed, ensuring that no uprights are cut at ground level but rather removed completely.						
--	--	--	--	--	--	--

#### 5.6 Water Supply Management

Impact management outcome: Undertake responsible water usage.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– All abstraction points or bore holes must be registered with the DWS and suitable water meters installed to ensure that the abstracted volumes are measured on a daily basis;</li> <li>– The Contractor must ensure the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. The vehicle abstracting water from a river does not enter or cross it and does not operate from within the river;</li> <li>b. No damage occurs to the river bed or banks and that the abstraction of water does not entail stream diversion activities; and</li> <li>c. All reasonable measures to limit pollution or sedimentation of the downstream watercourse are implemented.</li> </ul> </li> <li>– Ensure water conservation is being practiced by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Minimising water use during cleaning of equipment;</li> <li>b. Undertaking regular audits of water systems; and</li> </ul> </li> </ul>						

c. Including a discussion on water usage and conservation during environmental awareness training.						
d. The use of grey water is encouraged.						

#### 5.7 Storm and waste water management

Impact management outcome: Impacts to the environment caused by storm water and wastewater discharges during construction are avoided.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Runoff from the cement/ concrete batching areas must be strictly controlled, and contaminated water must be collected, stored and either treated or disposed of off-site, at a location approved by the project manager;</li> <li>– All spillage of oil onto concrete surfaces must be controlled by the use of an approved absorbent material and the used absorbent material disposed of at an appropriate waste disposal facility;</li> <li>– Natural storm water runoff not contaminated during the development and clean water can be discharged directly to watercourses and water bodies, subject to the Project Manager's approval and support by the ECO;</li> <li>– Water that has been contaminated with suspended solids, such as soils and silt, may be released into watercourses or water bodies only once all suspended solids have been removed from the water by settling out these solids in settlement ponds. The release of settled water back into the</li> </ul>						

environment must be subject to the Project Manager's approval and support by the ECO.						
---	--	--	--	--	--	--

#### 5.8 Solid and hazardous waste management

Impact management outcome: Wastes are appropriately stored, handled and safely disposed of at a recognised waste facility.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– All measures regarding waste management must be undertaken using an integrated waste management approach;</li> <li>– Sufficient, covered waste collection bins (scavenger and weatherproof) must be provided;</li> <li>– A suitably positioned and clearly demarcated waste collection site must be identified and provided;</li> <li>– The waste collection site must be maintained in a clean and orderly manner;</li> <li>– Waste must be segregated into separate bins and clearly marked for each waste type for recycling and safe disposal;</li> <li>– Staff must be trained in waste segregation;</li> <li>– Bins must be emptied regularly;</li> <li>– General waste produced onsite must be disposed of at registered waste disposal sites/ recycling company;</li> <li>– Hazardous waste must be disposed of at a registered waste disposal site;</li> </ul>						

- Certificates of safe disposal for general, hazardous and recycled waste must be maintained.						
---	--	--	--	--	--	--

#### 5.9 Protection of watercourses and estuaries

Impact management outcome: Pollution and contamination of the watercourse environment and or estuary erosion are prevented.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- All watercourses must be protected from direct or indirect spills of pollutants such as solid waste, sewage, cement, oils, fuels, chemicals, aggregate tailings, wash and contaminated water or organic material resulting from the Contractor's activities;</li> <li>- In the event of a spill, prompt action must be taken to clear the polluted or affected areas;</li> <li>- Where possible, no development equipment must traverse any seasonal or permanent wetland</li> <li>- No return flow into the estuaries must be allowed and no disturbance of the Estuarine functional Zone should occur;</li> <li>- Development of permanent watercourse or estuary crossing must only be undertaken where no alternative access to tower position is available;</li> <li>- There must not be any impact on the long term morphological dynamics of watercourses or estuaries;</li> <li>- Existing crossing points must be favored over the creation of new crossings (including temporary access)</li> </ul>						

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- When working in or near any watercourse or estuary, the following environmental controls and consideration must be taken: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Water levels during the period of construction; No altering of the bed, banks, course or characteristics of a watercourse</li> <li>b) During the execution of the works, appropriate measures to prevent pollution and contamination of the riparian environment must be implemented e.g. including ensuring that construction equipment is well maintained;</li> <li>c) Where earthwork is being undertaken in close proximity to any watercourse, slopes must be stabilised using suitable materials, i.e. sandbags or geotextile fabric, to prevent sand and rock from entering the channel; and</li> <li>d) Appropriate rehabilitation and re-vegetation measures for the watercourse banks must be implemented timeously. In this regard, the banks should be appropriately and incrementally stabilised as soon as development allows.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>						
--	--	--	--	--	--	--

5.10 Vegetation clearing

Impact management outcome: Vegetation clearing is restricted to the authorised development footprint of the proposed infrastructure.
--

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
General:						

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Indigenous vegetation which does not interfere with the development must be left undisturbed;</li> <li>– Protected or endangered species may occur on or near the development site. Special care should be taken not to damage such species;</li> <li>– Search, rescue and replanting of all protected and endangered species likely to be damaged during project development must be identified by the relevant specialist and completed prior to any development or clearing;</li> <li>– Permits for removal must be obtained from the relevant CA prior to the cutting or clearing of the affected species, and they must be filed;</li> <li>– The Environmental Audit Report must confirm that all identified species have been rescued and replanted and that the location of replanting is compliant with conditions of approvals;</li> <li>– Trees felled due to construction must be documented and form part of the Environmental Audit Report;</li> <li>– Rivers and watercourses must be kept clear of felled trees, vegetation cuttings and debris;</li> <li>– Only a registered pest control operator may apply herbicides on a commercial basis and commercial application must be carried out under the supervision of a registered pest control operator, supervision of a registered pest control operator or is appropriately trained;</li> <li>– A daily register must be kept of all relevant details of herbicide usage;</li> <li>– No herbicides must be used in estuaries;</li> <li>– All protected species and sensitive vegetation not removed must be clearly marked and such areas fenced off in accordance to <i>Section 5.3: Access restricted areas</i>.</li> </ul>						
--	--	--	--	--	--	--



Alien invasive vegetation must be removed and disposed of at a licensed waste management facility.						
--	--	--	--	--	--	--

#### 5.11 Protection of fauna

Impact management outcome: Disturbance to fauna is minimised.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– No interference with livestock must occur without the landowner's written consent and with the landowner or a person representing the landowner being present;</li> <li>– The breeding sites of raptors and other wild birds species must be taken into consideration during the planning of the development programme;</li> <li>– Breeding sites must be kept intact and disturbance to breeding birds must be avoided. Special care must be taken where nestlings or fledglings are present;</li> <li>– Special recommendations of the avian specialist must be adhered to at all times to prevent unnecessary disturbance of birds;</li> <li>– No poaching must be tolerated under any circumstances. All animal dens in close proximity to the works areas must be marked as Access restricted areas;</li> <li>– No deliberate or intentional killing of fauna is allowed;</li> </ul>						

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– In areas where snakes are abundant, snake deterrents to be deployed on the pylons to prevent snakes climbing up, being electrocuted and causing power outages; and</li> <li>– No Threatened or Protected species (ToPs) and/or protected fauna as listed according NEMBA (Act No. 10 of 2004) and relevant provincial ordinances may be removed and/or relocated without appropriate authorisations/permits.</li> </ul>						
--	--	--	--	--	--	--

#### 5.12 Protection of heritage resources

Impact management outcome: Impact to heritage resources is minimised.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Identify, demarcate and prevent impact to all known sensitive heritage features on site in accordance with the No-Go procedure in <i>Section 5.3: Access restricted areas</i>;</li> <li>– Carry out general monitoring of excavations for potential fossils, artefacts and material of heritage importance;</li> <li>– All work must cease immediately, if any human remains and/or other archaeological, palaeontological and historical material are uncovered. Such material, if exposed, must be reported to the nearest museum, archaeologist/palaeontologist (or the South African Police Services), so that a systematic and professional investigation can be undertaken. Sufficient time must be allowed to</li> </ul>						

remove/collect such material before development recommences.						
--	--	--	--	--	--	--

### 5.13 Safety of the public

Impact management outcome: All precautions are taken to minimise the risk of injury, harm or complaints.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Identify fire hazards, demarcate and restrict public access to these areas as well as notify the local authority of any potential threats e.g. large brush stockpiles, fuels etc.;</li> <li>All unattended open excavations must be adequately fenced or demarcated;</li> <li>Adequate protective measures must be implemented to prevent unauthorised access to and climbing of partly constructed towers and protective scaffolding;</li> <li>Ensure structures vulnerable to high winds are secured;</li> <li>Maintain an incidents and complaints register in which all incidents or complaints involving the public are logged.</li> </ul>						

### 5.14 Sanitation

Impact management outcome: Clean and well maintained toilet facilities are available to all staff in an effort to minimise the risk of disease and impact to the environment.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Mobile chemical toilets are installed onsite if no other ablution facilities are available;</li> <li>– The use of ablution facilities and or mobile toilets must be used at all times and no indiscriminate use of the veld for the purposes of ablutions must be permitted under any circumstances;</li> <li>– Where mobile chemical toilets are required, the following must be ensured: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Toilets are located no closer than 100 m to any watercourse or water body;</li> <li>b) Toilets are secured to the ground to prevent them from toppling due to wind or any other cause;</li> <li>c) No spillage occurs when the toilets are cleaned or emptied and the contents are managed in accordance with the EMPr;</li> <li>d) Toilets have an external closing mechanism and are closed and secured from the outside when not in use to prevent toilet paper from being blown out;</li> <li>e) Toilets are emptied before long weekends and workers holidays, and must be locked after working hours;</li> <li>f) Toilets are serviced regularly and the ECO must inspect toilets to ensure compliance to health standards;</li> </ul> </li> <li>– A copy of the waste disposal certificates must be maintained.</li> </ul>						

#### 5.15 Prevention of disease

Impact Management outcome: All necessary precautions linked to the spread of disease are taken.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Undertake environmentally-friendly pest control in the camp area;</li> <li>– Ensure that the workforce is sensitised to the effects of sexually transmitted diseases, especially HIV AIDS;</li> <li>– The Contractor must ensure that information posters on AIDS are displayed in the Contractor Camp area;</li> <li>– Information and education relating to sexually transmitted diseases to be made available to both construction workers and local community, where applicable;</li> <li>– Free condoms must be made available to all staff on site at central points;</li> <li>– Medical support must be made available;</li> <li>– Provide access to Voluntary HIV Testing and Counselling Services.</li> </ul>						

#### 5.16 Emergency procedures

Impact management outcome: Emergency procedures are in place to enable a rapid and effective response to all types of environmental emergencies.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Compile an Emergency Response Action Plan (ERAP) prior to the commencement of the proposed project;</li> </ul>						

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– The Emergency Plan must deal with accidents, potential spillages and fires in line with relevant legislation;</li> <li>– All staff must be made aware of emergency procedures as part of environmental awareness training;</li> <li>– The relevant local authority must be made aware of a fire as soon as it starts;</li> <li>– In the event of emergency necessary mitigation measures to contain the spill or leak must be implemented (see <i>Hazardous Substances section 5.17</i>).</li> </ul>						
---	--	--	--	--	--	--

#### 5.17 Hazardous substances

Impact management outcome: Safe storage, handling, use and disposal of hazardous substances.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– The use and storage of hazardous substances to be minimised and non-hazardous and non-toxic alternatives substituted where possible;</li> <li>– All hazardous substances must be stored in suitable containers as defined in the Method Statement;</li> <li>– Containers must be clearly marked to indicate contents, quantities and safety requirements;</li> <li>– All storage areas must be bunded. The bunded area must be of sufficient capacity to contain a spill / leak from the stored containers;</li> <li>– Bunded areas to be suitably lined with a SABS approved liner;</li> </ul>						

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– An Alphabetical Hazardous Chemical Substance (HCS) control sheet must be drawn up and kept up to date on a continuous basis;</li> <li>– All hazardous chemicals that will be used on site must have Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS);</li> <li>– All employees working with HCS must be trained in the safe use of the substance and according to the safety data sheet;</li> <li>– Employees handling hazardous substances / materials must be aware of the potential impacts and follow appropriate safety measures. Appropriate personal protective equipment must be made available;</li> <li>– The Contractor must ensure that diesel and other liquid fuel, oil and hydraulic fluid is stored in appropriate storage tanks or in bowzers;</li> <li>– The tanks/ bowzers must be situated on a smooth impermeable surface (concrete) with a permanent bund. The impermeable lining must extend to the crest of the bund and the volume inside the bund must be 130% of the total capacity of all the storage tanks/ bowzers (110% statutory requirement plus an allowance for rainfall);</li> <li>– The floor of the bund must be sloped, draining to an oil separator;</li> <li>– Provision must be made for refueling at the storage area by protecting the soil with an impermeable groundcover. Where dispensing equipment is used, a drip tray must be used to ensure small spills are contained;</li> <li>– All empty externally dirty drums must be stored on a drip tray or within a bunded area;</li> <li>– No unauthorised access into the hazardous substances storage areas must be permitted;</li> </ul>						
---	--	--	--	--	--	--



<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– No smoking must be allowed within the vicinity of the hazardous storage areas;</li> <li>– Adequate fire-fighting equipment must be made available at all hazardous storage areas;</li> <li>– Where refueling away from the dedicated refueling station is required, a mobile refueling unit must be used. Appropriate ground protection such as drip trays must be used;</li> <li>– An appropriately sized spill kit kept onsite relevant to the scale of the activity/s involving the use of hazardous substance must be available at all times;</li> <li>– The responsible operator must have the required training to make use of the spill kit in emergency situations;</li> <li>– An appropriate number of spill kits must be available and must be located in all areas where activities are being undertaken;</li> <li>– In the event of a spill, contaminated soil must be collected in containers and stored in a central location and disposed of according to the National Environmental Management: Waste Act 59 of 2008. Refer to <i>Section 5.7</i> for procedures concerning <i>storm and waste water management</i> and <i>5.8</i> for <i>solid and hazardous waste management</i>.</li> </ul>						
---	--	--	--	--	--	--

#### 5.18 Workshop, equipment maintenance and storage

Impact management outcome: Soil, surface water and groundwater contamination is minimised.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Where possible and practical all maintenance of vehicles and equipment must take place in the workshop area;</li> <li>– During servicing of vehicles or equipment, especially where emergency repairs are effected outside the workshop area, a suitable drip tray must be used to prevent spills onto the soil. The relevant local authority must be made aware of a fire as soon as it starts;</li> <li>– Leaking equipment must be repaired immediately or be removed from site to facilitate repair;</li> <li>– Workshop areas must be monitored for oil and fuel spills;</li> <li>– Appropriately sized spill kit kept onsite relevant to the scale of the activity taking place must be available;</li> <li>– The workshop area must have a bunded concrete slab that is sloped to facilitate runoff into a collection sump or suitable oil / water separator where maintenance work on vehicles and equipment can be performed;</li> <li>– Water drainage from the workshop must be contained and managed in accordance Section 5.7: <i>Storm and waste water management</i>.</li> </ul>						
--	--	--	--	--	--	--

5.19 *Batching plants*

Impact management outcome: Minimise spillages and contamination of soil, surface water and groundwater.
---

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Concrete mixing must be carried out on an impermeable surface;</li> <li>– Batching plants areas must be fitted with a containment facility for the collection of cement laden water.</li> <li>– Dirty water from the batching plant must be contained to prevent soil and groundwater contamination</li> <li>– Bagged cement must be stored in an appropriate facility and at least 10 m away from any water courses, gullies and drains;</li> <li>– A washout facility must be provided for washing of concrete associated equipment. Water used for washing must be restricted;</li> <li>– Hardened concrete from the washout facility or concrete mixer can either be reused or disposed of at an appropriate licenced disposal facility;</li> <li>– Empty cement bags must be secured with adequate binding material if these will be temporarily stored on site;</li> <li>– Sand and aggregates containing cement must be kept damp to prevent the generation of dust (Refer to <i>Section 5.20: Dust emissions</i>)</li> <li>– Any excess sand, stone and cement must be removed or reused from site on completion of construction period and disposed at a registered disposal facility;</li> <li>– Temporary fencing must be erected around batching plants in accordance with <i>Section 5.5: Fencing and gate installation</i>.</li> </ul>						
---	--	--	--	--	--	--

5.20 Dust emissions

Impact management outcome: Dust prevention measures are applied to minimise the generation of dust.
---

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Take all reasonable measures to minimise the generation of dust as a result of project development activities to the satisfaction of the ECO;</li> <li>– Removal of vegetation must be avoided until such time as soil stripping is required and similarly exposed surfaces must be re-vegetated or stabilised as soon as is practically possible;</li> <li>– Excavation, handling and transport of erodible materials must be avoided under high wind conditions or when a visible dust plume is present;</li> <li>– During high wind conditions, the ECO must evaluate the situation and make recommendations as to whether dust-damping measures are adequate, or whether working will cease altogether until the wind speed drops to an acceptable level;</li> <li>– Where possible, soil stockpiles must be located in sheltered areas where they are not exposed to the erosive effects of the wind;</li> <li>– Where erosion of stockpiles becomes a problem, erosion control measures must be implemented at the discretion of the ECO;</li> <li>– Vehicle speeds must not exceed 40 km/h along dust roads or 20 km/h when traversing unconsolidated and non-vegetated areas;</li> <li>– Straw stabilisation must be applied at a rate of one bale/10 m<sup>2</sup> and harrowed into the top 100 mm of top material, for all completed earthworks;</li> </ul>						

– For significant areas of excavation or exposed ground, dust suppression measures must be used to minimise the spread of dust.						
---	--	--	--	--	--	--

#### 5.21 Blasting

Impact management outcome: Impact to the environment is minimised through a safe blasting practice.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Any blasting activity must be conducted by a suitably licensed blasting contractor; and</li> <li>Notification of surrounding landowners, emergency services site personnel of blasting activity 24 hours prior to such activity taking place on Site.</li> </ul>						

#### 5.22 Noise

Impact Management outcome: Prevent unnecessary noise to the environment by ensuring that noise from development activity is mitigated.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Contractor must keep noise level within acceptable limits, Restrict the use of sound amplification equipment for communication and emergency only;</li> </ul>						

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– All vehicles and machinery must be fitted with appropriate silencing technology and must be properly maintained;</li> <li>– Any complaints received by the Contractor regarding noise must be recorded and communicated. Where possible or applicable, provide transport to and from the site on a daily basis for construction workers;</li> <li>– Develop a Code of Conduct for the construction phase in terms of behaviour of construction staff. Operating hours as determined by the environmental authorisation are adhered to during the development phase. Where not defined, it must be ensured that development activities must still meet the impact management outcome related to noise management.</li> </ul>						
--	--	--	--	--	--	--

### 5.23 Fire prevention

Impact management outcome: Prevention of uncontrollable fires.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Designate smoking areas where the fire hazard could be regarded as insignificant;</li> <li>– Firefighting equipment must be available on all vehicles located on site;</li> <li>– The local Fire Protection Agency (FPA) must be informed of construction activities;</li> <li>– Contact numbers for the FPA and emergency services must be communicated in environmental awareness training and displayed at a central location on site;</li> </ul>						

– Two way swop of contact details between ECO and FPA.						
--	--	--	--	--	--	--

#### 5.24 Stockpiling and stockpile areas

Impact management outcome: Reduce erosion and sedimentation as a result of stockpiling.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– All material that is excavated during the project development phase (either during piling (if required) or earthworks) must be stored appropriately on site in order to minimise impacts to watercourses, watercourses and water bodies;</li> <li>– All stockpiled material must be maintained and kept clear of weeds and alien vegetation growth by undertaking regular weeding and control methods;</li> <li>– Topsoil stockpiles must not exceed 2 m in height;</li> <li>– During periods of strong winds and heavy rain, the stockpiles must be covered with appropriate material (e.g. cloth, tarpaulin etc.);</li> <li>– Where possible, sandbags (or similar) must be placed at the bases of the stockpiled material in order to prevent erosion of the material.</li> </ul>						

#### 5.25 Civil works

Impact management outcome: Impact to the environment minimised during civil works to create the substation terrace.



Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Where terracing is required, topsoil must be collected and retained for the purpose of re-use later to rehabilitate disturbed areas not covered by yard stone;</li> <li>Areas to be rehabilitated include terrace embankments and areas outside the high voltage yards;</li> <li>Where required, all sloped areas must be stabilised to ensure proper rehabilitation is effected and erosion is controlled;</li> <li>These areas can be stabilised using design structures or vegetation as specified in the design to prevent erosion of embankments. The contract design specifications must be adhered to and implemented strictly;</li> <li>Rehabilitation of the disturbed areas must be managed in accordance with <i>Section 5.35: Landscaping and rehabilitation</i>;</li> <li>All excess spoil generated during terracing activities must be disposed of in an appropriate manner and at a recognised landfill site; and</li> <li>Spoil can however be used for landscaping purposes and must be covered with a layer of 150 mm topsoil for rehabilitation purposes.</li> </ul>						

#### 5.26 Excavation of foundation, cable trenching and drainage systems

Impact management outcome: No environmental degradation occurs as a result of excavation of foundation, cable trenching and drainage systems.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– All excess spoil generated during foundation excavation must be disposed of in an appropriate manner and at a licensed landfill site, if not used for backfilling purposes;</li> <li>– Spoil can however be used for landscaping purposes and must be covered with a layer of 150 mm topsoil for rehabilitation purposes;</li> <li>– Management of equipment for excavation purposes must be undertaken in accordance with <i>Section 5.18: Workshop, equipment maintenance and storage</i>; and</li> <li>– Hazardous substances spills from equipment must be managed in accordance with <i>Section 5.17: Hazardous substances</i>.</li> </ul>						

#### 5.27 Installation of foundations, cable trenching and drainage systems

Impact management outcome: No environmental degradation occurs during the installation of foundation, cable trenching and drainage system.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Batching of cement to be undertaken in accordance with <i>Section 5.19: Batching plants</i>; and</li> <li>– Residual solid waste must be disposed of in accordance with <i>Section 5.8: Solid waste and hazardous management</i>.</li> </ul>						

5.28 Installation of equipment (circuit breakers, current Transformers, Isolators, Insulators, surge arresters, voltage transformers, earth switches)

Impact management outcome: No environmental degradation occurs as a result of installation of equipment.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Management of dust must be conducted in accordance with Section 5. 20: <i>Dust emissions</i>;</li> <li>– Management of equipment used for installation must be conducted in accordance with Section 5.18: <i>Workshop, equipment maintenance and storage</i>;</li> <li>– Management hazardous substances and any associated spills must be conducted in accordance with Section 5.17: <i>Hazardous substances</i>; and</li> <li>– Residual solid waste must be recycled or disposed of in accordance with Section 5.8: <i>Solid waste and hazardous management</i>.</li> </ul>						

5.29 Steelwork Assembly and Erection

Impact management outcome: No environmental degradation occurs as a result of steelwork assembly and erection.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– During assembly, care must be taken to ensure that no wasted/unused materials are left on site e.g. bolts and nuts</li> <li>– Emergency repairs due to breakages of equipment must be managed in accordance with <i>Section 5.18: Workshop, equipment maintenance and storage</i> and <i>Section 5.16: Emergency procedures</i>.</li> </ul>						
--	--	--	--	--	--	--

### 5.30 Cabling and Stringing

Impact management outcome: No environmental degradation occurs as a result of stringing.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Residual solid waste (off cuts etc.) shall be recycled or disposed of in accordance with <i>Section 6.8: Solid waste and hazardous Management</i>;</li> <li>– Management of equipment used for installation shall be conducted in accordance with <i>Section 5.18: Workshop, equipment maintenance and storage</i>;</li> <li>– Management hazardous substances and any associated spills shall be conducted in accordance with <i>Section 5.17: Hazardous substances</i>.</li> </ul>						

### 5.31 Testing and Commissioning (all equipment testing, earthing system, system integration)

Impact management outcome: No environmental degradation occurs as a result of Testing and Commissioning.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Residual solid waste must be recycled or disposed of in accordance with <i>Section 5.8: Solid waste and hazardous management</i>.</li> </ul>						

### 5.32 Socio-economic

Impact management outcome: enhanced socio-economic development.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Develop and implement communication strategies to facilitate public participation;</li> <li>Develop and implement a collaborative and constructive approach to conflict resolution as part of the external stakeholder engagement process;</li> <li>Sustain continuous communication and liaison with neighboring owners and residents</li> <li>Create work and training opportunities for local stakeholders; and</li> </ul>						

– Where feasible, no workers, with the exception of security personnel, must be permitted to stay over-night on the site. This would reduce the risk to local farmers.						
--	--	--	--	--	--	--

### 5.33 Temporary closure of site

Impact management outcome: Minimise the risk of environmental impact during periods of site closure greater than five days.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Bunds must be emptied (where applicable) and need to be undertaken in accordance with the impact management actions included in sections 5.17: <i>Hazardous substances and 5.18: Workshop, equipment maintenance and storage</i>;</li> <li>– Hazardous storage areas must be well ventilated;</li> <li>– Fire extinguishers must be serviced and accessible. Service records to be filed and audited at last service;</li> <li>– Emergency and contact details displayed must be displayed;</li> <li>– Security personnel must be briefed and have the facilities to contact or be contacted by relevant management and emergency personnel;</li> <li>– Night hazards such as reflectors, lighting, traffic signage etc. must have been checked;</li> <li>– Fire hazards identified and the local authority must have been notified of any potential threats e.g. large brush stockpiles, fuels etc.;</li> <li>– Structures vulnerable to high winds must be secured;</li> </ul>						

<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Wind and dust mitigation must be implemented;</li> <li>– Cement and materials stores must have been secured;</li> <li>– Toilets must have been emptied and secured;</li> <li>– Refuse bins must have been emptied and secured;</li> <li>– Drip trays must have been emptied and secured.</li> </ul>						
--	--	--	--	--	--	--

#### 5.34 Dismantling of old equipment

Impact management outcome: Impact to the environment to be minimised during the dismantling, storage and disposal of old equipment commissioning.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– All old equipment removed during the project must be stored in such a way as to prevent pollution of the environment;</li> <li>– Oil containing equipment must be stored to prevent leaking or be stored on drip trays;</li> <li>– All scrap steel must be stacked neatly and any disused and broken insulators must be stored in containers;</li> <li>– Once material has been scrapped and the contract has been placed for removal, the disposal Contractor must ensure that any equipment containing pollution causing substances is dismantled and transported in such a way as to prevent spillage and pollution of the environment;</li> <li>– The Contractor must also be equipped to contain and clean up any pollution causing spills; and</li> <li>– Disposal of unusable material must be at a licensed waste disposal site.</li> </ul>						

### 5.35 Landscaping and rehabilitation

Impact management outcome: Areas disturbed during the development phase are returned to a state that approximates the original condition.

Impact Management Actions	Implementation			Monitoring		
	Responsible person	Method of implementation	Timeframe for implementation	Responsible person	Frequency	Evidence of compliance
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– All areas disturbed by construction activities must be subject to landscaping and rehabilitation; All spoil and waste must be disposed of to a registered waste site;</li> <li>– All slopes must be assessed for contouring, and to contour only when the need is identified in accordance with the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act, No 43 of 1983</li> <li>– All slopes must be assessed for terracing, and to terrace only when the need is identified in accordance with the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act, No 43 of 1983;</li> <li>– Berms that have been created must have a slope of 1:4 and be replanted with indigenous species and grasses that approximates the original condition;</li> <li>– Where new access roads have crossed cultivated farmlands, that lands must be rehabilitated by ripping which must be agreed to by the holder of the EA and the landowners;</li> <li>– Rehabilitation of access roads outside of farmland;</li> <li>– Indigenous species must be used for with species and/grasses to where it compliments or approximates the original condition;</li> <li>– Stockpiled topsoil must be used for rehabilitation (refer to <i>Section 5.24: Stockpiling and stockpiled areas</i>);</li> </ul>						



<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>– Stockpiled topsoil must be evenly spread so as to facilitate seeding and minimise loss of soil due to erosion;</li> <li>– Before placing topsoil, all visible weeds from the placement area and from the topsoil must be removed;</li> <li>– Subsoil must be ripped before topsoil is placed;</li> <li>– The rehabilitation must be timed so that rehabilitation can take place at the optimal time for vegetation establishment;</li> <li>– Where impacted through construction related activity, all sloped areas must be stabilised to ensure proper rehabilitation is effected and erosion is controlled;</li> <li>– Sloped areas stabilised using design structures or vegetation as specified in the design to prevent erosion of embankments. The contract design specifications must be adhered to and implemented strictly;</li> <li>– Spoil can be used for backfilling or landscaping as long as it is covered by a minimum of 150 mm of topsoil.</li> <li>– Where required, re-vegetation including hydro-seeding can be enhanced using a vegetation seed mixture as described below. A mixture of seed can be used provided the mixture is carefully selected to ensure the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Annual and perennial plants are chosen;</li> <li>b) Pioneer species are included;</li> <li>c) Species chosen must be indigenous to the area with the seeds used coming from the area;</li> <li>d) Root systems must have a binding effect on the soil;</li> <li>e) The final product must not cause an ecological imbalance in the area</li> </ul> </li> </ul>						
---	--	--	--	--	--	--

## 6 ACCESS TO THE GENERIC EMPr

Once completed and signed, to allow the public access to the generic EMPr, the holder of the EA must make the EMPr available to the public in accordance with the requirements of Regulation 26(h) of the EIA Regulations.

## PART B: SECTION 2

## 7 SITE SPECIFIC INFORMATION AND DECLARATION

### 7.1 Sub-section 1: contact details and description of the project

#### 7.1.1 Details of the applicant:

ENERTRAG South Africa (Pty) Ltd is the project proponent (Applicant) with regards to the application for the construction of the 132kV Grid Connection and Associated Infrastructure for the Igolide Wind Energy Facility, northeast of Fochville, within the Merafong City Local Municipality in the Gauteng Province.

PROPONENT:	ENERTRAG SOUTH AFRICA (PTY) LTD
Contact Person:	Mercia Grimbeek
Postal Address	Suite 104, Albion Springs, 183 Main Road, Rondebosch, Cape Town, South Africa 7700
Telephone:	071 752 8033
Email:	Mercia.Grimbeek@enertrag.com

*Refer to Section 1.2 of the EMPr*

#### 7.1.2 Details and expertise of the EAP:

WSP was appointed in the role of Independent EAP to undertake the BA processes for the proposed construction of the powerline and associated substations. The CV of the EAP is available in Appendix A. The EAP declaration of interest and undertaking is included in Appendix B.

EAP	WSP GROUP AFRICA (PTY) LTD
Contact Person:	Ashlea Strong
Physical Address:	Building C, Knightsbridge, 33 Sloane Street, Bryanston, Johannesburg

Postal Address:	P.O. Box 98867, Sloane Park 2151, Johannesburg
Telephone:	011 361 1392
Fax:	011 361 1301
Email:	<a href="mailto:Ashlea.Strong@wsp.com">Ashlea.Strong@wsp.com</a>
EAP Qualifications	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— Masters in Environmental Management, University of the Free State</li> <li>— B Tech, Nature Conservation, Technikon SA</li> <li>— National Diploma in Nature Conservation, Technikon SA</li> </ul>
EAPASA Registration Number:	EAPASA (2019/1005)

*Refer to Section 1.3 of the EMPr*

#### 7.1.3 Project name:

Grid Connection and Associated Infrastructure for the Igolide Wind Energy Facility, northeast of Fochville, within the Merafong City Local Municipality in the Gauteng Province

#### 7.1.4 Description of the project:

*Refer to Section 3 of the EMPr*

*Refer to Section 3 of the EMPr*

ENERTRAG South Africa (Pty) Ltd is proposing to develop a 132kV switching station, a 132kV single or double circuit powerline, and termination point upgrades (as may be necessary), including possible expansion, to allow for the proposed new 132kV powerline connection (hereafter the "Project"). The Project is intended to feed the electricity generated by the approved 100MW Igolide Wind Energy Facility ("WEF") (DFFE reference number: 14/12/16/3/3/2/2385, EA date 31 January 2024) to the national energy grid, with the point of connection being the existing East Drie Five Substation. The project includes the following components:

- Construction of 1 x 132kV powerline (either single or double circuit). A corridor of up to 250m in width (125m on either side of the centre line) has been identified for the placement of the up to 132kV single or double circuit power line to allow flexibility in the design of the final powerline route, and for the avoidance of sensitive environmental features (where possible).
- Construction of 1 x 132kV switching station. The switching station assessment site is ~2.5ha as the switching station will be located adjacent to the approved 132kV on-site IPP substation (DFFE reference number: 14/12/16/3/3/2/2385, EA date 31 January 2024) which was assessed as part of the Igolide WEF Environmental Authorisation process. A 500m buffer around the switching station has been identified to ensure flexibility in routing the powerline. The switching station will include, but is not limited to:
  - A high voltage substation yard to allow for multiple 132kV feeder bays.

- Standard substation electrical equipment, including but not limited to, busbars, office area, operation and control room, workshop and storage area, feeder bays, stringer strain beams, insulators, isolators, conductors, circuit breakers, lightning arrestors, relays, capacitor banks, batteries, wave trappers, switchyard, metering and indication instruments, equipment for carrier current, surge protection and outgoing feeders, as may be required.
- Control building, telecommunication infrastructure, oil dam(s), etc.
- Workshop and office area within the switching station footprint.
- Fencing around the switching station.
- All the access road infrastructure to and within the switching station.
- Associated infrastructure, including but not limited to, lighting, fencing, and buildings required for operation (ablutions, office, workshop and control room, security fencing and gating, parking area, concrete batching plant (if required), waste storage/disposal and storerooms).
- Upgrades at the terminal points to the (existing East Drie Five Substation) to accommodate the powerline from the Igolide WEF (feeder bay and transformer upgrade), including expansion within the yard, where required, with a footprint of up to 4ha. Standard substation infrastructure will include: operation and control room, transformer oil dam, and standard substation electrical equipment (feeder bays, transformers, busbars, stringer strain beams, insulators, isolators, conductors, circuit breakers, lightning arrestors, relays, capacitor banks, batteries, wave/line trappers, switchyard, metering and indication instruments, equipment for carrier current, surge protection and outgoing feeders, as may be required).

Overhead Powerline	Description
Powerline capacity	132kV
Powerline corridors width	A grid connection corridor has been identified for the assessment and placement of the grid connection infrastructure, comprising 250m (i.e., 125m on either side of centre line). The entire corridor is proposed for development provided the infrastructure remains within the assessed corridor.
Powerline servitude width	32m
Powerline pylons:	Monopole or Lattice pylons, or a combination of both where required and as informed by detailed design
Construction clearance required (per pylon)	Permanent footprint sizes may vary depending on design type, however up to 140m <sup>2</sup> may be required for each pylon foundations, depending on the number and design of the foundation.
Powerline pylon height:	40m
Minimum conductor clearance	8.1m
Pylon spacing	Up to 250m apart, depending on complexity and slope of terrain
Pylon designs	Various pylon design types are considered (and will be determined during the detailed design engineering phase), and may include any of the following:

	<p>132kV (single or double circuit) Intermediate self-supporting monopole Inline or angle-strain self-supporting monopole Suspension self-supporting monopole Triple pole structure Cross rope suspension; Guyed "V" Structure Steel lattice structure; or Similar pylon design at 132kV specification</p> <p>The above designs may require anchors with guy-wires or be anchorless. For 132kV structures, concrete foundation sizes may vary depending on design type up to 140m<sup>2</sup> (12m by 12m), with depths reaching up to 4m typically in a rectangular 'pad' shape.</p>
Substation (Switching Station connection components)	
switching station	<p>The total footprint for the onsite switching substation will be up to 2.5ha in extent.</p> <p>The on-site Eskom switching substation will consist of a high voltage substation yard to allow for multiple 132kV feeder bays and transformers, control building, telecommunication infrastructure, and other substation components, as required.</p> <p>Standard substation electrical equipment, including but not limited to transformers, busbars, office area, operation and control room, workshop, and storage area, feeder bays, transformers, stringer strain beams, insulators, isolators, conductors, circuit breakers, lightning arrestors, relays, capacitor banks, batteries, wave trappers, switchyard, metering and indication instruments, equipment for carrier current, surge protection and outgoing feeders, as may be needed.</p> <p>A 500m buffer around the switching substation will be assessed to ensure flexibility in routing the powerline.</p>
Substation Capacity	33/132kV
Corridor width	A grid connection corridor has been identified for the assessment and placement of the grid connection infrastructure, comprising 250m (125m on either side of the centre line) around the entire perimeter of the proposed substation sites. The entire corridor is proposed for development provided the infrastructure remains within the assessed corridor.
Associated infrastructure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Telecommunication infrastructure (including along the length of the powerline and with the substations)</li> <li>• Oil dam(s)</li> <li>• Workshop and controlling building and office area within the substation footprint</li> <li>• Fencing around the substation</li> <li>• Lighting and security infrastructure</li> <li>• All the access road infrastructure to and within the substation</li> <li>• Maintenance road/access track along the length of the powerline for maintenance purposes</li> <li>• Further ancillary infrastructure including but not limited to lighting, lightning protection, fencing, buildings required for operation (ablutions, office, workshop and control room, security fencing and gating, parking area, concrete batching plant (if required), waste storage/disposal and storerooms).</li> </ul>

### 7.1.5 Project location:

**IGOLIDE GRID COORDINATES**

**Legend**

- Coordinates
- Powerline: Switching Station to East Drie Five
- Grid Infrastructure
  - East Drie Five Substation
  - Switching Station
  - Igolide to East Drie Five (corridor 250m)
  - East Drie Substation (buffer 500m)
  - Switching Station (buffer 500m)

**Data Tables:**

Label	X-Coordinate	Y-Coordinate
A	27° 30' 50.012" E	26° 26' 30.391" S
B	27° 30' 44.744" E	26° 26' 26.846" S
C	27° 30' 28.306" E	26° 25' 44.351" S
D	27° 30' 34.326" E	26° 25' 27.326" S
E	27° 30' 30.471" E	26° 24' 57.428" S
F	27° 30' 14.799" E	26° 24' 56.729" S
G	27° 30' 12.415" E	26° 24' 57.557" S
H	27° 30' 15.599" E	26° 25' 6.098" S

Label	X-Coordinate	Y-Coordinate
14	27° 30' 13.161" E	26° 25' 6.489" S
15	27° 30' 14.291" E	26° 25' 9.852" S
16	27° 30' 18.099" E	26° 25' 8.774" S
17	27° 30' 16.875" E	26° 25' 5.365" S
10	27° 30' 48.330" E	26° 26' 30.233" S
11	27° 30' 49.089" E	26° 26' 33.735" S
12	27° 30' 56.871" E	26° 26' 33.296" S
13	27° 30' 56.458" E	26° 26' 29.536" S

**Scale:** 0 180 360 540 720 Metres

**Disclaimer:** This document is the property of WSP Environmental Pty Ltd. It contains confidential information and its disclosure or use for any purpose other than that intended by WSP Environmental Pty Ltd is strictly prohibited.

**WSP ENVIRONMENTAL PTY LTD**

**DATA SOURCES:** SOUTH AFRICAN BUREAU OF SURVEYING (SABS), NATIONAL SPATIAL INFORMATION SYSTEM (NSIS), SOUTH AFRICAN DEPARTMENT OF WATER AND SANITATION (DWS), SOUTH AFRICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS (SANS) 1000, 1001, 1002, 1003, 1004, 1005, 1006, 1007, 1008, 1009, 1010, 1011, 1012, 1013, 1014, 1015, 1016, 1017, 1018, 1019, 1020, 1021, 1022, 1023, 1024, 1025, 1026, 1027, 1028, 1029, 1030, 1031, 1032, 1033, 1034, 1035, 1036, 1037, 1038, 1039, 1040, 1041, 1042, 1043, 1044, 1045, 1046, 1047, 1048, 1049, 1050, 1051, 1052, 1053, 1054, 1055, 1056, 1057, 1058, 1059, 1060, 1061, 1062, 1063, 1064, 1065, 1066, 1067, 1068, 1069, 1070, 1071, 1072, 1073, 1074, 1075, 1076, 1077, 1078, 1079, 1080, 1081, 1082, 1083, 1084, 1085, 1086, 1087, 1088, 1089, 1090, 1091, 1092, 1093, 1094, 1095, 1096, 1097, 1098, 1099, 1100, 1101, 1102, 1103, 1104, 1105, 1106, 1107, 1108, 1109, 1110, 1111, 1112, 1113, 1114, 1115, 1116, 1117, 1118, 1119, 1120, 1121, 1122, 1123, 1124, 1125, 1126, 1127, 1128, 1129, 1130, 1131, 1132, 1133, 1134, 1135, 1136, 1137, 1138, 1139, 1140, 1141, 1142, 1143, 1144, 1145, 1146, 1147, 1148, 1149, 1150, 1151, 1152, 1153, 1154, 1155, 1156, 1157, 1158, 1159, 1160, 1161, 1162, 1163, 1164, 1165, 1166, 1167, 1168, 1169, 1170, 1171, 1172, 1173, 1174, 1175, 1176, 1177, 1178, 1179, 1180, 1181, 1182, 1183, 1184, 1185, 1186, 1187, 1188, 1189, 1190, 1191, 1192, 1193, 1194, 1195, 1196, 1197, 1198, 1199, 1200, 1201, 1202, 1203, 1204, 1205, 1206, 1207, 1208, 1209, 1210, 1211, 1212, 1213, 1214, 1215, 1216, 1217, 1218, 1219, 1220, 1221, 1222, 1223, 1224, 1225, 1226, 1227, 1228, 1229, 1230, 1231, 1232, 1233, 1234, 1235, 1236, 1237, 1238, 1239, 1240, 1241, 1242, 1243, 1244, 1245, 1246, 1247, 1248, 1249, 1250, 1251, 1252, 1253, 1254, 1255, 1256, 1257, 1258, 1259, 1260, 1261, 1262, 1263, 1264, 1265, 1266, 1267, 1268, 1269, 1270, 1271, 1272, 1273, 1274, 1275, 1276, 1277, 1278, 1279, 1280, 1281, 1282, 1283, 1284, 1285, 1286, 1287, 1288, 1289, 1290, 1291, 1292, 1293, 1294, 1295, 1296, 1297, 1298, 1299, 1300, 1301, 1302, 1303, 1304, 1305, 1306, 1307, 1308, 1309, 1310, 1311, 1312, 1313, 1314, 1315, 1316, 1317, 1318, 1319, 1320, 1321, 1322, 1323, 1324, 1325, 1326, 1327, 1328, 1329, 1330, 1331, 1332, 1333, 1334, 1335, 1336, 1337, 1338, 1339, 1340, 1341, 1342, 1343, 1344, 1345, 1346, 1347, 1348, 1349, 1350, 1351, 1352, 1353, 1354, 1355, 1356, 1357, 1358, 1359, 1360, 1361, 1362, 1363, 1364, 1365, 1366, 1367, 1368, 1369, 1370, 1371, 1372, 1373, 1374, 1375, 1376, 1377, 1378, 1379, 1380, 1381, 1382, 1383, 1384, 1385, 1386, 1387, 1388, 1389, 1390, 1391, 1392, 1393, 1394, 1395, 1396, 1397, 1398, 1399, 1400, 1401, 1402, 1403, 1404, 1405, 1406, 1407, 1408, 1409, 1410, 1411, 1412, 1413, 1414, 1415, 1416, 1417, 1418, 1419, 1420, 1421, 1422, 1423, 1424, 1425, 1426, 1427, 1428, 1429, 1430, 1431, 1432, 1433, 1434, 1435, 1436, 1437, 1438, 1439, 1440, 1

---

**60** | P a g e

Refer to Figure 1 Coordinates for the proposed substations are below:

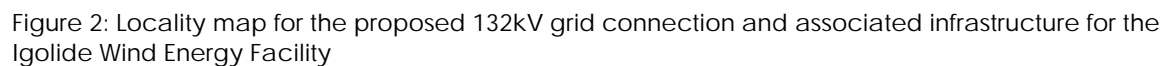
On-site switching substation

10	27° 30' 48.330" E	26° 26' 30.233" S
11	27° 30' 49.089" E	26° 26' 33.735" S
12	27° 30' 56.871" E	26° 26' 33.296" S
13	27° 30' 56.458" E	26° 26' 29.536" S

Switching Station

14	27° 30' 13.161" E	26° 25' 6.489" S
15	27° 30' 14.291" E	26° 25' 9.852" S
16	27° 30' 18.099" E	26° 25' 8.774" S
17	27° 30' 16.875" E	26° 25' 5.365" S" S





Refer to Section 3 of the EMPr

This sub-section must include a map of the site sensitivity overlaid with the preliminary infrastructure layout. The sensitivity map must be prepared from the national web based environmental screening tool, when available for compulsory use at: <https://screening.environment.gov.za/screeningtool>. The sensitivity map shall identify the nature of each sensitive feature e.g. threatened plant species, archaeological site, etc. Sensitivity maps shall identify features both within the planned working area and any known sensitive features within 50 m from the development footprint.

---

**62** | P a g e



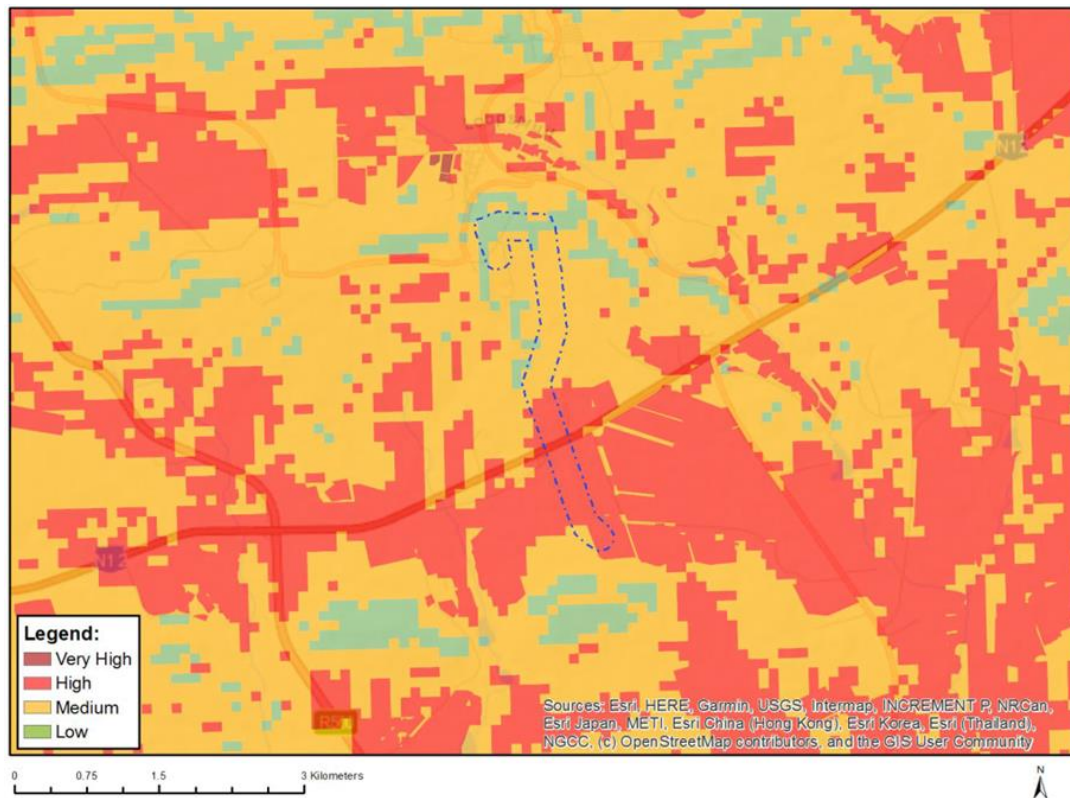


Figure 3: DFFE Screening Tool extract: Agricultural species theme

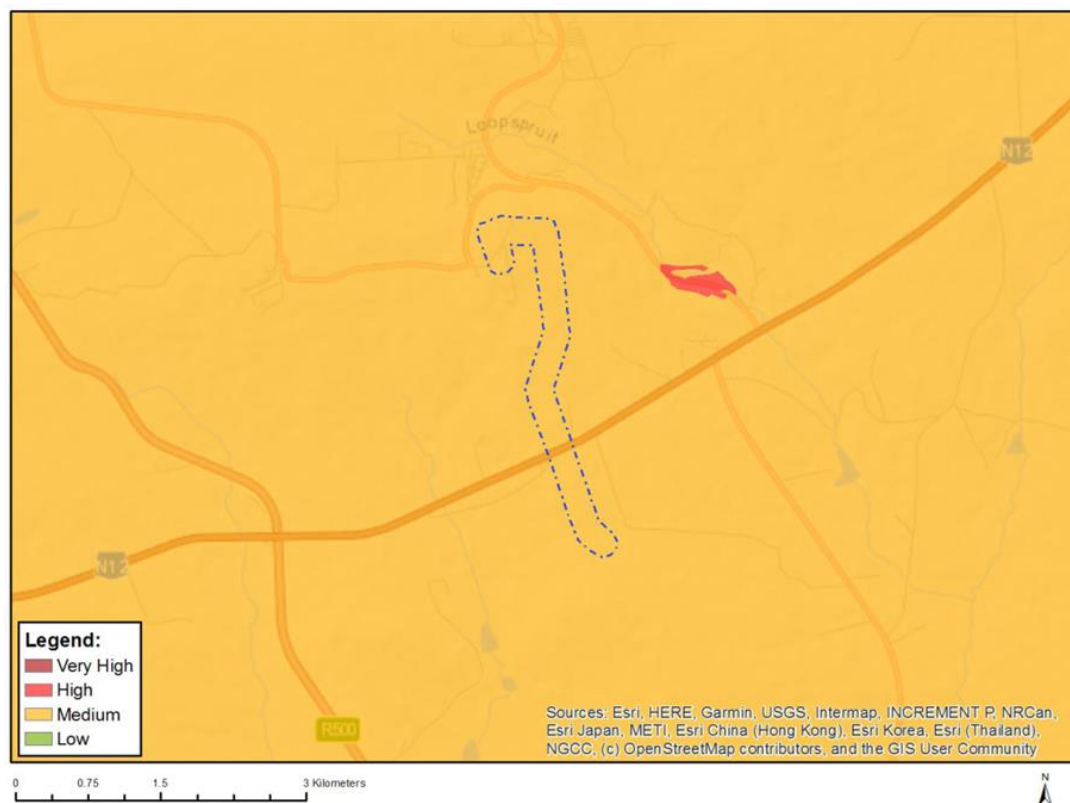


Figure 4: DFFE Screening Tool extract: Animal species theme

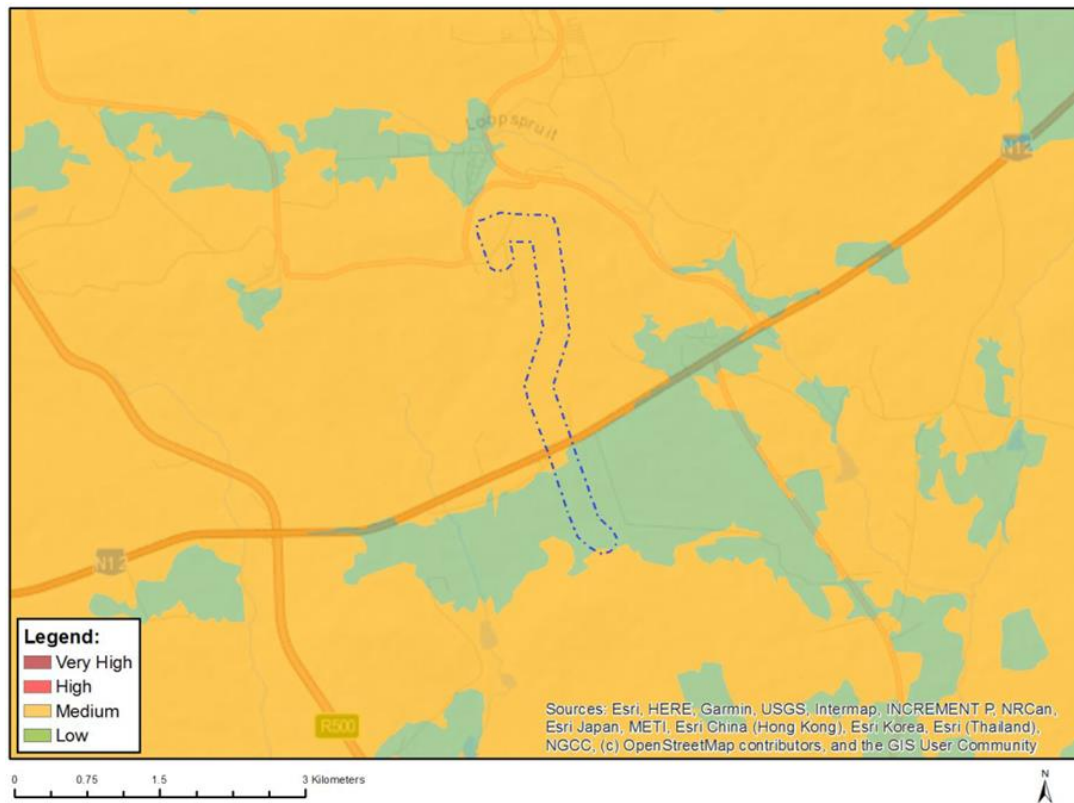


Figure 5: DFFE Screening Tool extract: Plant species theme



Figure 6: DFFE Screening Tool extract: Terrestrial biodiversity theme



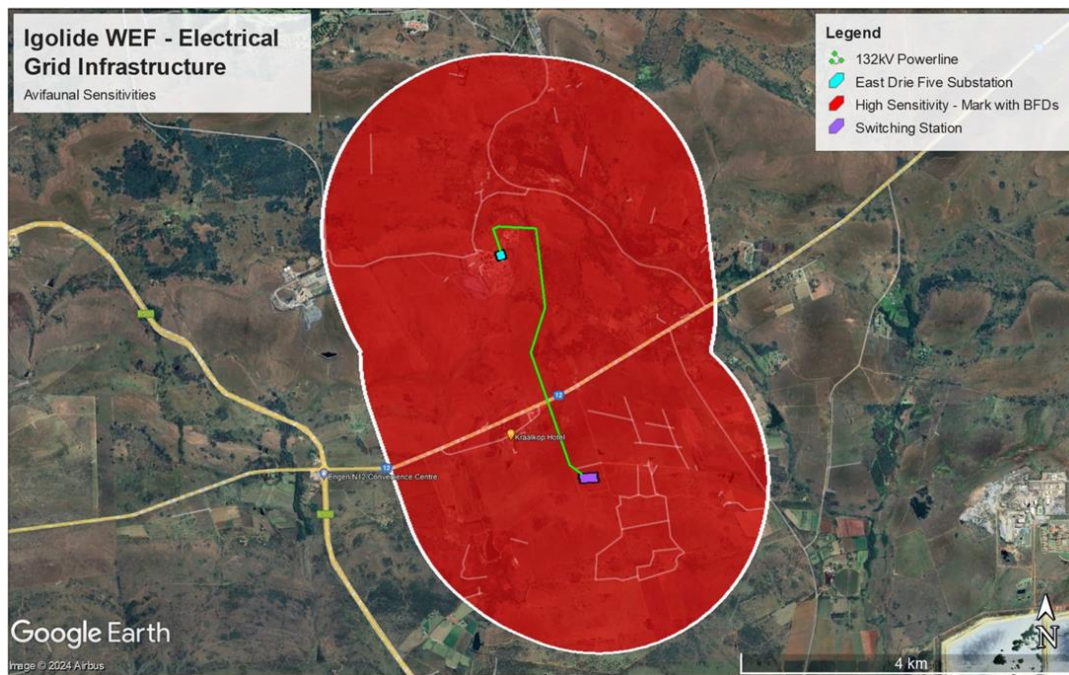


Figure 7: Avifauna Sensitivity Map

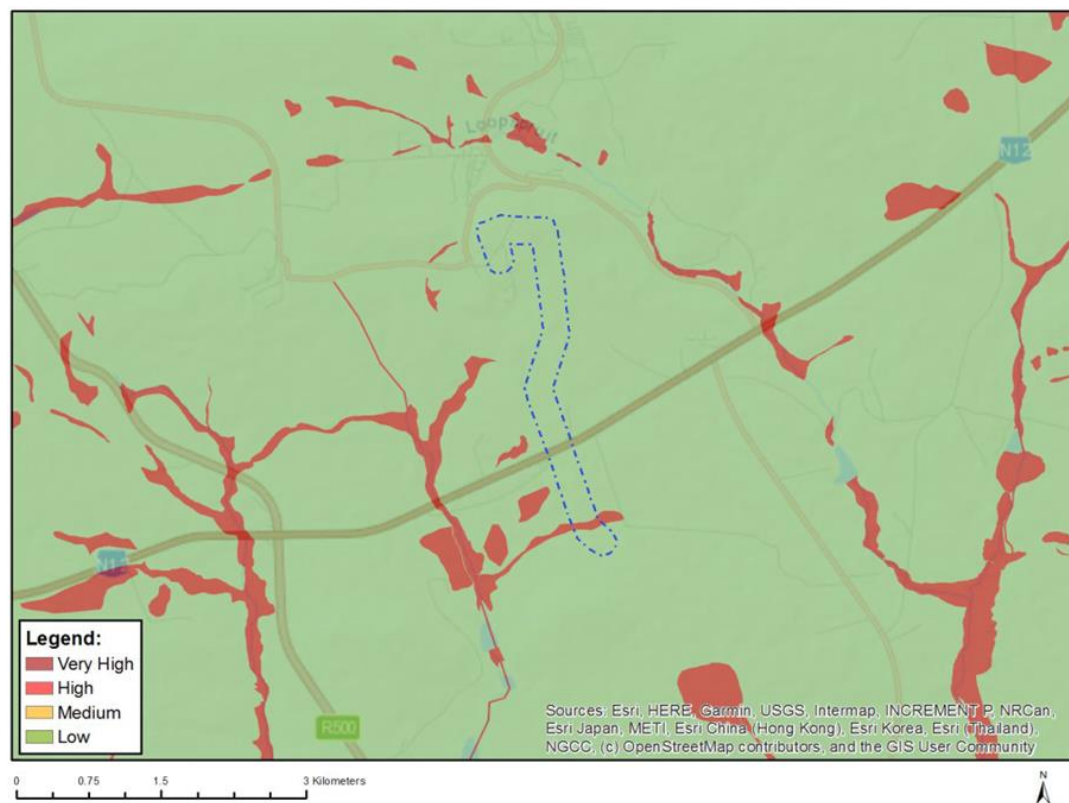


Figure 8: DFFE Screening Tool outcome for the aquatic biodiversity theme

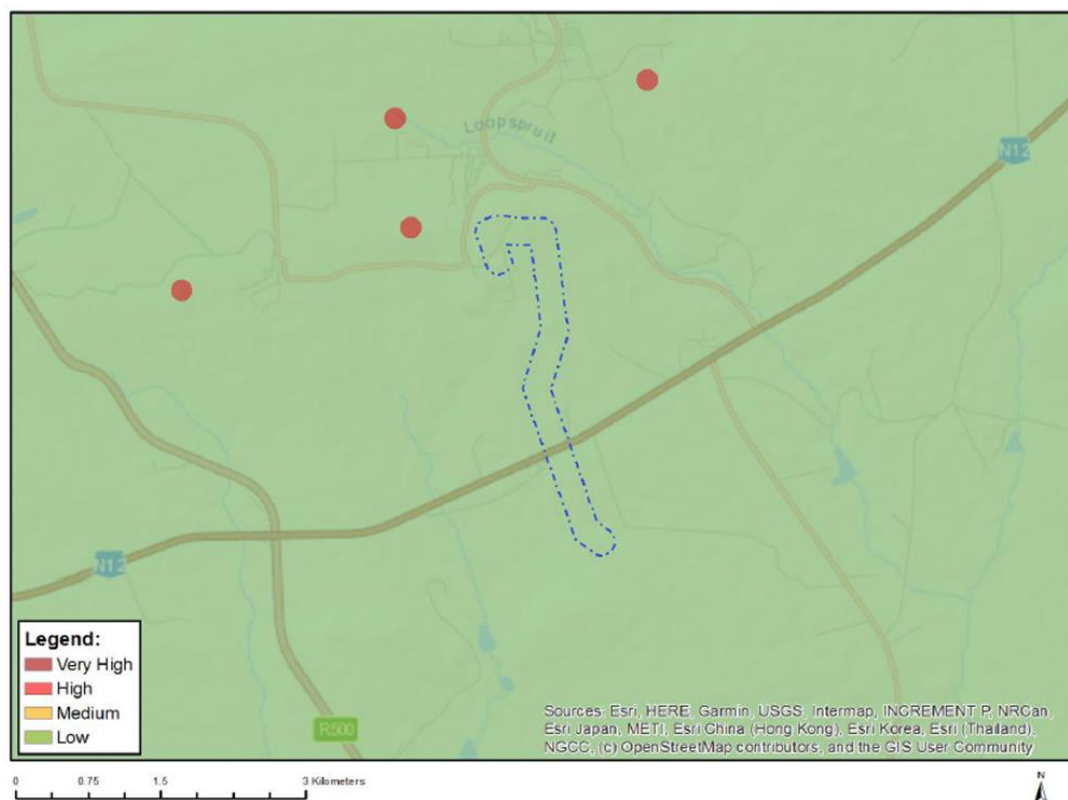


Figure 9: DFFE Screening Tool outcome for the heritage theme

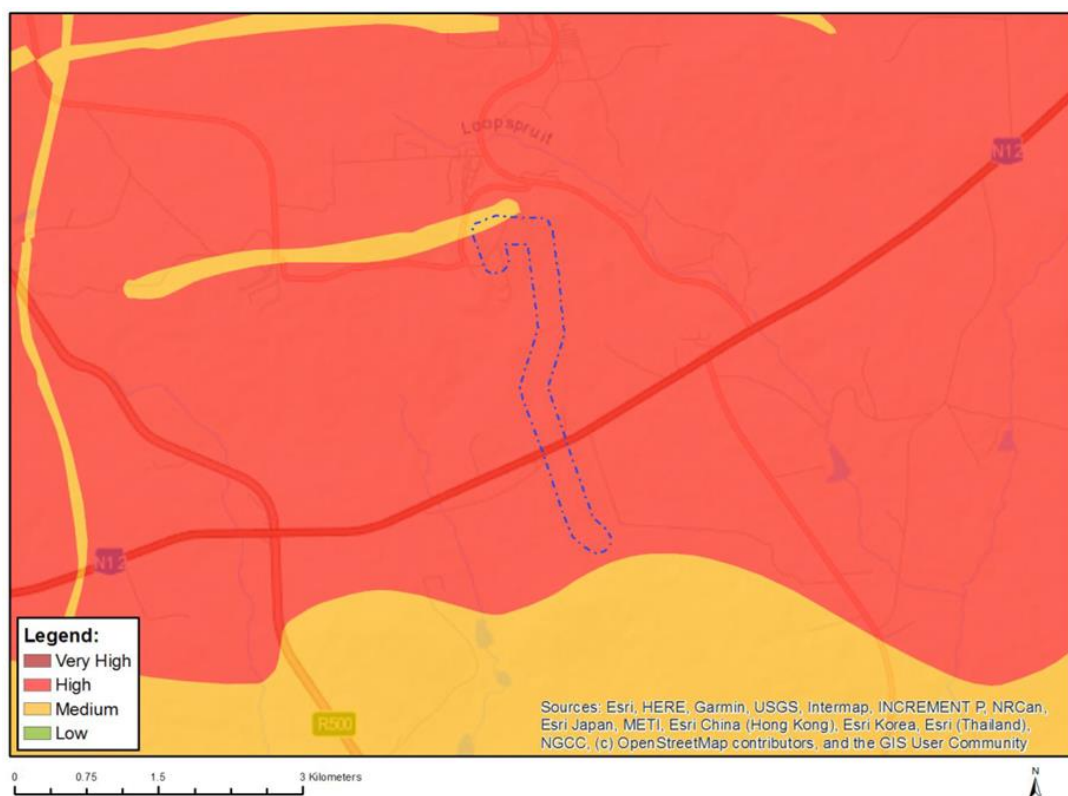


Figure 10: DFFE Screening Tool outcome for the palaeontological theme



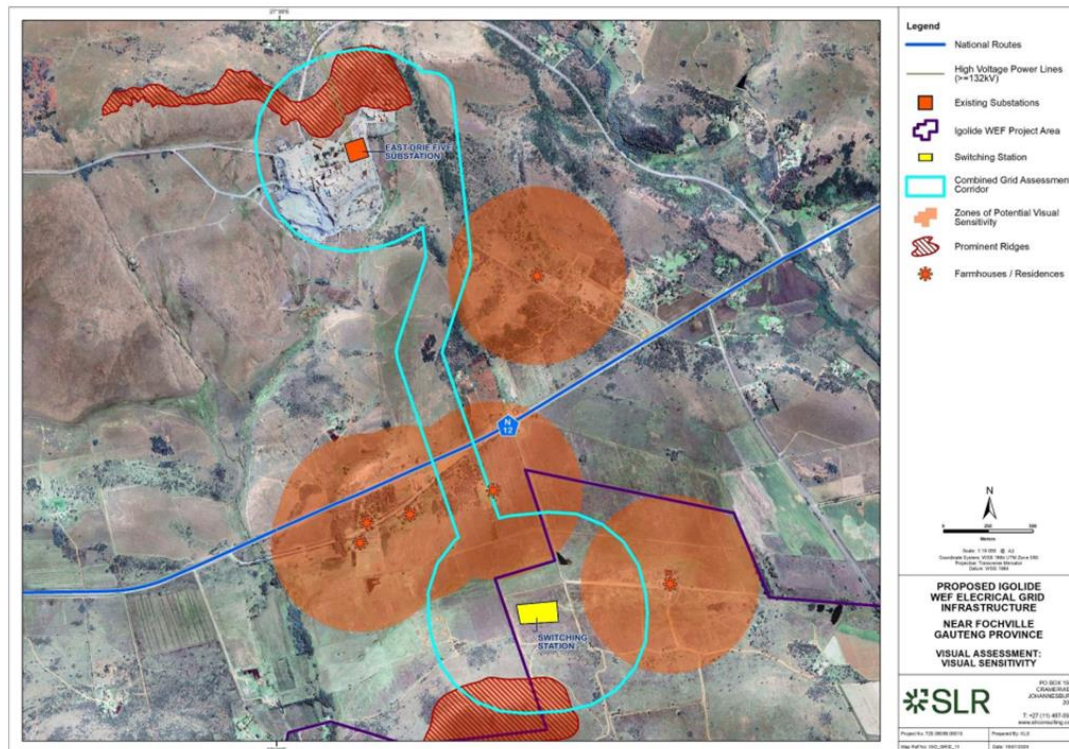


Figure 11: DFFE Screening Tool outcome for the Visual theme

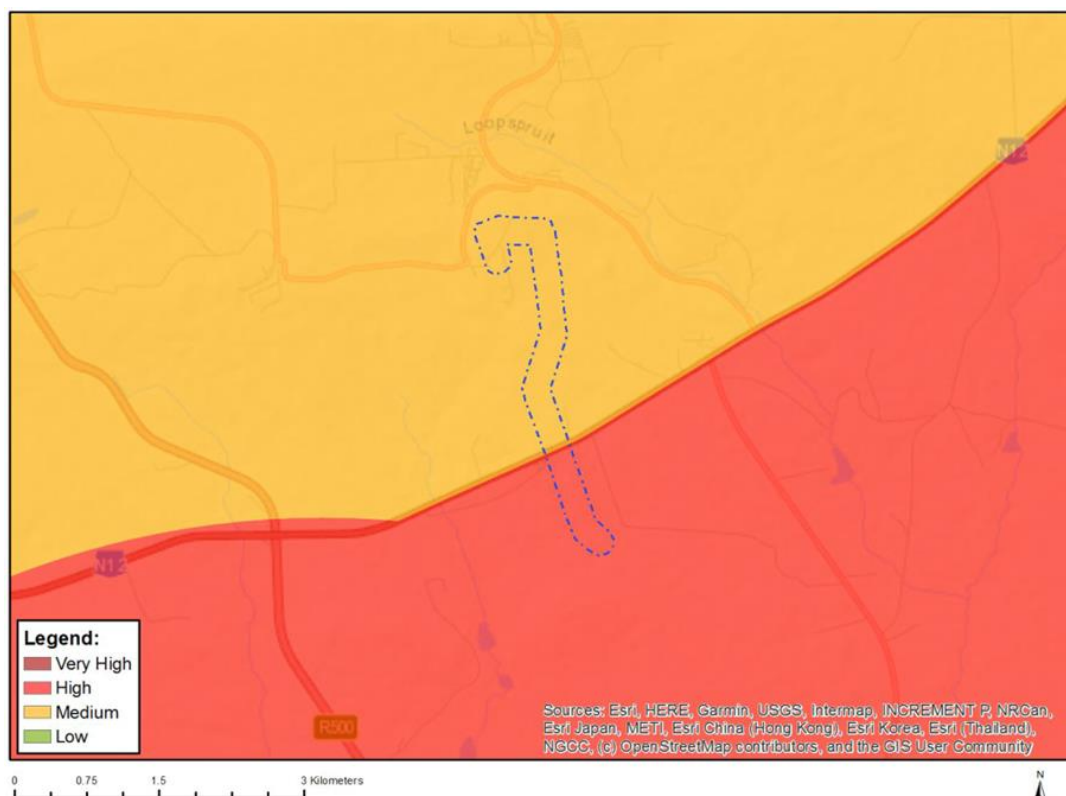


Figure 12: DFFE Screening Tool outcome for the Civil Aviation theme




### 7.3 Sub-section 3: Declaration

The proponent/applicant or holder of the EA affirms that he/she will abide and comply with the prescribed impact management outcomes and impact management actions as stipulated in part B: section 1 of the generic EMPr and have the understanding that the impact management outcomes and impact management actions are legally binding. The proponent/applicant or holder of the EA affirms that he/she will provide written notice to the CA 14 day prior to the date on which the activity will commence of commencement of construction to facilitate compliance inspections.

Signature Proponent/applicant/ holder of EA

Date:

DocuSigned by:  
 Mercia Grimbeek  
Director: Project Development  
AAB2346FC01041E

23/10/2024

### 7.4 Sub-section 4: amendments to site specific information (Part B; section 2)

Should the EA be transferred to a new holder, Part B: Section 2 must be completed by the new holder and submitted with the application for an amendment of the EA in terms of Regulations 29 or 31 of the EIA Regulations, whichever applies. The information submitted for an amendment to an environmental authorisation will be considered to be incomplete should a signed copy of Part B: Section 2 not be submitted. Once approved, Part B: Section 2 forms part of the EMPr for the development and the EMPr becomes legally binding to the new EA holder.

## PART C

### 8 SITE SPECIFIC ENVIRONMENTAL ATTRIBUTES

If any specific environmental sensitivities/attributes are present on the site which require more specific impact management outcomes and actions, not included in the pre-approved generic EMPr template, to manage impacts, those impact management outcomes and impact management actions must be included in this section. These specific management controls must be referenced spatially, and must include impact management outcomes and impact management actions. The management controls including impact management outcomes and impact management actions must be presented in the format of the pre-approved generic EMPr template. This applies only to additional impact management outcomes and impact management actions that are necessary.

If Part C is applicable to the development as authorised in the EA, it is required to be submitted to the CA together with the BAR or EIAR, for consideration of, and decision on, the application for EA. The information in this section must be prepared by an EAP and the name and expertise of the EAP, including the curriculum vitae are to be included. Once approved, Part C forms part of the EMPr for the site and is legally binding.

This section will not be required should the site contain no specific environmental sensitivities or attributes.

The overall site contain environmental sensitivities. The site specific mitigation measures for these attributes are included in Section \* of the Site Specific EMPr.

The sensitivities that are applicable to the underground cabling are aquatic and terrestrial biodiversity and are detailed below.

The relevant specialists are as follows:

Avifauna biodiversity:

Terrestrial biodiversity:

Heritage:

The specific environmental sensitivities are indicated in Error! Reference source not found..



Table 2: Avifaunal Input - management plan for the planning and design phase

Impact	Mitigation/Management Objectives and Outcomes	Mitigation/Management Actions	Monitoring		
			Methodology	Frequency	Responsibility
AVIFAUNA: DISPLACEMENT DUE TO DISTIURBANCE AND HABITAT TRANSFORMATION					
Displacement of EGI sensitive avifauna due to disturbance and habitat transformation	Prevent mortality of EGI sensitive avifauna	<div>1. Restrict construction to the immediate infrastructural footprint. Access to remaining areas should be strictly controlled to minimise disturbance of EGI sensitive species.</div> <div>2. Minimise removal of natural vegetation and rehabilitate natural vegetation post-construction where possible.</div> <div>3. Measures to control noise and dust should be applied according to current standard best practice in the industry.</div> <div>4. Prioritise upgrading existing roads (where the requisite roads authority permission has been issued) over constructing new roads.</div> <div>5. Strictly implement the recommendations of ecological and botanical specialists to reduce the level of habitat loss.</div>	Design lay-out around the proposed buffer zones	Once-off during the planning phase.	Project Developer
AVIFAUNA: MORTALITY DUE TO ELECTROCUTION					

Impact	Mitigation/Management Objectives and Outcomes	Mitigation/Management Actions	Monitoring		
			Methodology	Frequency	Responsibility
Electrocution of avifauna on the 132kV power line	Prevent mortality of EGI sensitive avifauna	<p>1. A vulture-friendly pole design must be used, and the pole design must be approved by the avifaunal specialist.</p> <p>Single Circuit Configuration: Construct the power line using an Eskom approved vulture friendly pole/tower design in accordance with the Distribution Technical Bulletin or with a minimum clearance of 1.8m between the jumpers and/or insulators and the horizontal earthed component on the lattice structure.</p> <p>Double Circuit Configuration: Construct the power line with a minimum clearance of 1.8m between the jumpers and/or insulators and the horizontal earthed component on the lattice structure.</p> <p>Additional mitigation in the form of insulating sleeves on jumpers present on strain towers and terminal towers is also recommended (if suitable insulation material is readily available), alternatively all jumpers must be suspended below the crossarms.</p>	Design engineers to consult with avifaunal specialist on the final design of the poles.	Once-off during the planning phase.	Project Developer

Table 3: Avifaunal Input - management plan for the construction phase (Including Pre-construction and construction activities)

Impact	Mitigation/Management Objectives and Outcomes	Mitigation/Management Actions	Monitoring		
			Methodology	Frequency	Responsibility
AVIFAUNA: DISPLACEMENT DUE TO DISTURBANCE					
The noise and movement associated with the construction activities at the development footprint will be a source of disturbance which would lead to the displacement of avifauna from the area	Prevent unnecessary displacement of EGI sensitive avifauna by ensuring that contractors are aware of the requirements of the Construction Environmental Management Programme (CEMPr.)	<p>A site-specific CEMPr must be implemented, which gives an appropriate and detailed description of how construction activities must be conducted. All contractors are to adhere to the CEMPr and should apply good environmental practices during construction. The CEMPr must specifically include the following:</p> <p>1. No off-road driving.</p> <p>2. Maximum use of existing roads as far as practically possible.</p> <p>3. Measures to control noise and dust according to latest best practice.</p> <p>4. Restricted access to the rest of the property.</p>	<p>1. Implementation of the CEMPr. Oversee activities to ensure that the CEMPr is implemented and enforced via site audits and inspections. Report and record any non-compliance.</p> <p>2. Ensure that construction personnel are made aware of the impacts relating to off-road driving.</p> <p>3. Construction access roads must be demarcated clearly. Undertake site inspections to verify.</p>	<p>1. On a daily basis</p> <p>2. Monthly</p> <p>3. Monthly</p> <p>4. Monthly</p> <p>5. Monthly</p>	<p>1. Contractor and ECO</p> <p>2. Contractor and ECO</p> <p>3. Contractor and ECO</p> <p>4. Contractor and ECO</p> <p>5. Contractor and ECO</p>

Impact	Mitigation/Management Objectives and Outcomes	Mitigation/Management Actions	Monitoring		
			Methodology	Frequency	Responsibility
		5. Strict application of all recommendations in the botanical and biodiversity specialist reports pertaining to the limitation and rehabilitation of the footprint.	4. Monitor the implementation of noise control mechanisms via site inspections and record and report non-compliance.  5. Ensure that the construction area is demarcated clearly and that construction personnel are made aware of these demarcations. Monitor via site inspections and report non-compliance.		
AVIFAUNA : DISPLACEMENT DUE TO HABITAT TRANSFORMATION					
Total or partial displacement of avifauna due to habitat transformation	Prevent unnecessary displacement of avifauna by ensuring that the rehabilitation of transformed areas is	1. Ensure that all the recommendations for mitigation from the	1. Appointment of specialist to coordinate and	1. Once-off	1. Facility Operator

Impact	Mitigation/Management Objectives and Outcomes	Mitigation/Management Actions	Monitoring		
			<i>Methodology</i>	<i>Frequency</i>	<i>Responsibility</i>
associated with the vegetation clearance and the presence of the EGI.	implemented according to the recommendations of the biodiversity/vegetation specialist.	biodiversity/vegetation specialists, including rehabilitation of disturbed areas, are strictly implemented.	monitor the rehabilitation of the vegetation.		
AVIFAUNA: MORTALITY DUE TO COLLISIONS WITH THE 132KV POWER LINE					
Bird collisions with the 132kV power line.	Prevent mortality of EGI sensitive avifauna.	1. Bird flight diverters should be installed on the 132kV overhead line on the full span length of the earth wire (according to Eskom guidelines - five metres apart). Light and dark colour devices must be alternated to provide contrast against both dark and light backgrounds, respectively. These devices must be installed	Fit Eskom approved Bird Flight Diverters on the entire overhead section of the 132kV power line.	1. Once-off	1. Contractor

Impact	Mitigation/Management Objectives and Outcomes	Mitigation/Management Actions	Monitoring		
			<i>Methodology</i>	<i>Frequency</i>	<i>Responsibility</i>
		as soon as the conductors are strung.			

Table 4: Avifaunal Input - management plan for the operational phase

Impact	Mitigation/Management Objectives and Outcomes	Mitigation/Management Actions	Monitoring		
			Methodology	Frequency	Responsibility
AVIFAUNA: MORTALITY DUE TO ELECTROCUTIONS IN THE SUBSTATION YARD					
Mortality of avifauna due to electrocutions in the substation yard	Reduction of avian electrocution mortality	1. Monitor the electrocution mortality in the substations.  2. Apply mitigation when and if required.	1. Regular inspections of the substation yard	1. Monthly	1. Facility Operator

Table 5: Avifaunal Input - management plan for the decommissioning phase

Impact	Mitigation/Management Objectives and Outcomes	Mitigation/Management Actions	Monitoring		
			Methodology	Frequency	Responsibility
AVIFAUNA: DISPLACEMENT DUE TO DISTURBANCE ASSOCIATED WITH THE DISMANTLING ACTIVITIES					

Impact	Mitigation/Management Objectives and Outcomes	Mitigation/Management Actions	Monitoring		
			Methodology	Frequency	Responsibility
The noise and movement associated with the decommissioning activities of the EGI will be a source of disturbance which would lead to the displacement of avifauna from the area.	Prevent unnecessary displacement of avifauna by ensuring that contractors are aware of the requirements of the EMPr.	<p>A site-specific EMPr must be implemented, which gives an appropriate and detailed description of how construction activities must be conducted. All contractors are to adhere to the EMPr and should apply good environmental practice during construction. The EMPr must specifically include the following:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. No off-road driving.</li> <li>2. Maximum use of existing roads as far as practically possible.</li> <li>3. Measures to control noise and dust according to latest best practice.</li> <li>4. Restricted access to the rest of the property.</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Implementation of the EMPr. Oversee activities to ensure that the EMPr is implemented and enforced via site audits and inspections. Report and record any non-compliance.</li> <li>2. Ensure that construction personnel are made aware of the impacts relating to off-road driving.</li> <li>3. Access roads must be demarcated clearly. Undertake site inspections to verify.</li> <li>4. Monitor the implementation of noise control mechanisms via site inspections and record and report non-compliance.</li> <li>5. Ensure that the footprint area is demarcated and that construction personnel are</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. On a daily basis</li> <li>2. Monthly</li> <li>3. Monthly</li> <li>4. Monthly</li> <li>5. Monthly</li> </ol>	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Contractor and ECO</li> <li>2. Contractor and ECO</li> <li>3. Contractor and ECO</li> <li>4. Contractor and ECO</li> <li>5. Contractor and ECO</li> <li>6. Contractor and ECO</li> </ol>



Impact	Mitigation/Management Objectives and Outcomes	Mitigation/Management Actions	Monitoring		
			<i>Methodology</i>	<i>Frequency</i>	<i>Responsibility</i>
		5. Strict application of all recommendations in the biodiversity/vegetation specialist report pertaining to the limitation of the footprint.	made aware of these demarcations. 6. Monitor via site inspections and report non-compliance.		

Table 6: Terrestrial Biodiversity Input – Summary of the monitoring measures

Ref. No.	Category	Method for monitoring	Time period	Frequency of monitoring	Mechanism for monitoring compliance	Responsible person
<b>1. Construction and Operational phase</b>						
1.1	Alien invasive species	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Annual on-site alien invasive species monitoring should be conducted. Monitoring should focus on all sites disturbed during the construction phase; and</li> <li>Monitoring should assess species type and density, and these data should inform the scope of ongoing alien invasive species control.</li> </ul>	Wet/growing season	Annual	Annual Monitoring Report	Project Manager
<b>2. Decommissioning phase</b>						
2.1	Alien invasive species	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Alien invasive species monitoring should be conducted on an annual basis during decommissioning and annually for a five-year period following decommissioning. Monitoring should focus on all sites disturbed during decommissioning; and</li> <li>Monitoring should assess species type and density, and these data should inform the scope of ongoing alien invasive species control.</li> </ul>	Wet/growing season	Annually during decommissioning for a five-year period after decommissioning	Annual Monitoring Report	Facility Manager

Table 7: Plant Species Biodiversity Input – Summary of the monitoring measures

Ref. No.	Category	Method for monitoring	Time period	Frequency of monitoring	Mechanism for monitoring compliance	Responsible person
1. Construction and Operational phase						
1.1	Alien invasive species	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Annual on-site alien invasive species monitoring should be conducted. Monitoring should focus on all sites disturbed during the construction phase; and</li> <li>Monitoring should assess species type and density, and these data should inform the scope of ongoing alien invasive species control.</li> </ul>	Wet/growing season	Annual	Annual Monitoring Report	Project Manager
2.2	Flora SCC	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Monitoring of the <i>Adromischus umbraticola</i> subsp. <i>umbraticola</i> plants should be conducted during the September – January flowering period.</li> <li>As required, the findings of monitoring should inform additional conservation actions to protect these plants.</li> </ul>	September - January	Annually during construction, and for a three period after construction.	Annual Monitoring Report	Project Manager
2. Decommissioning phase						
2.1	Alien invasive species	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Alien invasive species monitoring should be conducted on an annual basis during decommissioning and annually for a five-year period following decommissioning. Monitoring should focus on all sites disturbed during decommissioning; and</li> <li>Monitoring should assess species type and density, and these data should inform the scope of ongoing alien invasive species control.</li> </ul>	Wet/growing season	Annually during decommissioning for a five-year period after decommissioning	Annual Monitoring Report	Facility Manager

Table 8: Heritage Input – Summary of the mitigation and monitoring measures

Impact	Mitigation / management objectives & outcomes	Mitigation / management actions	Monitoring		
			Methodology	Frequency	Responsibility
Impacts to archaeology and graves					
Damage or destruction of archaeological sites or graves	Avoid impacts (preferred) or locate and sample or rescue sites/burials before disturbance	<u>Planning &amp; Construction Phase</u> : Final alignment to be evaluated by an archaeologist relative to known sites, make recommendations for mitigation or further survey as may be needed.	Appoint archaeologist to evaluate alignment well before construction (noting that further survey may be required if there are doubts)	Once-off	Project developer
Damage or destruction of archaeological sites	Locate sensitive areas before damage occurs and avoid impacts	<u>Construction Phase</u> : No-Go signage will need to be placed at sites close to the final alignment. To be determined during planning phase.	Monitoring of No-Go areas (construction period only)	Ongoing basis	Construction Manager or Contractor
				Whenever on site (at least weekly)	ECO
Damage or destruction of archaeological sites or graves	Rescue information, artefacts or burials before extensive damage occurs	<u>Construction Phase</u> : Reporting chance finds as early as possible to SAHRA ( <a href="https://www.sahra.org.za/contact/">https://www.sahra.org.za/contact/</a> ) or an archaeologist, protect in situ and stop work in immediate area	Inform staff to be vigilant and carry out inspections of new excavations	Ongoing basis	Construction Manager or Contractor
				Whenever on site (at least weekly during construction period only)	ECO
Damage or destruction of any known sites	Avoid impacts	<u>Construction Phase</u> : Place No-Go signage at identified sensitive locations.	Monitoring of No-Go areas	Ongoing basis	Construction Manager or Contractor

Impact	Mitigation / management objectives & outcomes	Mitigation / management actions	Monitoring		
			Methodology	Frequency	Responsibility
			(construction period only)	Whenever on site (at least weekly)	ECO
Impacts to the cultural landscape					
Visible landscape scarring	Minimise landscape scarring	<u>Construction Phase</u> : Ensure disturbance is kept to a minimum and does not exceed project requirements. Avoid construction on very steep slopes. Rehabilitate areas not needed during operation.	Monitoring of surface clearance relative to approved layout	Ongoing basis	Construction Manager or Contractor
				As required	ECO
Intrusion into cultural landscape	Minimise visual intrusion	<u>Operation Phase</u> : Ensure that all maintenance vehicles and operational activities stay within designated areas.	Undertake visual inspections and report non-compliance	As required	Environmental Manager
Intrusion into cultural landscape	Minimise contrast and light pollution	<u>Operation Phase</u> : Paint buildings in earthy colours to reduce contrast. Make use of motion detectors and downlighting to reduce night-time light pollution.	Monitor that this has been considered in the design and operation of the facility	Once off	Project Developer
Visible landscape scarring	Minimise landscape scarring	<u>Decommissioning Phase</u> : Ensure all areas are rehabilitated following specialist rehabilitation plan.	Monitor compliance and success of rehabilitation	As required	ECO

## APPENDIX 1: METHOD STATEMENTS

To be prepared by the contractor prior to commencement of the activity. The method statements are not required to be submitted to the CA.

## APPENDIX 1: METHOD STATEMENTS

To be prepared by the contractor prior to commencement of the activity. The method statements are not required to be submitted to the CA.



Building 1, Maxwell Office Park  
Magwa Crescent West, Waterfall City  
Midrand, 1685  
South Africa

**wsp.com**

PUBLIC